FRANK MARSHALL, UNITED STATES CHESS CHAMPION

A Biography with 220 Games

by

Grandmaster Andy Soltis
CONTENTS

Preface ix
One: When Chess Was Young 1
Two: Paris 1900 14
Three: Sophomore Marshall 26
Four: Cambridge Springs 57
Five: Consistently Inconsistent 73
Six: Candidate Marshall 98
Seven: The Longest Trip 116

Eight: A Year at Home 153
Nine: Swindles 167
Ten: The Great Tournaments 175
Eleven: Farewell to Europe 207
Twelve: The War Years 230
Thirteen: The House That Marshall Built 245
Fourteen: Another Lasker 255
Fifteen: European Comeback 273
Sixteen: A Lion in Winter 292
Seventeen: The Gold Medals 320
Eighteen: Sunset 340

Tournament and Match Record 365
Bibliography 369
Index 373

Between pages 152 and 153 are 8 pages of plates containing 14 photographs
Preface

My first serious contact with chess began when, as a high school sophomore, I took a board in a simultaneous exhibition at the Marshall Chess Club. With some difficulty I managed to locate the club’s ivy-covered, Greenwich Village brownstone and, after getting past the front door, climbed for the first time the ancient staircase that leads to the club’s main, second-floor playing rooms.

At the top of the stairs a tiny, gray-haired lady collected my $3 fee for the exhibition, smiled and directed me to a table and chessboard next to what I later learned was a 130-year-old fireplace. The room bustled with well-dressed adults who all seemed to know one another and a lot about chess. I sat quietly and waited for the lecture by grandmaster Larry Evans and his first move in the simul.

After an hour or two I turned down my king, collected my scoresheet and schoolbooks and began to make a discreet, slightly embarrassed exit. But the petite woman who’d been at the top of the stairs stopped me with another smile, complimented me on my play and gave me an application for club membership. She said people called her Mrs. Marshall but her name was Carrie.

I knew Carrie Marshall during the last nine years of her long life. I heard a great deal from her of her husband, Frank. I learned how he was United States Champion for a record 27 years and how he captained four world champion U.S. Olympiad teams, how he broke his own record for games played in a simultaneous exhibition and how he had been named one of the first five grandmasters of the game. From the copy of My Fifty Years of Chess that she gave me I discovered the richness of his sparkling imagination. I also learned, though not from Carrie, that Frank Marshall was the most beloved chess master America has ever produced.

Thirty years have passed since my first visit to the Marshall Chess Club. Most everyone who knew Frank and Carrie is gone, and his books are out of print. As a result of the passage of time, today’s players are losing
all contact with the era when chess was transformed from a pastime to a profession, the era of Frank Marshall.

In trying to rectify this I've relied heavily on Marshall's own words—from handwritten notes he left and from his autobiographical, final book. The notes, written in pencil on yellow legal pad paper, were the basis for the book, hereafter referred to as *My Fifty Years*. The notes are part of the archives of the Marshall Chess Club, without whose help this book would not be possible.

Grandmaster Andy Soltis
*New York City*
*June 1993*

*Chapter One*

When Chess Was Young

Before Frank Marshall, chess was a different game. Through the prism of his lifetime we can appreciate how it grew from amateur infancy to the professional competition that today fascinates millions.

Before Marshall there had been barely a dozen international tournaments. Records indicate there were only four tournaments of any kind held the year he was born, 1877. The round robin or all-play-all method of conducting a tournament had been introduced only fifteen years before and replaced the prevailing knockout system. Swiss System pairings, which now predominate, were decades away.

Chess was slower then. Serious games were played at a rate of 15 or so moves per hour. The first chess clocks—using sandglasses—had made their appearance after the London tournament of 1862. Pendulum clocks only began to replace them in the 1880s.

Theory about the way to conduct a game was scant. In English a few, sketchy opening books had been written, and they dwelled largely on the many facets of the King's Gambit. Only a few dozen chess books were generally available, even in the finer libraries. By the turn of the century the choices had broadened only slightly. You could buy *Staunton's Handbook*, for about a dollar, and the tournament book of Hastings 1895, which cost a bit more. The most expensive chess book around, Tarrasch's *Three Hundred Games*, cost more than $2—at a time when you could buy a good pair of shoes for $1.75. Even notation for recording moves was relatively new. Marshall wrote “castles,” rather than “0-0,” on his scoresheets throughout his career.

At the board, masters announced mates. Analyzing of adjourned games was still legally banned—but gaining private acceptance. The idea of seconds was decades away. The modern scoring system—in which a draw is scored as a half point for each player—was not universally accepted and, in fact, some of the strongest events before World War I required draws to be replayed. Also absent was the modern draw-by-
When Chess Was Young

Frank Marshall played the role of master well. He was tall, well over six feet, like rivals such as Alexander Alekhine and Siegbert Tarrasch, and towered over others such as Richard Réti and Savely Tartakower. He dressed like a Victorian gambler, and was rarely without his ascot tie. His hair was reddish and grew darker as he aged. He chewed cigars and usually had one in his mouth, according to Arnold Denker, who was in his teens when he met the then August Marshall in the late 1920s. "When asked to speak he had the nervous habit of always clenching his hands behind his back, thus thrusting out his chest and rocking back and forth," Denker recalled.

"He had a peculiar combination of characteristics we call 'color,'" said Chess Review editor Kenneth Harkness as he arrived at the Marshall Chess Club. He saw the great man finishing up a lesson with a beginner. "See that fellow," a beaming Marshall said as his student left the building. "Six weeks ago all he could do was set up the pieces."

"Now," he added, after a stage pause, "he doesn’t even know how to do that."

Marshall loved games. Almost all games: chess, checkers, bingo, casino gambling, even something called saltas, one of many games he mastered in a remarkably short period of time. Saltas was a two-player game using 30 numbered checkers on a 100-square board and resembled Chinese checkers and the Russian game uglyski. It was invented about the year 1900, and to promote it a series of international tournaments were held, beginning with one in June 1900 at Paris.

Not knowing who would make a good saltas-ist, as they were called, the organizers invited the world’s best chess players—including Harry Pillsbury, Mikhail Chigorin, and Dawid Janowsky—and the best checker players, as well as the few recognized saltas experts. Marshall, who couldn’t have known of the very existence of the game before he arrived in Paris a few weeks before, finished in a tie for third prize with the world’s best checker player, Isidore Weiss. A year later at Monte Carlo he won a "world championship" at the game and 3000 French francs—more than he would win at any of the chess tournaments at Monte Carlo. Saltas died out shortly after that and Frank Marshall remains its only world champion, a title he always tried to include in his subsequent biographical sketches.

But Marshall loved chess most of all and liked to say that after learning the game at age 10 he never spent another day—in a life of 67 years—without playing a game. He even took a pocket set to bed. Had it not been for chess, it’s a mystery what other profession would have accepted him, for Marshall was supremely disorganized away from the board. Even in the moments of greatest triumph, he seemed in a state of pixilated confusion. After winning the Havana tournament of 1913, for example, he mistook a cheering mass of chess fans for a lynching mob.

Another time, when Marshall and his family were again on the verge of bankruptcy, Louis J. Wolff, a successful businessman and fine amateur player, arranged a job for him as a department store floorwalker. His entire job consisted of wearing a suit with a white carnation in the lapel and walking back and forth across a New York department store’s main floor. There were no other responsibilities. Within a week, Marshall was fired. He couldn’t handle the task.

"A Brilliant Future . . . If."

Frank James Marshall was one of five sons of Alfred George and Sarah Marshall. His father was born in England and his mother was of Scotch-Irish descent. They lived in what used to be called Hell’s Kitchen in Manhattan and it was at Eighth Avenue and 50th Street that Marshall was born. The building was later torn down and the site became the home of the second Madison Square Garden.


In other notes he elaborated. "My father taught me the game in Montreal, where he moved because of his business. The Marshalls moved to Canada in 1885 and remained there for 11 years. His father has been described as a "fairly strong amateur" who realized early the considerable
talent of his son and brought him to a local hangout, the Hope Coffee House, to find stronger competition. But within a few months young Frank was beating the coffee-house players.

It was in Montreal that Marshall met his first master, W.H.K. Pollock, an Irishman who had developed something of an international reputation in the 1880s. Fifty years later Marshall described him as “tall, slim, clever, a great thinker and walker.” Pollock (1859-1896) spent the last four years of his life in Montreal and was a legitimate international player, having represented Canada at the great Hastings tournament of 1895. Marshall must also have met the leading native Canadians, such as A.T. Davison, who won the Canadian championship when it was held in Montreal in 1891 and again in 1894.

Marshall also played Wilhelm Steinitz during one of the great man’s last exhibitions as world champion. The Prague-born Steinitz had been living in the United States since 1883 and had taken American citizenship. Chronically ill with gout and rheumatism, he could walk only with a cane, which made his exhibitions an extraordinary physical feat—and which made a deep impression on a 16-year-old opponent.

1. French Defense, Tarrasch Variation

Steinitz—Marshall, simultaneous exhibition, Montreal 1893

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nd2 Nc6 4 Bd3 Nb6?

Marshall considered both his third and fourth moves bad (but actually the position after 4 . . . Nd7 is perfectly reasonable and has been modern grandmaster Yakov Murey). Now Black opens the center prematurely.

5 c3 Ng6 6 Nb3 e5 7 Qe2! Bc6 8 Nf3 Bd6?

Marshall’s notes give: “Steinitz generally used a cane when playing simultaneously, as he limped. He was very short, near sighted, with a large body and head. He was very serious, rarely smiled and would fight each game to the bitter end . . . [such that] he would rarely give a draw but played on in the wee hours of the morning so as to try and win a draw.” This evening he finished early.

22 . . . Bb2 23 Q×h7+ Kf8 24 Rd4 c6 25 Rfd1 Qc7 26 Qh8+ Resigns

Two days afterwards a local newspaper, Le Monde Illustré, published the game with a photograph of the young Frank and a comment from Steinitz that he “had never met an amateur of his age who had given him so much trouble.” The article added that “Mr. Steinitz predicted a brilliant future for him if he continues to play chess.” This prompted Marshall to write, in My Fifty Years, “If I continued to play chess? Nothing could have stopped me . . . Chess began to absorb my whole life. My head was full of it, from morning to night—and in my dreams as well. Gradually it crowded out every other interest.”

It must have crowded out Marshall’s schooling, for he appears to have been an indifferent pupil at best. He became, in fact, a terrible speller. In his later handwritten notes he routinely misspelled place names and familiar players such as “Sweedenv” and “Harowicz” and had a penchant for adding double letters to words like “witt,” “travvls,” and “dissapeerd.” In his notes he once described his longtime foe Akiba Rubinstein as “quite, genorrely preferring to be alone, a great Chess genius.”

On the other hand, Marshall had acquired quite a bit of French, a
natural subject to learn in Montreal, and knew enough German to be able to analyze with Edward Lasker when they met at Hamburg 1910. “He was not bright nor well educated but he was a very decent guy,” recalled Denker.

As for his chess education, it is one of the enduring myths of the game that there are certain “natural players,” like Paul Morphy, José Capablanca and Frank Marshall, who become the strongest of masters almost without effort. It is their innate talent for the game which blossoms virtually uncultivated. Actually, “natural” players invariably turn out to be masters who devoted immense amounts of time to the game as youths, studying the games of masters. For Marshall, it was Morphy’s games he studied most.

Besides winning the Montreal club championship Marshall developed an interest in chess problems and postal chess — although he didn’t play by mail again for fifty years. He also took every opportunity to test himself against the best visitors, such as a Massachusetts master who would soon to acquire an international reputation: Harry Nelson Pillsbury.

2. Queen’s Gambit Declined, Marshall Defense

Pillsbury-Marshall, blindfold simultaneous exhibition, Montreal 1893

24  e6 fxe6  25 dxe6 Ne5  26 Bc4 Rd8  27 Qg2 Ne4  28 Rf1 Rd1

After 28 ... Rd1

Liquidating neatly (29 R×d1 Nf6+ 30 Kg1 g×h2+ 31 K×f2 R×g2+ 32 K×g2 Qg5+ wins as in the game).

29 Bc1 R×e1! 30 R×e1 Nf2+ 31 Kg1 g×h2+ 32 K×f2 R×g2+ 33 K×g2 Q×f4 34 Bc2 Qd2 White resigns

Marshall’s final comment in his unpublished notes: “This game demonstrates the old adage, ‘The boy is the father of the man,’ as my style has changed but little through all the years.” (In fact, his style changed quite a bit by the time he was 35.)

About 1895, when Pillsbury made his spectacular debut in international play, the Marshalls returned to Brooklyn, then a separate city, apart from its East River rival, New York. Frank joined both the Brooklyn Chess Club, located in the downtown district, and the Manhattan Chess Club, at 105 E. 22nd Street. His lifelong friend William Ewart Napier, three years younger than he, recalls that they joined the Brooklyn club within a week of one another.

It was at the Manhattan C.C. that Marshall played his first serious match, with Vladimir Sournin, a Russian émigré who became one of the top U.S. cartographers and would later receive a presidential medal for his work charting the Panama Canal Zone.

The Brooklyn Daily Eagle reported: “Satisfactory progress has been made in the match between F.J. Marshall and V. Sournin which was begun three weeks ago, since which time eight games have been played at the rate of three a week. Marshall, with a score of 5-1, and one draw, has a winning lead.”

Typical of Marshall’s good games was:
3. Vienna Game, Paulsen Variation

Fox-Marshall, match, New York, circa 1897

1 e4 e5 2 Nc3 Nf6 3 g3 d5

White's third move was also adopted by Jacques Mieses, a Marshall contemporary, and, many years later, by Vasily Smyslov, with considerable success. Marshall faced Mieses' system in a 1908 match but regularly kept the center closed.

4 exd5 Nxd5 5 Bg2 Be6 6 Nge2?!

With 6 Nf3 followed by castling and Re1, White gets an edge.

6 ... h5?! 7 d4 cxd4 8 Nxd4 Nxc3 9 bxc3 Bd5!

If it weren't for this move White's dissolution of the center would have made Marshall's 6 ... h5 look silly. Now Fox sees a combinational way out.

10 Qe2+ Bc7 11 Bxd5 Qxd5 12 Ba3?

![Diagram](image)

After 12 Ba3

The point is that 12 ... Qxd1+ 13 Kd2 leaves both king and queen hanging.

12 ... 0-0 13 Qxe7 Nce 14 Nxc6

White's last two moves were unfortunately forced.

14 ... Qxc1+ 15 Kd2 Qxa1 16 Ne5 Rad8+ White resigns

In 1899 Marshall was on the winning side in a New York-Pennsylvania match. In his seven games, Marshall scored 4½-2½, the second best result of the match players, behind Lipschütz's 6½-½. He also won a 1900 tournament at Thousand Islands, in upstate New York.

Nevertheless, Lasker's Chess Magazine would later remark that Marshall's play in those events "was not always strong, and when he was proposed for a place on the American cable team in 1899 there were many who thought there were others more entitled to the place."
The annual series of Anglo-American Cable Matches had begun in 1896 and were the only international chess played in the United States in the 1890s. In the 1899 match, Marshall was only on eighth board, well below Pillsbury, of course, but also placed below John Barry, who was four years his senior and played third board, and Edward Hyynes (fifth), and H.C. Voight (sixth). In the match Marshall drew with G.E. Wainwright, a relatively obscure Englishman, in a 6-4 American victory.

London 1899

Marshall wrote, in My Fifty Years, how "the Manhattan and Brooklyn Chess Clubs honored me by their decision to send me abroad" to play at the London tournament of 1899. In those days a European tournament trip meant several weeks' travel expenses, and required a kind of subscription drive by a sponsor. Round-trip Atlantic passage on a steamship could cost $200 alone. (By the 1920s Marshall would need contributions ranging from $2 up, from dozens of sponsors to make a European tour.)

When Marshall arrived in May at the Royal Aquarium tournament site he was profoundly disappointed: his name, and the endorsement of the New York clubs, were insufficient to get him into the main event. That was a double-round master tournament with most of the leading players in the world, including Lasker. Marshall, instead, was allowed into a single-round event "open to first-class players" of less than stellar reputation.

Marshall regarded his Mitteleuropäische opponents as the more dangerous, and he quickly drew with Viennese master Georg Marco in 14 moves. Against Mieses of Germany he found an ingenious method of organizing his pieces for kingside attack. Marshall would later describe his opponent as "Nervous, wrote many fine chess books, energetic ... brilliant in his style to a fault."

4. Sicilian Defense

**Marshall-Mieses, London 1899**

1 e4 c5 2 Nf3 e6 3 d4 exd4 4 Nxd4 Nf6 5 Bd3 Nc6 6 Nc3 d5 7 e5

White's fifth, sixth and eighth moves have given the enemy the lion's share of the center. He should have tried 8 Nd2 but the young Marshall played for open lines, sometimes too ardently.

8 ... exd5 9 Qf3 Bd6 10 Bg5 Be7 11 Nd2 0-0 12 c4 Bb7 13 Bc2

8 ... Qh4? 14 Qd3 dx e4 15 Qh3?

The threat of 16 Bxh6 and 17 Qxh7 mate forces the first loosening of Mieses' castled position. But Black stands well.

15 ... g6 16 Ne4 Qc6 17 Ne3 Nfd5 18 Bxe7 Nxe7 19 Rac1 Qb5

The threat of 25 Nxe6 is easily parried but White comes up with an imaginative way of continuing the attack.

16 ... Qb4+ 17 Kh1 Qxb1 18 Rg1+ Kh8 19 Bf1 Qg6 20 Qxg6+ hxg6 21 Rf1 Qf7 22 Nd5 Qg6 23 Nxe7 Qg5 24 Rf6 Kf8 25 Nh5+ Kg7

25 Rf1 Qd8 26 Qg3 Rh8 27 h4 Qf6 28 Re1 Rac8 29 Rcd4 Qf5

30 Nc4 Rb8 31 Rdd3 Nf6 32Nd6 Qa5

After 32 ... Qa5

The tournament book notes that Marshall "probably also considered"

33 N x f7 K x f7 34 Rd7+ N x d7 35 R x d7+ Kf6 36 Rx b7 R x b7 37 Qf7+, ending up with a pawn for the Exchange. Actually, he had seen 34 b4 (instead of 34 Rd7+); the American would have won quickly, e.g. 34 ... Q x a4 35 Qb5+ or 34 ... Qb6 35 Rd7+ N x d7 36 R x d7+ (36 ... Kf6 37 Qf4 mate).

33 f3 Ba6 34 Rd2 Rb4 35 Bb3 R x d4 36 R x d4 Qc5

Black is at least equal now and Marshall should be happy with a split point.

37 Qf2 Qe1+ 38 Kh2 Qc7 39 Qg3 Qe5 40 Rd2 Qe3 41 Qg5 Qe1

42 Rd1 Qc2 43 Rd2 Draw

The time control of 20 moves an hour was quite a bit faster than most previous events—and faster than the 15-moves-per-hour of the double-round tournament. This led to some freewheeling, chaotic games that ended dramatically. The tournament book praises the following as "first-class ... played in good style by both sides. It was Marshall's first fine victory in Europe:

5. Two Knights Defense

**Marshall-Esser, London 1899**

1 e4 c5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 Bc4 Nf6 4 d4 exd4 5 0-0 N x e 4 6 Re 1 d5

7 B x d 5 O x d 3 8 Ne3 Qd8
In Freeborough and Ranken’s authoritative 1893 book, *Chess Openings, Ancient and Modern*, Black’s alternatives are given as 8 ... Qc4 and 8 ... Qh5—but not 8 ... Qa5, now regarded as best.

9 Rxe4+ Be7 10 Nxd4 Nxd4?

But even in Freeborough and Ranken’s book it was known that 10 ... f5! was correct, leading to an equal endgame after 11 Rf4 0-0 12 N×c6 Q×d1+ 13 N×d1 B×c6. The text grants a powerful White initiative.

11 R×d4 Bd7 12 Bf4 Qc8 13 Nd5 Bd8 14 Qh5 0-0 15 B×c7! Be6

Not only could White win the queen after 15 ... B×c7 16 Ne7+ but he could have delivered mate instead (16 ... Kb8 17 Q×h7# and 18 Rh4).

![Diagram of the chess board after 15 ... Be6]

16 B×d8 B×d5 17 Bf6! Qc6

Bishop moves invite 18 Qg5 g6 19 Qh6 and mates. Black’s subsequent play allows a pretty, if unnecessary, finish.

18 B×g7 K×g7 19 Q×d5 Q×c2 20 Qe5+ f6 21 Qe7+ Kg6 22 Rh4 Kg5 23 Qg7+ K×h4? 24 Qh6+ Kg4 25 h3+ Kf5 26 Q×h7+ Resigns

At the awards giving ceremony on July 11 Marshall, by winning the second tournament, received £70 and a gold lady’s pendant. That meant a richer payday than the £65 fifth prize Karl Schlechter took home from the double-round “master” event, and nearly as good as Harry Pillsbury’s £115 for his tie for second prize.

Marshall also had the pleasure of playing the prettiest move in either tournament:

When Chess Was Young


Now 28 ... Kg7 29 Bf4 Kg×f6 30 Kg5 set the stage for 30 ... Rf4+!! after which a bishop check will force mate.

![Diagram of the chess board after 30 ... Rf4+!!]

The London tournament did not make Marshall a star, but rather a player to be watched. Subsequent rating analysis of their performances, by Arpad Elo, suggests that by 1899 Marshall had already surpassed one of the most celebrated players of the day, Joseph Henry Blackburne, in playing strength and was well ahead of other “name” players such as Mieses, Adolf Albin, Henry Bird and Emanuel Schiffers. But it would take another big result to prove it.

The year 1899 ended inauspiciously for Marshall. He traveled to Chicago for a match against Sidney P. Johnston, along with Louis Uedemann and Charles W. Phillips, one of the three strongest Midwestern players. Johnston, then just turned 30, had played seventh board in the 1899 cable match and was the chess editor of the *Chicago Tribune*.

The match began December 21 and was interrupted after the thirteenth game when Marshall, the favorite, took off a week to visit Davenport, Iowa, to give simultaneous exhibitions. The only game of memory was a sparkling Johnston victory in the third match game. Marshall was lucky to win 7-6 with two draws when play ended on January 21, 1900. Johnston then sought a rematch—but Marshall ignored him. He had set his sights much higher.
Chapter Two

Paris 1900

The last year of the nineteenth century ended with hints of a glorious new one, with magical new inventions. The first camera to use roll film—the $1 Kodak Brownie—was introduced in 1900 and another modern wonder, the gramophone, won a prize at the world’s fair in Paris. People were reading Theodore Dreiser’s Sister Carrie and Frank Baum’s The Wonderful Wizard of Oz, or mourning the death of Stephen Crane at 29. Life was simpler—and generally cheap: You could spend as much as $1.20 for just four oysters at New York’s new Waldorf-Astoria hotel. But for most Americans a full restaurant meal, soup to dessert, could cost just 15 cents.

* * *

It was the Paris tournament of May-June 1900, Emanuel Lasker later wrote, “that first opened the eyes of the chess world to the caliber of skill that Marshall possessed.” It opened Frank Marshall’s eyes as well and it’s worth considering in detail what a grandmaster tournament was like at the turn of the century.

Paris 1900 was held concurrently with the Paris World Exposition, continuing a tradition of holding chess tournaments during world’s fairs. There had been grand tournaments during the London fairs of 1851, 1862 and 1886 and at the Paris fairs of 1867 and 1878. The 1900 version was by far the strongest chess event of the year end, with a prize fund of 14,300 French francs, one of the most lavish of its era.

Initially, the French organizers limited invitations to 20 players, a large number today, but common in the days when tournaments were expected to last four or five weeks. As it turned out, 17 players registered to play, following the custom of the time, by paying an entry fee, of 100 francs. They also had to submit a forfeit fee of 200 francs, which each player would receive at tournament’s end if they completed their games without dropping out. Even world champion Lasker had to pay.

Besides Lasker, making a rare tournament appearance, Paris 1900 attracted a strong field that included three men who hoped to dethrone him some day—Harry Nelson Pillsbury, 28, of Boston; Géza Maróczy, 30, of Budapest; and Paris’ own hero, Dawid Janowsky, 31. (Janowsky, a naturalized Frenchman, asked to represent Russia in this event, although he had been virtually living at the nearby Café de la Régence for years.) Only Wilhelm Steinitz, who was on his deathbed, and the otherwise unavailable Siegbert Tarrasch and Joseph Blackburne, were missing among the game’s superstars.

Also invited were a second tier of solid but not world-class masters, including Georg Marco of Vienna, James Mason, an Irishman who had lived in America for seventeen years as a young man, and Jackson Whippy Showalter of Lexington, Kentucky, who had been U.S. champion before Pillsbury and who would later play a key role in Marshall’s career. There was also an assortment of French- and English-speaking amateurs, among whom the 22-year-old Marshall easily fit in.

The games were held four days a week in the Grand Cercle on the Boulevard Montmartre, beginning 2 P.M. and lasting until 7 when the players would break for dinner. They would resume, if necessary, at 9 in the evening and continue until a second adjournment at midnight. (Analysis of adjourned positions, even during the dinner break, was strictly forbidden.) The time limit was 30 moves in two hours, followed by 15 an hour, perhaps the most popular format of the day, but far from universal. Some events even varied time limits within the course of a game. When Janowsky and Showalter played a match at the Manhattan Chess Club in 1898, the regimen was 15 moves in the first hour, switching to the slower 25 moves in the next two-hour period, then back to 15 moves an hour thereafter.

International tournaments traditionally begin with a drawing of lots to determine who plays whom each round. But at Paris the organizers favored a then-fashionable twist: once the pairings for each day were determined by lot they were not revealed to the players but sealed instead in dated envelopes. In this way, none of the masters knew whom he would face or on a given afternoon until the appropriate envelope was opened. They could not, therefore, prepare openings for particular days.

But by the second week of play a Parisian spectator could not have escaped noticing that Marshall had prepared a particular set of openings for the tournament and had adopted an overall—and most unusual—tournament strategy: Instead of the slashing attacks that had been identified with his name at London 1889, the young American sought endgames. He evidently believed that the Europeans were most vulnerable
with queens off the board. In each of his first five games Marshall traded queens by the twenty-first move, as he did in this fourth round encounter:

7. Petroff Defense, Marshall Variation
Mason–Marshall, Paris 1900
1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 Nxe5 d6 4 Nf3 Nxe4 5 d4 d5 6 Bd3 Bd6

At the time this ancient, symmetrical continuation was considered quite inferior to 6 ... Be7, and Marshall would spend most of his career reviving it.

7 0–0 0–0 8 c4 Be6 9 c×d5 B×d5 10 Ne3 N×c3 11 b×c3 Nd7!

A theoretical novelty, 1900 style. The old move, 11 ... c5, had been thoroughly discredited by 12 d×c5 B×c5 13 B×h7+ K×h7 14 Ng5+ and so on. After Marshall's 11 ... Nd7 the young Austrian analyst Karl Schlechter recommended 12 Re1 and his older Viennese colleague Marco liked 12 Be3 but neither move promises much. As played, however, Marshall eagerly enters an endgame in which White's pawn problems are more significant than his bishop assets.

12 c4? B×f3! 13 Q×f3 Qb4 14 Qh3 Q×h3 15 g×h3 c5! 16 d5 Ne5 17 Be2 Rae8 18 f4 b6!

Almost forced play since move 12. Black's last is a little finesse designed to get his N to d4. The immediate 18 ... Nc6 19 d×c6 R×e2 20 c×b7 is not so clear. But now 19 f×c5 B×c5 20 Rbl Bd4+ and 21 ... R×e2 loses for White.

19 Bd2 Ne6 20 Bd3 Nd4 21 Kg2 Re7 22 Rae1 Rfe8 23 R×e7 R×e7 24 Kf2 Kf8 25 h4 f5!

In the Wiener Schachzeitung, Marco offered a long analysis of the bishop-of-opposite-color endgame White could force with 26 Be3 g6 27 B×d4 c×d4 28 Kg3 (28 ... Re3+ 29 Rf3 Re1 30 Rfi R×f1! 31 B×f1 Ke7) and which he concluded may be lost because Black's more mobile king could penetrate to d4 or c3.

For example, 32 Bd5 Be7 33 h5 Kd6 34 h×g6 h×g6 35 h4 (35 Kh4 Bd8+) Ke5 36 B×f5f1 g×f5 37 h5 d3 38 Kg3 B×f4 or 36 h5 g×h5 37 B×f5 K×h5 38 Bg6 h4+ and now 39 Kg4 h3 or 39 K×h4 B×f4 wins.

26 b3 h5 27 Kg1 Kf7 28 Rg5 g6 29 Rgl Re8 30 Rbl?

(see diagram)

To stop ... a6 and ... b5, White overlooks the main enemy threat.

30 ... Bb7! 31 Kg3 B×h4+ 32 K×h4 Nh3+ 33 Kg3 N×d2 34 Rd1 Re3+ 35 Kf2 R×d3 36 Ke2 R×h3 37 K×d2 Rf3 38 d6 R×f4 White resigns.

Because of 39 Kc3 Ke8 and so on. "Marshall shows by each move of this game the finest understanding for the respective positions," Marco wrote.

The American's conservative, endgame-based strategy may have been inspired by tournament rules. At London 1883 the organizers decided to dispense with the European scoring system. That system, introduced in the 1860s, made each draw worth a half point and each victory a full point. Normally, this had no great impact on the race for prizes: the player with the most wins was the player who ended up with the most points. In fact, it was not until Wiesbaden 1880 that someone other than the player who won the most games finished first in a major event. But instead of that scoring system, the Parisian organizers wanted a rule requiring that each time a game ended in a draw the players had to try again. The first game wouldn't count, but the second game, with colors reversed, would.

Marshall was among the first to benefit from the rule. A round after beating Mason, Marshall rushed into a rook-and-knight endgame against the obscure Mikos Brody of Rumania. But his strategy backfired and he had to find several good moves to achieve the draw after the forced loss of the Exchange. Thanks to the draw-replay rule, the American got a second chance for a full point:

8. Petroff Defense, Steinitz Variation
Brody–Marshall, Paris 1900
1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 d4 N×c4 4 Bd3 d5 5 N×e5 B×d6 60–0–0–0 7 c4 c6 8 Qe2 Re8 9 c×d5 c×d5 10 B×e4

Accepting a questionable gambit. Better was 9 Nc3 with a small advantage (9 ... Nf6 10 Bg5).

10 ... d×e4 11 Q×e4 f6 12 Qd5+ Re6! 13 f4
White can't move the knight because of 13 ... Bxh2+, but he can save his piece with this threat of 14 f5. However, Black's light-squared bishop is more than enough compensation for his lost pawn.

13 ... Be7! 14 Qxd8+ Bxd8 15 Nf3 Bb6 16 Kh1 Rd6 17 Ne3 Bg4!
18 d5 Na6 19 h3 Bxf3 20 Rx f3 Nb4 21 b3 Nxd5 22 Rd3 Rad8
23 Ba3 Rd6 24 Nxd5 Rxd5 25 Rxd5 Rxd5

White is probably lost already because he cannot keep the enemy rook off the seventh rank (26 Bb4 Rd4!), because his f-pawn is a liability and because of the difference in king mobility.

26 Bb2 Rd2 27 Be3 Rf2 28 g3 Kf7 29 b4 Kg6 30 a4 Rf3 31 Bd4 Bc3 32 Rd1 Rf1+ 33 Kg2 Rgl+ 34 Kh2

Also lost is 34 Kf2 Bc3 35 Kf2 Rxe1 36 Rxe1 Bxe1+ 37 Kxe1 Kf5 and 38 ... Ke4. Marshall refuses to grab pawns but goes for strangulation.

![Diagram](Image)

After 34 Kh2

34 ... Be3 35 g4 h5 36 f5+ Kh6 37 a5 hXg4 38 hXg4 Kg5 39 Kh3 Kf4 40 b5 Kf3 41 Kh2 Rf1! White resigns

It's mate with 42 ... Bf4++. Marshall clearly relished the endgames at Paris. Of his 19 games in the French capital, including replays, only a few ended in the middlegame. Here's one that did finish early—and abruptly—when White failed to go into an endgame at move 23:

9. Three Knights Game
Didier—Marshall, Paris 1900

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 Nc3 Bb4

Marshall and fellow countryman Pillsbury often used this to avoid the Four Knights Game. A Janowsky—Pillsbury game from the previous year's London tournament saw Black achieve equality after 4 Nxe5 0-0 5 Be2 (5 d3 d5) 6 d4 Nf6 7 c3 d6 8 e5 dxe4 9 e4 Nxe3 10 Nxe3 Qb6 11 Be3 Qc7.

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Bg5 c6 5 e4! dxe4 6 Nxe4 Bb4+!
7 Ne5? 8 a3 Bxa3+ 9 bxa3 Qa5 10 Bd2 Ne4 11 Nf3 Nxe3
12 dxe3

White has been outplayed in the opening but makes a fine decision at move 11 and 12. Capturing on c5 is better than 12 Qb3, which allows 12 ... cxd4
13 Nxd4 Qe5+. Now Black must trade queens or allow 13 Qc2.

12 ... Nxd1 13 Bxa5 Nb2?!
But here Black failed to notice that his knight is about to be trapped by 14 a4 and 15 Ra2—and that it could have been saved by 13 ... b6, as pointed out by Schlechter (14 c×b6 a×b6 15 B×b6 Ne3 or 14 Bd2 Nb2 15 a4 Ba5). But as played, Black is still hopeful of winning with his extra pawn with ... Bd7 and ... Na4.

14 a4 Bd7

A splendid move that forces Black to occupy c6 in an awkward way (15 ... N×c6 or 15 ... b×c6 allows 16 Bc3, trapping the knight, and 15 ... B×c6 invites 16 Ne5 B×a4 17 Ra2). Compare this with the immediate 15 Ne5 which would have let Lasker slip out with 15 ... Ne6.

15 ... B×c6 16 Ne5 Be4?

A move, probably made while overlooking Marshall's 21st, costs Lasker the game. With 16 ... Nd7 17 N×c6 b×c6 18 Bc3 Rb8, Black's knight is ready to escape. Teichmann, writing in the British Chess Magazine, felt White had no good continuation since 19 Ra2 N×c4 20 B×c4 Rb1+ wins for Black. But Marshall regarded 19 B×g7 Rg8 20 Bd4 e5 20 Bc3 Ne5 21 a5 f6 as double-edged.

17 Bc6 f6 18 f3 Be2! 19 Kd2 N×a4 20 K×c2 N×c3 21 Nd3! Nd5 22 e×d5 e×d5 23 Nc5! b6 24 Bb5+ Kf7 25 Na4 Nc6!

Black, through clever tactics (26 B×c6 Rxc8), has avoided immediate dangers such as 25 ... Rd8? 26 N×b6 and has serious drawing chances. Now we see a classic battle of three pawns against an extra piece.

26 Ne3 Rb8 27 Rh1 Ne7 28 Kb2 Rc7 29 Bd3 a5 30 Na4 Rc6 31 Rac1 Bb8 32 R×c6 N×c6 33 Re1 Ne5 34 Rc7+ Ke6 35 Bd5 g5 36 Ra7 d4! 37 Ra6 Kd5 38 Ke2! Bb7

White could not take on b6 at move 38 (38 N×b6+ Kc5 or 38 R×b6 R×b6 39 N×b6+ Kc5) or now, but his patience is soon rewarded with the d-pawn and all resistance collapses.

39 Ra8 Ne6 40 Kd2 Nb4 41 Rd8+ Kc5 42 Nb2 Rc7 43 Nc4+ Kf5 44 R×d4 Rc5 45 Be8! Rd5 46 Ne3+ Ke5 47 N×d5 K×d4 48 N×b4 a×b4 49 Bf7 f5 50 Bg8 h5 51 Bf7 h4 52 h3! b5 53 Be8 Kc4 54 Bd7! b3

Or 54 ... f4 55 Be6+ Kd4 56 Bb3! Ke5 57 Kd3 and wins.

55 B×f5 Kd4 56 Bd3 b2 57 Kc2 Ka3 58 Kbl! Resigns

The defeat of Lasker was a sensation, and quick wins in the next two rounds left Marshall with a surprising score of 6–1, tied with Pillsbury. The two Americans trailed Lasker and Mieses of Leipzig, who each had 6½ points but had not yet had the bye that each player was to receive because of the odd number of players.

The Americans eventually met in the eleventh round, and Marshall reminded the U.S. Champion beforehand of their 1893 exhibition game. "I'll never forget that game," he told Pillsbury. "It was the first I ever won from a master—even if you were blindfolded. But you're not blindfolded now, so here's your chance for revenge!" he said according to My Fifty Years. Their Paris encounter was the first of ten tournament games in a scintillating rivalry which was fated to last only four years.

11. Petroff Defense

Pillsbury–Marshall, Paris 1900

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 d4 d5!?

Nearly seventy years later David Bronstein played this in a Soviet Championship, hopeful in the belief that he had found an exception to the rule that Black cannot maintain a symmetrical position for very long. The game (versus Leonid Stein) went 4 e×d5 exd4 5 Bb5+ c6 6 d×c6 b×c6 7 Be2! and Black struggled unsuccessfully for a draw.

4 e×d5 exd4 5 Be4 Bb4+ 6 c3 Qc7+?

Marco considered this virtually an offer of a draw (7 Qe2 Q×e2+), whereas Marshall, true to tournament strategy, believed it offered Black good chances because White's pawns would be weak in the endgame. However 7 Kd2!, threatening 8 Re1, would have tested Black severely.

7 Be2 d×c3 8 b×c3 Be5 9 0–0 0–0 10 c4 Re8 11 Bd3 Bg4!

White's center grants him an edge in space but he has development problems (12 Re1 B×f3 loses a piece). Here he should play 12 Nbd2.
12 Bb2? Ne4! 13 Nbd2?

After 13 ... Nbd2

Pillsbury later considered 13 Ne3 as best, while 13 B×e4 and 14 Nbd2 was good enough for rough equality. He evidently discounted Black's sacrificial combination, apparently by missing his seventeenth move in his calculations.

13 ... N×f2! 14 R×f2 B×f2+ 15 K×f2 Qe3+ 16 Kg3 Q×d3 17 K×g4 Re2!

"The remainder of the game is very well played by Mr. Marshall," Richard Teichmann wrote in the British Chess Magazine, indicating the outcome has already been decided by this move. The rook cuts off king retreats to f2 and immediately threatens 18 ... Qe6+. Note that with his next move White sets a small trap. (On 18 Kh3 h5 Black seems to be winning with 19 ... Qf5+ but this turns out to be much more complicated after 19 Q×c2! Q×c2 20 Re1 Qe3 21 Re8+ Kh7 22 Ne4!,)

18 Kh3 Nd7! 19 Re1 h5 20 Qc2 Ne5!

Black will not fall for 20 ... R×d2 21 Q×d2 Qf5+ 22 Kg3 Nc5 because 23 Re1 Nd3 24 h3 allows White to hang on. The point of Marshall's twentieth move is to meet 21 Q×d3 N×d3 22 R×d3 with 22 ... g5! and wins. The rest of the game is one-sided, as even the great Pillsbury plays to the bitter end.

21 g3 g5! 22 g4 R×d2! 23 Q×d3 R×d3 24 Re3 f5 25 Kg2 f×g4 26 N×g5 Rd2+ 27 Kg3 R×b2 28 h3 Rf8 29 h×g4 h×g4 30 K×g4 Rf2 White resigns

This helped eliminate another rival in Marshall's unexpected race for prize money. In fact, had it not been for his dismal loss in the next round, he would have retained hopes of second place. But as Black against Showalter—in yet another Petroff—he defended a difficult position stupidly until missing an easy draw on the sixty-first move. The absence of the modern three-time repetition rule clearly hurt Marshall as Showalter backed and shifted for hours in a rook-and-pawn endgame. A final blunder on the 106th move forced Marshall's resignation five moves later.

In the final week of play, Marshall came back. Against Mieses' trademark Vienna Game he traded queens on move seven and then played himself out of bad game and into a win in 37 moves. He scored two other smart wins when he returned to 1 d4.

12. Queen's Gambit Declined, Tartakower Defense

Marshall—Marco, Paris 1900

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Ne3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Be7 5 e3 b6 6 Nf3 Bb7 7 Bd3 0–0

Marco knew that 7 ... Nbd7 was the normal move here but he was also well aware that two days before Amos Burn had played the text against Marshall and was greeted with a speculative kingside attack. Marco believed Burn had simply blundered away his king safety and he wanted to test Marshall himself.

8 c×d5 c×d5 9 B×f6! B×f6 10 h4

After 10 h4

Burn was known for arriving at the board with a rack of pipes, which he smoked one after another as the game plodded on, as so many of his contemporaries did. But against Marshall, as the American later told it, Burn began fumbling with his pipe and tobacco before the opening had a name and was mated before he got his brier fully lit. He saw that 11 B×f4 K×h7 12 Ng5+ Kf8 13 Qh5 would be devastating and appreciated that by stopping this eventuality with 10 ... h6 he would invite the opening of a file by 11 g4! and 12 g5.

Marco would later point out that 10 ... c5 was playable because on 11 B×h7+ K×h7 12 Ng5+ Black could play 12 ... Kh6. However, he had a different defense in mind for Marshall.

10 ... g6 11 h5 c5
Burn played 11 \ldots Re8 12 h×g6 hxg6 13 Qc2 Bg7?? (13 \ldots Kg7?) and after 14 B×g6 his chances, like his pipe, were extinguished: 14 \ldots f×g6 15 Q×g6 Nd7 16 Ng5 Qf6 17 Rh8+ Resigns. The play on both sides was so natural that this game has been unintentionally repeated more than once in master and amateur tournament competition since 1900.

12 h×g6 h×g6 13 Ne5! B×e5 14 d×e5 Qg5 15 Qf3 Q×e5 16 0-0-0 Kg7?

A blunder. Necessary was 16 \ldots Nd7 so that 17 Qh3 could be met by 17 \ldots Rf8. White would do better with 17 Rh6, with unclear chances.

17 Qh3! Ne6 18 f4!

Teichmann, among the many who annotated this game, believed it was this move that Marco overlooked when he prepared an improvement over the Marshall-Burn game. By driving the queen to a poor defensive square (18 \ldots Qf6?? 19 Qh6+ and mate next) Marshall heads to a quick close.

18 \ldots Qe6 19 Qh6+ Kf6 20 Qg5+ Kg7 21 f5 Qe5 22 f6+! Q×f6

Hobson's choice, since 22 \ldots Kg8 23 Rh8+ is also a mate in two.

23 Qh6+ Resigns

It had been a magnificent debut for Marshall and could have been greater still. On the day of the final round, June 19, the standings read:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lasker</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marshall</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pillsbury</td>
<td>11½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maroczy</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lasker couldn't be caught. But a second place finish was distinctly possible for Marshall. Pillsbury had White in his last game against the rank outsider Rosen while Marshall had to play Black against Maroczy. Marshall chose a Petroff and, once more, traded queens early, at move 11. But a blunder at move 14 gave him a lost position and he could have resigned well before he did at the sixty-first move. Pillsbury, meanwhile, sneaked past him into sole second prize and Marshall had to be content with a tie for third with Maroczy. The "clever young American," as the tournament book described him, received 1750 francs, a gold pin in the shape of a knight and an invaluable boost in reputation.

The tournament ended June 20 and Marshall remained in Europe for several weeks more. He did not compete at the year's second major event, which began in late July at Munich. But Marshall was on hand when Amos Burn with the help of Lasker used the occasion of the German tournament to organize a chessplayer union. Among the charter members of this doomed experiment were most of the venerable names of chess of the day: Joseph Henry Blackburne and Isidor Gunsberg of Britain, Teichmann and Siegbert Tarrasch of Germany, Mikhail Chigorin and Emanuel Schiffers of Russia, Karl Schlechter, Marco and Max Weiss of Austria. And there was one more charter member, the world's newest international master, Frank Marshall of Brooklyn.
Chapter Three

Sophomore Marshall

1901–1903: It was ragsime. Americans danced the cakewalk and listened to “Bill Bailey, Won't You Please Come Home?” They went to the movies to see The Great Train Robbery and cheered as Michigan crushed Stanford 49–0 in the first Rose Bowl. The surrey that ran on gas, the first Oldsmobile, was introduced in 1901 and set off the craze to own a car. Madame and Monsieur Curie won the Nobel Prize in physics, and Jack London established his reputation with Call of the Wild. But hardly anyone in the West took note of What Is to Be Done? by a Russian radical who had taken the name Lenin.

* * *

Marshall lived off his Paris success for four years, during which he received so many European invitations that he became a familiar face on the Continental tournament circuit. If he was to be a professional, these invitations were essential, for there was little chess outside of tournaments and few tournaments outside of Europe. In his own brief career, U.S. Champion Harry Pillsbury played in 17 tournaments—but only 4 of them in the United States.

Over the period 1901 to 1904, Marshall played in seven international round robins on the Continent, using London as his headquarters. In between events, he would give simultaneous exhibitions and lectures and take on minor masters in small-stakes matches. This did not make him rich or famous but at the time it didn’t occur to Marshall to be either. On his occasional trips home Marshall did manage to retain his Manhattan Chess Club championship (1901) and play in a few local events, such as the annual New York State Chess Association tournament. But after Paris his mind was set on Europe.

In London Marshall frequented the chess haunts he had heard of as a boy in Montreal, particularly Simpson’s Divan, in the Strand. There he met Harry Bird, a mutton-chopped veteran who, in Marshall’s words, “gave up all for chess.” Bird, then in his 70s, was no longer the brilliant eccentric he had been in 1851 when he played in the world’s first international tournament. Instead, the best players to be found in London were the Midlander Joseph Blackburne, in his 60s, Amos Burn, a Liverpool businessman who was past 50, and Isidor Gunsberg, a prolific newspaper columnist who was approaching that age.

“A great rivalry existed between them,” Marshall later wrote in his notes, and it was difficult to decide which, “when in his best form, was the best of the lot.” London’s rich chess life also attracted several European masters such as Teichmann, a former Berliner who earned a living teaching foreign languages, and his fellow German with the regal name of Paul Saladin Leonardt. It was a genial but fiercely competitive milieu and Marshall loved every minute of it.

Second only to London in the young American’s heart was Monte Carlo. The fabled casino town was the scene of four annual international tournaments beginning in 1901, and although he won a prize in only one, Marshall was a prominent figure in each. It was a charming place for a major chess tournament. The playing site, the casino’s Cercle Privé was described in the Prague publication Bohemia as “a richly decorated first floor hall”.

From one side there opens a beautiful view of gardens surrounding the casinos, villas and hotels… From the other side—luxurious panorama of the southern sea with winding shore, visible right up to Cape St. Martin…. The presence in the hall of a large roulette wheel acts somewhat strangely on the players. You don’t need to be reminded that we are in Monte Carlo and in this same hall from 9 to 2 each night roulette is played among the select of society.

The va banque spirit at the tables at night may also have influenced Marshall’s daytime play. In the 1901 tournament his two games with Mikhail Chigorin were typically outrageous. He took absurd risks, in the apparent belief that if his attacks failed he could always draw the resulting endgame. And he did, even when three pawns down:

13. French Defense, Winawer Variation (by transposition)  
Marshall–Chigorin, Monte Carlo 1901

1 d4 d5 2 Nc3 e6 3 e4 Bd6 4 Bd2 dxe4 5 Qh4 Qxh4 6 0-0-0

A very rare, perhaps unique for 1901, gambit position from the Winawer Variation (whose normal move order is 1 e4 e5 2 d4 d5 3 Nc3 Bf5). The variation is named after the Polish businessman Simon Winawer, who was having one of his last—and worst—tournaments at Monte Carlo 1901.
6 . . . f5 7 Bg5!? 

Marshall eyes a rook check at d8 as he offers a third pawn. Thirty years later, when the Winawer had become popular, White strengthened his play with 7 Qe3, with the idea of 7 . . . Bc6 8 Bb4+ B×f4 9 Q×f4 Qc5 10 f3 Ne7 11 f×e4 0-0 12 Nf3.

7 . . . Q×e2 8 Qh3 Be7? 9 Kb1

Tricky play by both sides (9 . . . B×g5 10 Qh5+ regains the piece favorably). Note that 9 Be3? Qh4 allows Black to consolidate comfortably.

9 . . . Bd7 10 g4! Ne6 11 g×f5 Q×f5 12 B×e7 Q×h3 13 B×h3 K×e7 14 N×e4 Nf6 15 Nc5 Nd8 16 Nf3 Bc6 17 Rhl b6

After 17 . . . b6

Black has kept two of his two pawns and appears to have a direct route to victory. But Marshall now illustrates why he became known as "der findigereiche Amerikane"—the American who always managed to come up with a resource:

18 N×e6! N×e6 19 Rde1 Ne4

Or 19 . . . Be4 20 Nd2 Bd5 21 e4, regaining his piece.

20 Bf5 N6c5 21 b4 g6 22 B×e4 N×e4 23 Ng5 Rhf8 24 R×f8 R×f8 25 N×e4 B×e4?

No less an authority than Bobby Fischer called Chigorin the finest endgame player of his day. But here he misses a better chance in 25 . . . Kd7, and later passes up a good 30 . . . Rf5!!

26 R×e4+ Kd6 27 Rd4+ Ke6 28 Re4+ Kd6 29 Kb2 g5 30 b5 h5 31 Ra1 f4 32 R×g7 R×f7 33 Ra8 h4 34 Rh8 g3 35 R×h4 g2 36 Rd4+ Ke5 37 Rg4 Rf2 38 Kb3 Kf5 39 h3

The game lasted more than 20 moves beyond this point before Chigorin conceded the draw. Findigereiche indeed.

Besides the bizarre experience of playing in a gambling palace, the Monte Carlo series featured another oddity, a version of the Paris antidraw rule. This was the brainchild of Arnous de Rivière, a tournament organizer who had once been a fair amateur player and had been able to give Paul Morphy a fair game back in the 1850s.

Rivière’s idea to discourage draws was a compromise with critics of the Paris version, who said it placed on the weaker players the onus of having to play two good games against their superiors in order to avoid a zero. Under Rivière’s rule each draw would be counted—but only as one quarter point for each player. A second game would then be held and in that replay, the winner would get a half point and the loser nothing. Or, if drawn, the two players could receive another quarter point apiece. This was the case with Marshall and Chigorin, who played another wild game, this one also drawn in 56 moves despite Marshall’s reaching the edge of defeat several times.

The 1901 tournament was a strong one, and could have been stronger if Lasker and Maroczy had not declined their invitations. (According to Rivista Scacchistica Italiana, they were offended at the idea that the saltai tournament would also be held at Monte Carlo at the same time.) But the rest of the field was sold: The flamboyant Janowsky, the sad Chaplinesque figure of Karl Schlechter, the hard-working journalist Jacques Mieses, and three men who had challenged Steinitz in world championship matches: Chigorin, Blackburne, and Gunsberg.

Only the hapless French amateur Didier was clearly outclassed. He achieved a score unique in chess history, thanks to the Rivière rule, of one-quarter point out of 13. Against the tail-enders like him, Marshall took the greatest risks:

14. Italian Game

Marshall–Reggio, Monte Carlo 1901

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 Bc4 Be5 4 d4!? 

This trappy move order, seeking to transpose into a Max Lange Attack (4 . . . e×d4 5 0-0 Nf6 6 e5), was an early favorite of Marshall’s despite its terrible reputation among opening experts.

4 . . . B×d4! 5 0-0 d6 6 N×d4 N×d4 7 f4 Be6!

Now 8 B×e6 N×e6 9 f×e6 d×e5 10 Qh5 Qd4+ and 11 . . . Nf6 would leave White with scant compensation.

8 B×d3 f6!? 9 Be3 Nc6 10 f5! Bf7 11 Nc3 Nge7 12 Qg4 Rg8 13 Qh4 h6 14 a3
Typical of the liberties Marshall took against amateurs. Against a master he would certainly have anticipated 14 ... Nb4 with 14 Bb5. But here he wants to give Black enough rope—and invite him into the complications of 14 ... d5 15 e×d5 N×d5 16 N×d5 Q×d5 17 Be4 and 18 Rad1.

14 ... Nb8? 15 Rad1 Nd7 16 Be2! a6 17 Kh1!

Since g7 is a terrible target now and castling is out of the question, Black becomes quite confused from here on.

17 ... g6? 18 Q×h6 g×f5 19 e×f5 Rf8 20 Bh5 B×h5 21 Q×h5+ Rh7

22 g4! d5 23 g5! d4 24 g6 and Black resigned shortly.

But against the better players there were just so many risks that could be safely taken, and this was evident when Marshall badly misplayed an Albin Counter gambit against Simon Alapin. The American was also crushed by Winawer when he tried to meet the latter's favorite 1 d4 d5 2 c4 c6 3 Nc3 e5 with 4 c×d5 c×d5 5 e4 d×e4 6 d5 Nf6 7 Bg5 and had scant compensation after 7 ... Qb6 8 B×f6 g×f6 9 Bb5+ Bd7 10 B×d7+ N×d7 11 Ng×e2 f5 12 Qa×e4 0–0–0. The Pole won in 37 moves, and Marshall finished dismally, in tenth place with 5½–8½.

But it was a learning experience in more ways than one. On his first trip to the South of France Marshall discovered his weakness for the roulette wheel. "I believe every chess player of note who has visited Monte Carlo, with the possible exception of Pillsbury and Blackburne, has been bitten by the game at the pavilion," he later told the New Orleans Pica yune. Marshall recalled that during the 1901 tournament he was at one point "several hundred dollars to the good"—and at a time when it would have paid his rent for the better part of a year. "But I hadn't the sense to quit, and kept at the thing evening after evening until I was shy about $2000 and barely had railway fare to Paris and expense money home."

Janowsky, who finished first and third in the 1901 and 1902 tournaments, lost everything at the tables and reputedly got his train fare back home from the casino bank when his sponsor, Leo Nardus, refused to bail him out of yet another of his gambling fiascos. As for Marshall, he felt he had "gained a new experience and sometimes, though considering myself a fool, I think it worth the money."

He returned home that summer to play in a small tournament organized by the New York State Chess Association at Buffalo in August, during another world's fair, the Pan-American Exposition. There Marshall repeated his Paris success in one game against Pillsbury, who was far and away the best American player of the day. But in a second game, with Black, Marshall demonstrated how badly he could play.

15. Queen Pawn's Game
Pillsbury–Marshall, Buffalo 1901

1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 c5 3 e4 c×e4 4 Nc3 e×c3 5 Ne5 Nf6 6 b3 c×b3 7 a×b3

Black's attempt at a light-square blockade of the center now leads to a strategic rout.

7 ... e6 8 Bb5+ Bd7 9 0–0 a6 10 Bd3 Ne6 11 Ne2 N×e5 12 d×e5 Ng4 13 f4 Bc5 14 Nd4 Qh4 15 h3 h5 16 Qe1! Q×e1 17 R×e1 Nh6 18 Ba3! B×d4? 19 e×d4 Bc6 20 Bc5 Ne7 21 h4 Rh6 22 Kf2 Nh8 23 b4 b5 24 Ra5 Bb7 25 R×e6! R×e6 26 R×a6!

A routine Exchange sacrifice for two pawns that must win.

26 ... B×a6 27 R×a6 Rc7 28 B×b5+ Kf7 29 Ra8 Kg6 30 Be8+ Kh7 31 h5 Ng6 32 b6 Rh7 33 g3!

After 33 g3
Not even allowing Black the liberty of 33 Bc6 Rx b6 and 34 N x b4, Marshall resigned here. "My opening moves show anxiety to try and win," he wrote in his unpublished notes. "Faulty in several instances but still the idea to attack is always there."

The spirit of attack followed him back to Monte Carlo the following February, for his second trip to the casino tournament. Marshall was beginning to feel comfortable with European masters, and was able to recall their peculiarities. Years later he would note how Rudolf Spielmann would "continually twitch and squirm around in his chair" and Chigorin would habitually swing his crossed foot back and forth nervously. Another master, Richard Teichmann, made a big impression on Marshall: "Tall, stout, apparently strong and powerful, but was nearly always in poor health," he wrote. "He had but one eye. But he was a strong chess player and very difficult to beat. The sick man that beat me at Vienna 1903," he added.

There were many others Marshall was meeting whose influence far exceeded their playing skill. There was, for example, the "very clever" Leopold (Lipot) Hoffer, the "legless" annotator who commanded worldwide respect through his editorship of the chess column in The Field. Another man who made an impression on Marshall was the Monte Carlo tournament patron, Prince Andrei Davidovich Dadiani of Mingrelia. The prince, a general-lieutenant in the Russian army, was wealthy and influential and, Marshall noted, "always in arguments, especially with Chigorin."

At the pretournament players' meeting that opened Monte Carlo 1902 Gunsberg, joined by Chigorin, who spoke only Russian, objected to using the Rivière scoring system again. Chigorin didn't like it because, among other complaints, some players — those prone to draw — had to play more chess than others. The Russian pointed out that in the previous year's tournament, two entrants played 15 games apiece, two others played 17 — and one, his countryman Alapin, had to play 21. But Chigorin and Gunsberg were overruled and the Rivière rule remained.

The players had more success in arguing against the distribution of prizes and got the organizing committee to fatten the 14,000 French franc prize fund. This was a small victory in an age when the best-known chess columnist, Hoffer, would write about another event (Cologne 1898), "It is true the prize fund is not large, but it is well known that chess players are not interested in money — only honor."

There were also special prizes and for this Marshall was a prize victim. His loss to Marco was awarded a 100 franc second brilliancy prize.

Two other losses, to Mieses and Gunsberg, also earned prizes. A special prize for the best game by Black in a French Defense went to Marshall for his game with Pillsbury. But his play, even in victory, was often beyond risky:

16. Queen's Gambit Declined, Orthodox Defense

Marshall—von Scheve, Monte Carlo 1902

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Nf3 Bc7 5 Bf4 c6?!  

The Queen's Gambit Declined rule of thumb — that Bf4 should be met by ... c5 and that Bg5 is best answered by ... c6 — was not widely known in 1902.

6 e3 Nbd7 7 Re1 0-0 8 Bd3 d x c4 9 B x c4 N d 5 10 B g 5 N f 6 11 c4?  

There is no earthly reason why this sacrifice, and his transparent fourteenth move, should succeed against a master like Theodore von Scheve. Nevertheless:

11 ... N x e 3 12 B x e 3 N x c 4 13 Bd 3 N f 6 14 b x a 5 Q a 5 15 B e 5 N g 4 ?

Exactly the kind of error the American was waiting for.

16 B x h 7 + K x h 7 17 N g 5 + B x g 5 18 h x g 5 + Nh 6 19 Q d 3 + Resigns

Almost as easy was Marshall's game against James Mason. The Irish-American had been a world class player in his prime, the 1870s and 80s. But, as Hoffer put it, "If Mason could only play as well as Steinitz between the last move of one game and the first move of the next, I would back him against all creation." Mason had descended into alcoholism by the time Marshall met him and he was no match for a man 28 years younger. In six games between the two, played near the end of Mason's career, Marshall scored five wins and a loss.
17. English Opening
_Mason–Marshall, Monte Carlo 1902_

1 c4 e5 2 Nc3 f5 3 e4

This and his fifth and seventh moves are part of a doomed strategic plan: to occupy the light-colored squares. Compare with Steinitz–Sam Loyd, Paris 1867, which went 1 e4 e5 2 Nc3 f5? 3 exf5! Nxf6 4 g4 h6? 5 Bg2 d5 6 d3 Bc5 7 h3 0-0 8 Nge2 c6 9 Nf3 and White won quickly.

3 ... Nf6 4 d3 Nc6 5 e×f5 Bb4 6 Bd2 0-0 7 g4 d5 8 c×d5?

White had to try 8 g5 B×c3 and see what happens.

8 ... B×c3 9 B×c3 Q×d5 10 Qf3 Qc5!

Far superior to 10 ... Q×f3 11 N×f3 N×g4 when 12 Bh3 offers White drawing chances. Now Black's knight threatens an entrance at d4 or b4.

11 Ne2 Nb4 12 Rc1

After 12 Rc1

12 ... N×g4! 13 Q×g4 N×d3+ 14 Kd2 B×f5 15 Bb4? Q×b4+ 16 Q×b4 N×b4

White could have resigned here but played until mate—only nine moves away. To make the game interesting he had to try 15 Qg3.

17 Ne3 Rad8+ 18 Ke3 Ne2+ 19 Kf3 Rd4! 20 Rg1 Be4+ 21 Kg3 Rf3+ 22 Kg4 Bd5+ 23 Kg5 h6+ 24 Kh5 Bf7+ 25 Rg6 Rf5 mate

With a larger (20 players) tournament than the previous year and also a somewhat weaker one, Marshall should have expected to fatten his score. He did manage to win one of the most remarkable games ever played, as White against Chigorin’s favorite defense to the Queen’s Gambit. Some forty years later the moves would illustrate a Life magazine profile of Marshall: 1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 c6 4 e4 Nf6?!

6 e4 e6 7 d×e6. Now the Russian blundered with 7 ... f×e6?? and after 8 Qb5+ he resigned (8 ... g6 9 Q×a5 wins a knight). But there were few games like this for Marshall and he finished 11–8 for ninth place.

Marshall did better in four other events this year. He won a short match from Teichmann by 3–1 with one draw, in London. He also defeated two local amateurs in matches: William Ward, the leading City of London Chess Club player, and Rudolf Loman, a Dutch musician with a fine talent for chess. And in July Marshall played for the first time in Germany, at the thirteenth Congress of the German Chess Union, at Hannover.

This was Marshall’s first experience with a true European congress, in which several events, ranging in strength from amateur to grandmaster, were held concurrently. He was invited to the strongest of the nine sections, a measure of the American’s stature that placed him well ahead of youngsters such as 19-year-old Ossip Bernstein of Moscow, who ended up in the second section, where he won second prize. Bernstein would meet Marshall off and on over the next forty years as he became the world’s finest amateur player.

In tournaments like Hannover, Marshall often stood out if only in appearance. He was, like Pillsbury, young and clean-shaven in an era of hirsute veterans. Their rivals often wore moustaches (e.g., Lasker, Janowsky, Maróczy, Milan Vidmar, Schlechter, Akiba Rubinstein, Mieses, Marco) or beards, like Bernstein. Some had both, like Siegbert Tarrasch, Teichmann and Blackburne. The contrast could not have been greater between Marshall, slouched casually at the board, and the bearded 51-year-old Chigorin, leaning back in a chair in a three-quarter length suit, giving the appearance of enormous reserved strength. At Hannover they continued their combat.

18. Queen’s Gambit Declined, Semi-Slav Defense
_Marshall–Chigorin, Hannover 1902_

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 c6 4 e4 Nf6?!

This invites 5 e5! and was played to avoid the complications of 4 ... d×e4 5 N×e4 Bb4+ 6 Bd2 Q×d4 7 B×b4 Q×e4+ 8 Be2, as Marshall had played against Schlechter at Monte Carlo 1902. Today 8 ... Na6 9 Bc3 Ne7 is "book" but Schlechter chose 8 ... Nd7?! 9 Nf3 e5 10 Bc3 Ng6 but was soon lost following Marshall’s 11 Qd6! Qc6 12 Qg3 0-0 13 Rdl Nh5 14 Qh4 g6 15 R×d7! Q×d7 (15 ... B×d7 16 Ne5) 16 g4.

5 Bg5?! d×e4 6 N×e4 Nbd7 7 Nf3 Qb6 8 c5!

Unwilling to accept the simplification of 8 N×f6+, Marshall assumes a gambit spirit.
8 ... Qxb2 9 Ned2 Qb4 10 Bd3 Qa5 11 0-0 Qc7 12 Rcl b6 13 Nb3 Bb7 14 Bh4 Be7 15 Re1 0-0 16 Bg3 Qd8 17 Qc2 h6 18 Qe2 Re8

White may have compensation for his pawn if he can take aim at h7 with Bbl and Qe2.

19 Ne5 Nxe5 20 dxe5 Nd7 21 Red1 Qc7 22 Qe4 g6! 23 Qe3 Bf8 24 h4 h5! 25 cxb6 a x b6 26 Bbl c5 27 Bf4?

Black has defended accurately and here White’s slim chances of survival rested with 27 Rd2 or 27 Nd2.

27 ...Bg7 28 Rd6 Bd5 29 Qg3 Ra4 30 Rd1 Rxf4!

The rest (... B x e5) is elementary.

31 R x d7 Q x d7 32 Q x f4 Qc7 33 Rel Qe6 34 Qg5 Ra8l 35 Re3 Ra4 36 Nd2 Rd4 37 Ra3 Rg4 White resigns

During this period, when Marshall’s failures seemed to outnumber his successes, another of his frequent opponents was Isidor Gunsberg. Although born in Budapest, Gunsberg moved to London with his parents when he was nine and he was thoroughly English when Marshall met him. Marshall later recalled Gunsberg as “very conservative,” in play and attire, and “a connoisseur of good hard chess,” who, like Amos Burn, kept in shape through long walks. Marshall’s game with Gunsberg from the German congress demonstrated a new sharpness in his play, along with his by-now customary ruthless endgame skill.

19. Queen’s Gambit Accepted

Marshall—Gunsberg, Hannover 1902

1 d4 d5 2 e4 d x e4 3 Nf3 c5 4 d5 b5?

"The style of Gunsberg [is] to win a pawn and try and hold it,” Marshall wrote in his unpublished notes. “But here it appears premature.” Today 4 ... e6 is recognized as leading to a quick and relatively even endgame (5 Ne3 e x d5 6 Q x d5).

5 c4 Nf6 6 a4! N x e4

Since 6 ... a6 7 a x b5 was out of the question Black had to concede the collapse of his queenside.

7 a x b5 Nd6 8 Ne3 g6 9 Bf4 Bg7 10 B x d6 l e x d6

Black misjudges the nature of what would be recognized as a Modern Benoni Defense position—that is, after Marshall introduced that opening twenty-five years later. Better was 11 ... Q x d6.

11 Qe2+ Qe7 12 Nd2! Nd7 13 N x c4 Ne5 14 N x e5 Q x e5?

The endgame is lost due to Black’s inability to capture safely on e6 after move 18.

15 Q x e5+ B x e5 16 b6 a6 17 Bb5+! Kd8 18 Be6l Rh6 19 Na4 Bb7 20 0-0 Ke8 21 f4 Bd4+ 22 Kh1 c4 23 Rac1 B x c6 24 R x c4! B x b6 25 R x c6+ Be7 26 Rfc1 Rd7 27 R x d6 Rd8


28 R x a6 Kb8 29 Ne5l R x b2 30 Rcl Bb6 31 Na4!! and wins

But Hannover 1902 was another minus score for the American and he once again seemed to be in contention for fewest draws. He made 2 draws in 18 games, while losing 8. And while he scored 6 1/2–1/2 against the seven players at the bottom of the scoretable, he managed only one win, over his old Brooklyn friend William Ewart Napier, and a draw with Janowsky, out of his eight games against those who finished above him.
Breakthrough

In *My Fifty Years* Marshall described his 1901–3 results as only fair, with the result that I was only succeeding in disappointing myself and those who had faith in me. The chess world, which had been electrified by my defeats of Lasker and Pillsbury at Paris, began to think I was just a “flash in the pan” and not to be taken too seriously.

Nevertheless, in 1903 he was invited once more to Monte Carlo. And again there was a bit of controversy. Gunsberg was not invited that year because of his public criticism of the Rivière scoring system. Janowsky also was not invited because of a feud he was having with Rivière. And Chigorin, who had been invited, was “disinvited” at the request of the president of the tournament committee, Prince Dadiani. The prince was offended by some criticism of his play Chigorin had made in Russia.

Aside from first and second prize, 4500 and 2500 French francs, all the other places were rewarded only with “point money.” Today this consolation money is prorated according to the number of points scored by the nonprize winners. But at Monte Carlo 1903 there was another anti-draw wrinkle. The fee schedule for point money was based on wins being counted as full points but draws scored as quarter-points. As a result, Marshall went home with 559 francs for his ninth place finish, thanks in part to agreeing only four times to draws. In comparison, Mason received 538 francs and the “sad, congenial” Polish veteran Jean Taubenhaus received 426, even though they tied for tenth place. Mason paid the financial price for drawing four more times than Taubenhaus.

Marshall was inconsistent throughout his third Monte Carlo, playing well some days and horribly others. He demonstrated superb technique in two games, against Pillsbury and, on the Black side of a Fron’s Gambit, against Adolf Albin. This remarkable Rumanian had not entered serious chess until playing his first tournament game at age 43. Chess in those days was not the young man’s game that it would become in midcentury. Albin, like Emanuel Lasker, played in his last event at age 68, while Blackburne and Jackson Showalter were still doing well in tournaments in their mid-70s.

20. Fron’s Gambit

*Albin–Marshall, Monte Carlo 1903*

1 f4 e5! 2 fxe5 d6 3 cxd6 Bxd6 4 Nf3 Bg4 5 e3 Nc6 6 d4 Nf6 7 Bd3 h5 8 c4 Nb4 9 Nc3 c6 10 Bb5 Qc7 11 a3 Na6 12 Qc2 Qe7 13 Ne4! Bc7 14 Nxf6+ Qxf6 15 0–0 0–0–0 16 Ne5 Qd6 17 b4 Be6

18 c5 Qe7 19 Qe4 Rhf8 20 Ba2! B×a2 21 R×a2 B×e5! 22 Q×e5 Q×e5 23 d×e5 Rd5 24 e6 f6 25 Rd2 R×d2 26 B×d2 Kd8 27 e4 Ke7 28 Bf4 K×e6 29 Bd6 Rc8

In theory White’s bishop is “bad” but it has greater scope here than the enemy knight. Now 30 Rf3 could give him winning chances.

30 e5 f5! 31 Rf3 g5! 32 Rb3 Ne7 33 Rh3 h4 34 g3 Nd5! 35 g×h4 g4 36 Rg3 Rh8 37 Rb3 R×h4 38 b5 f4 39 b×c6 b×c6 40 Rh7 f3 41 R×a7 Nf4 42 Re7+ Kd5 43 Rg7 R×h2!

Of course, 44 K×h2 f2 wins. Black’s technique is remarkable because this is the kind of endgame young players often lose against older veterans.

44 c6 Rg2+ 45 Kf1 Nh3 46 Kc1 Re2+ 47 Kd1 Nf2+ 48 Kc1 Nd3+ 49 Kd1 Nb2+ 50 Kc1 f2 51 Rf7 K×e6 52 Rf8 Kd5 53 Bg3 Nd3+ White resigns.

In 1903 there was also considerable unhappiness with the playing conditions at Monte Carlo. Tarrasch, the tournament winner, wrote a nasty article in the *Berliner Lokal-Anzeiger* complaining of low prizes, excessive noise in the casino and Rivière’s refusal to do anything about the noise. A French correspondent for *Bohemia* noted how casually the players were being treated:

The directors of the casino placed five servants for the players—apparently more for the observation of them than for service, since the [servants] exhaust themselves with the opening of doors and the giving of towels for washing hands. Here it’s impossible to get anything to eat or a refreshing drink, as it was in Paris. Only once I saw how Albin by some miracle succeeded in obtaining hot coffee from the nearby “Café de Paris.”

This was the longest Monte Carlo tournament, with 14 players facing each other twice. Marshall started off reasonably well, outplaying Céza...
Maróczy in a knight-and-pawn ending and Schlechter in a bishop-and-pawn ending. But as the event dragged on he began to blunder, to be outcalculated and, in some cases, to be simply crushed. Particularly disappointing was his second game with Teichmann, who was earning his nickname—"Richard the Fifth"—for solid performances that often left him in fifth place at tournament's end, as it was at Monte Carlo 1903. Teichmann, with his long, brown beard and black eyepatch, would awe the young German student Edward Lasker when they met a few years later. He "looked truly like Wotan, holding forth in the company of minor gods," Lasker wrote.

But Teichmann usually seemed to be inspired less by Mars than Morpheus. Rudolph Spielmann called him "lazily phlegmatic," a player who could be "dragged out of his comfort only when someone refused his offer of a draw" or tried to mate him. Marshall provoked him in this tournament and paid the price:

21. Queen's Gambit Declined, Orthodox Defense

Marshall–Teichmann, Monte Carlo 1903

\[
1 \text{d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Nbd7 5 Nf3 e5 6 e3 Bd6 7 Bd3 Qe7}
\]

Black usually develops his bishop at e7—or b4 in some lines—in the Queen's Gambit Declined. On d6 it becomes vulnerable to e4–e5.

\[
8 \text{c x d5 e x d5 9 Q c2 Q d8}
\]

Marshall was one of the first to demonstrate the strength of the Exchange Variation. Here Black feared 9 ... 0–0 10 e4.

\[
10 \text{e4 d x e4 11 N x e4 B c7 12 0–0 h6 13 R f1!}
\]

Basically, this is a kind of dare: On 13 ... h x g5 14 Nh6+ Kh8 White gets a dangerous attack from 15 N x f7 K x f7 16 N x g5+ Kg8 17 B c4+ Nd5 18 Q g6, e.g. 18 ... Kh6 19 B x d5+ c x d5 20 Q f7+ Kh8 21 R x e7 Q f8 22 R e3. White now gains time for a dangerous initiative.

\[
13 \ldots 0–0 14 B h 4 N x e 4 15 B x e 7 Q x e 7 16 R x e 4 Q d 6 17 R a 1 N f 6 18 R h 4 R e 6 19 N e 5 R f 8 20 R e 3 R a d 8 21 R g 3
\]

Marshall has swung his rooks agilely to the kingside and prepares both R x h 6 and the more dangerous Q d 2 (or Q c 1) followed by R x g 7+.

\[
21 \ldots B f 5 22 Q d 2
\]

Of course, 22 B x f 5 R x e 5 (23 d x e 5 Q d 4) kills the attack. After the game 22 Q c 1, which, like the text, threatens 23 R x g 7+ and 24 Q x h 6+, was found to be very strong, whereas the text is a blunder because 22 ... Ne 4 23 B x e 4 B x e 4 24 R x e 4 R x e 5 favors Black (25 R x g 7+?).

22 ... Ne 4! 23 R x e 4 B x e 4 24 Q f 4+? f 5 25 B c 4+ Kh 7 26 N f 7?? Q x f 4 White resigns

In the next to last round Marshall lost a brilliancy prize game to Maróczy that enabled the Hungarian to stay within a point of Tarrasch in the race for first prize. The American's ingenious attack deserved a better fate.

22. Queen's Gambit Declined, Lasker Defense

Marshall–Géza Maróczy, Monte Carlo 1903

\[
1 d 4 d 5 2 c 4 e 6 3 N c 3 N f 6 4 B g 5 B c 7 5 e 3 0–0 6 N f 3 N e 4
\]

This became known as Emanuel Lasker’s Defense, chiefly as a result of the world champion’s use of it in his 1907 match with Marshall, although he had been playing it for ten years. In this game the American avoids the more challenging lines such as 8 c x d 5 and 8 Q c 2.

\[
7 B x e 7 Q x e 7 8 B d 3 f 5 9 e x d 5 N x c 3 10 B x c 3 e x d 5 11 Q e 2 c 5 12 d x c 5 Q x c 5 13 c 4 K h 8 14 e x d 5 Q x d 5 15 0–0 N c 6 16 B c 4 Q e 5 17 R a c 1 f 4! 18 Q e 4
\]

After 18 Q e 4
White's last eight moves sought a middlegame in which Black's bishop is bad. Now that it is liberated (... Bf5) he hits on an ingenious tactical idea. The point is 19 Bd5 followed by B×c6 or the more powerful Nh4–g6+!, with mate on the h-file. One key line runs 18... Bf5 19 Q×d4 Bd3 20 Qh4 B×f1 21 Bd3!, winning the Black queen.

18... f×e3! 19 Bd5

Now 19 Bd3 fails to 19... Qh5.

19... e×f2+ 20 Kh1 Qa3!

An ingenious defense, based on the queen's long-range protection of the kingside: 21 Nh4 Q×c1 22 Ng6+ h×g6 23 Qh4+ Qh6.

21 B×c6 b×c6 22 Q×e6 Ba6! 23 Re3? B×f1

Only now did Marshall see that 24 R×a3 Bc2 allows Black to queen the pawn.

24 Nd2 Qa6 25 Qe4 Bd3 White resigns

Despite scoring wins over prize-winners Maróczy, Pillsbury and Schlechter, Marshall managed only a minus score, 12–14, and another ninth place finish. In fact, it was the fourth European tournament in a row in which he had finished ninth or tenth. It appeared the post-Paris skeptics were right about him after all.

However, as he approached his twenty-sixth birthday something changed. Marshall underwent a sudden, unexplained improvement, not just in the style of his victories but also in his place in the final scoretable. This became readily apparent six weeks after Monte Carlo when he arrived in Austria. "No sooner had I received the invitation to play at Vienna than I felt at long last my luck was due to change," he later wrote.

The Vienna Chess Club had devised a tournament that seemed perfect for the American: A theme event in which all games had to begin with a King's Gambit Accepted. As it turned out there was one player even more suited than Marshall to the rollicking gambit play—Chigorin. The Russian's 13–5 score exceeded Marshall's by 1½ points in what turned out to be his last international first prize. Nevertheless, Marshall's second-place result, ahead of Marco, Pillsbury, Maróczy, Mieses, Teichmann and Schlechter, was by far his best result in three years.

He also settled some old scores. Marshall had lost his last five games with Mieses, including a Danish Gambit at Monte Carlo in which he got mated in 24 moves. But at Vienna he won twice from Mieses, starting a streak of six wins over the German. He also won two fine games against Maróczy, who had been an international star since winning the minor section of Hastings 1895.

23. McDonnell Gambit

"Marshall–Maróczy, Vienna 1903"

1 e4 e5 2 f4 exf4 3 Nf3 g5 4 Bc4 g4 5 Ne3? Stalemate

Marshall was fond of this idea of Alexander McDonnell in place of the Muzio–Polerio Variation's 5 0–0. Towards the end of the Monte Carlo tournament he used 5 0–0 against the hapless retired army officer Col. C. Moreau in a game that allowed Marshall to announce a sacrifice a rook and announce a mate in 11 moves: 5 0–0 g×f3 6 Q×f3 Qf6 7 e5 Q×e5 8 B×f7+ Kd8 9 d4 Q×d4+ 10 Kh1 Bh6 11 Bd2 Qg7 12 Bb3 Ne6 13 Bc4 Ne5 14 Qd5 d6 15 Rdl Bd7 16 Bb4 Bc6? 17 B×c5 b×c5 18 Q×e5 Qg4 19 Na3 Kd7 20 Ne4 Bf3 and now 21 R×d6+ leads to mate. This befell Moreau on March 13, a Friday.

5... g×f3 6 Q×f3 d5

Giving White compensation. The key game for present-day theory in the McDonnell Gambit was actually played by Maróczy against Chigorin in this tournament: 6... d6 7 d4 Bb6 8 Ne5 c6 9 0–0? c×d5 10 e×d5 Bf5 11 B×f4 Bb6 12 Bb5+ Nd7 13 Rae1+ Be7 14 B×d6 and now 14... Kh8 15 R×e7? N×e7 16 Re1 won. But subsequent analysis showed that 14... Qb6! saves Black (15 R×e7+ N×e7 16 Q×d6 0–0–0) and has put the McDonell out of commission.

7 N×d5 c×d 8 N×f4 Qf6 9 c3 Bh6?

Black is doing the kind of things that usually work well in a gambit—giving Black pawns to liberate his pieces. Here, however, this fails miserably.

10 d4 Nc7 11 0–0 0–0

After 11... 0–0

12 Nd51
A remarkable winning move. White can afford to trade queens (12 ... Q×f3? 13 N×e7+).

12 ... N×d5 13 Q×f6 N×f6 14 B×h6 Nbd7

Also lost is 14 ... N×e4 15 B×f8 Nd2 16 B×f7+ K×f8 17 Be6+! N×f3 18 R×f3+ Ke7 19 B×c8f and Black will be three pawns down.

15 B×f8 K×f8 16 e5! Resigns

After 16 ... Nd5 17 B×d5 and 18 e6 the rooks swarm all over Black’s defenses. Since the tournament was double-round, each player played both sides of a gambit. But it didn’t seem to matter much whether Marshall was offering a gambit or defending against one, as he demonstrated in the return engagement with Maróczy:

24. Bishop’s Gambit
Maróczy-Marshall, Vienna 1903

1 e4 e5 2 f4 e×f4 3 Bc4 d5 4 B×d5 Qh4+ 5 Kf1 g5 6 d4 Bg7 7 Ne3 Ne7 8 Nf3 Qh5 9 h4

Best now is 9 ... Nbc6 when 10 N×g5 Q×d1+ leads to a level endgame, as Pillsbury showed in a consultation game with Chigorin this year.

9 ... h6 10 Qd3

Also in this tournament Swiderski–Marshall continued 10 Kf2 g4 11 Ne1 Nbc6 12 B×f4 B×d4+ 13 Kf2 Be6 14 Nb5 0–0, leading to a long draw.

10 ... Nbc6 11 Ne2 B×d7 12 Q×b3 N×d5! 13 c×d5 Ne7 14 Q×b7??

Badly out of character with the position, White needs to coordinate his pieces with B×d2 and Kf2 but decides to prevent queenside castling first.

14 ... 0–0 15 c3 Rab8 16 Q×a7 Bb5!

Here 17 ... g4 and 18 ... f3 is threatened, now that N×f4 is out of the question.

17 Qc5 B×e2+ 18 K×e2 g4 19 d6l g×f3+ 20 g×f3 Nf5! 21 d×c7 Ng3+ 22 Kd2! Q×f3+ 23 Re1 Rae8 24 R×e8 R×e8 25 Ke2 Qe4+ 26 Kb3 Qb7+ 27 Kc2 Qc4+ 28 Kb3 Qb7+ 29 Kc2 Bf8!!

(see diagram)

A terrific move which prevents last rank checks—including queening the e-pawn with check—while cutting off the White king’s escape to a3 or b4.

30 Qc4 Re2+ 31 Bd2 R×d2+! 32 K×d2 Q×b2+ 33 Kd1 Q×a1+ 34 Kc2 Nf5!

Thanks to his twenty-ninth move, Black can meet 35 c8(Q) with 35 ... Ne3+ 36 Kb3 Qd1+ or 36 Kd3 Qf1+.

35 Qa4 Ne3+ White resigns

The organizers’ faith in the gambit’s strength and ability to inspire brilliance was more or less borne out by the results. The gambit had not been refuted; White won 33 games, lost 36 and drew 20. Particularly impressive on the scoretable was Marshall’s sweep of Pillsbury. One of those games had often been incorrectly recorded as a miniature (1 e4 e5 2 f4 e×f4 3 Bc4 f5 4 Qe2 f×e4 5 Qh5+ g6 6 Qe5+ Qe7 7 Q×h8 Nf6 8 Ne3 c6 9 Bg5 d5 10 Ngc2 f3 11 Nh4 Bf5). The game actually lasted another 32 moves but it often has been printed as ending at 11 ... Bf5 with White’s—Pillsbury’s—resignation. The other game between the two Americans was a strange mixture of brilliance and blunders.

25. King’s Gambit
Marshall–Pillsbury, Vienna 1903

1 e4 e5 2 f4 e×f4 3 Nf3 g5

Black’s last move was not required by the tournament rules to revive old variations. On the contrary, it was regarded at the time as simply the best move. A contemporary account described 3 ... d5, nowadays regarded as best, as “somewhat questionable although occasionally seen in the games of first rates.” (Schlechter–Marshall from this tournament went 3 ... d5 4 e×d5 N×d5 5 Ne3 N×d5 6 N×d5 Q×d5 7 d4 Nc6 8 B×f4 Bg4 9 e3 0–0–0 10 Be2 Re8 11 Kg2 g5? 12 Be7 N×e5 with an eventual draw.)

4 Bc4 Bg7 5 h4 h6 6 d4 d6 7 Qd3 g4

During the Vienna tournament Gunsberg played 7 ... Nc6 8 c3 Qe7 against Marshall, who continued 9 h×g5 h×g5 10 R×h8 B×h8 11 e5 with a threat of 12 Qh7. The Englishman then speculated with 11 ... f5! 12 B×g8
dxe5 dxe5 g4 but after 14 Nd4 Nxe5 15 Qe2 Bd7 16 Kd1! Marshall consolidated and won in ten more moves.

8 Ng1 Qf6 9 e3 h5 10 Na3 Ne7 11 Ne2 Ng6 12 g3 f×g3 13 Rf1!? Since 13 Q×g3 gives Black an easy game with 15 ... Bu6 Marshall goes all out.

13 ... Q×h4 14 B×f7+ Kd8 15 B×g6 g2+ 16 Rf2 Rf8! 17 Be3 Bh6!

Excellent tactics by Pillsbury. Now 18 Ng1 Rf3! wins neatly for Black, as Marco pointed out. Black is also on top after 18 0-0-0 B×e3+ 19 Q×e3 Q×f2 or 18 Bf5 B×f5 19 e×f5 Re8! That leaves only ...

After 17 ... Bh6

18 B×h6 g1(Q)+ 19 N×g1 Q×f2+ 20 Kd1 Q×g1+ 21 Kc2 Rf2+ 22 Bd2 Q×a1 23 Qe3

Down two rooks for a mere bishop, White threatens perpetual check—or more (23 ... Nd7 24 Qg5+ and 25 e5, or 23 ... e6 24 Qg5+ Ke7 25 Qe7+ and 26 Ne4).

23 ... R×d2+ 24 Q×d2 Bd7!?

Black, with an extra rook, is still not quite safe. But he would be safer after 24 ... e6. Now we have a classic example of Marshall’s ability to increase the level of complications until his opponent drowns in them.

25 Qg5+ Kc8 26 Bf5! b6!

Black plays for—and comes close to achieving—a win. He disdains 26 ... B×f5 27 Qg8+ Kd7 28 Qf7+ Kc6 29 Qd5+ with a perpetual check. But in a few moves he misses two winning lines. One is 29 ... Kbh8 30 Qg8+ Nf8! 31 Q×f8+ Kb7.

27 Qg8+ Kb7 28 B×d7 N×d7 29 Qd5+ e6? 30 Q×d6 Rd8 31 d5!

The second winning line is 31 ... Ne5!! 32 Q×d8 Qf1+ 33 d×c6+ K×c6 and the pawns win, e.g., 34 Nb1 g3 35 Nd2 g2 36 Qc8+ Kb5. But this memorable battle actually ended with:

31 ... Rf8? 32 d×c6+ Ka8 33 c×d7 Rf2+ 34 Kb3 Q×b2+ 35 Ka4! Resigns

Although his results were far from uniformly impressive, what stands out during this period in Marshall’s career is the improvement in the quality of his games. Even his losses were better in 1903 than in 1901-2. Another bright spot that year came in the Anglo-American Cable Match.

After his debut in 1899, Marshall had performed poorly in this highly competitive event. In 1900 he moved up to seventh board, where he lost to E.M. Jackson (whom he had beaten at London 1899). In 1901, despite his great success at Paris, Marshall was again placed on seventh board, where he lost to William Ward. A year later he moved up to third board—but lost again, this time to H.E. Atkins, the Leicester schoolmaster. Marshall got his revenge in 1903, on fourth board, thanks largely to what was becoming known as “a Marshall swindle.”

26. Slav Defense

Marshall-Atkins, Anglo-American Cable Match 1903

1 d4 d5 2 c4 c6 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 c×d5 c×d5 5 Bf4 Nc6 6 e3 e6 7 Bd3 Be7 8 Nf3 0-0 9 Ne5 N×e5 10 d×e5?

Another overly optimistic attacking plan with Qc2 is coming up but unlike the Monte Carlo Von Schewe game, Black now eliminates the bishop that fuels White’s kingside attack.

10 ... Nd7 11 Qc2 g6 12 h4? Ne5! 13 h5 N×d3+ 14 Q×d3 g5! 15 Bg3 f5 16 e×f6 B×f6 17 Rd1 Qb6 18 Rd2 Bd7 19 0-0 Rac8 20 Rcl Bb5 21 Qc2 Rc4 22 Qb3 Qc6 23 Rdc2 Rc8

The “little Steinitz,” as Atkins was known, has skillfully maximized his queenside pressure, and the threat of 24 ... Ba4 or the advance of the b-pawn creates a crisis for White.

After 23 ... Rc8
24 Qa3! Ba6 25 b3!

Setting a wonderful trap—which should only draw (25 ... R×c3 26 R×c3 B×c3 27 R×c3 Q×c3 28 Qe7 and White, with threats of 29 h6 and 30 Qg7 mate, should at least have a perpetual check). But Atkins sees through the trap... And in avoiding it, loses.

25 ... Re5? 26 N×d5! R×c2 27 R×c2 Q×c2 28 N×f6+ Kf7

Now if the attacked knight moves, Black trades queens with 29 ... Qe1+ and wins.

29 Qd6!!

A spectacular resource. Now 29 ... Rc7 30 Ng4 or 29 ... Qc6 30 Ne4! lose, so the Englishman tried:

29 ... K×f6 30 B×e5+ Kf5 31 f3! Resigns

The threat was 32 g4 mate and 31 ... g4 32 e4+ Kg5 33 Qe7+ Kh6 34 Qg7+ K×h5 35 Q×g×h6 and 36 Bg7 is mate.

Incidentally, it was only when the cable matches resumed in 1907, after a four year hiatus, that Marshall was recognized as the top American player. In the final four matches, he played first board, drawing in 1907 with Amos Burn, then losing twice to Blackburne in 1909-10, and finally losing to Burn in 1911. That last match, a 4-6 defeat for the United States, meant that the English had won three straight times and therefore took permanent possession of the Newnes Trophy, which had been what the teams had been fighting for since the matches began in 1896. With nothing to play for, the great match series ended. In his nine cable games, Marshall scored 4-5.

For his final appearance at Monte Carlo, in February 1904, Marshall had a strange amalgam of good and bad luck. This time the tournament was limited to six players, in double-round format. Marshall was one of the pre-event favorites, along with Maróczy and Schlechter, ahead of Gunsberg and Geoffaro, the Wiener Schachzeitung editor, and the minor master Rudolf Swiderski. The latter was a gangly, bespectacled German who ate raw meat and wore shaggy, starved collars and a quizzical expression. He shortened a promising career by committing suicide five years later.

Marshall began the tournament by drawing with Schlechter, crushing Gunsberg in 19 moves, outplaying Swiderski in an ending and then sitting down for an extraordinary game with Marco. Years later, Marshall would recall the personalities of this era in his notes:

Sophomore Marshall

Of all the chess masters I ever met Swiderski was the most weird and Hans Fahmi of Germany the most comical. But the jolliest and easiest of them all was Georg Marco. Stout and tall, his eyes twinkled. He could tell stories by the hour, keeping them all laughing.

Marshall recalled an incident from Monte Carlo 1903.

I was playing billiards with Pillsbury when in walks Marco, looking very sad. I said “Hello, Marco. I thought you were in bed long ago.” “No,” he replied. “I cannot sleep. I am sick.”

“What’s the matter?” I said.

“Well, tomorrow I must play the great Marshall and so I am sick.” I said “Forget it. Here have a double whisky.” “You think Marshall that [it is] good for me,” he said. After he drank it he went home. Next day he beat me so bad I was sick.

Marshall added that “generally I beat Marco”—a case when his memory betrayed him. His career record against the Viennese master was actually 4-6, not including draws. However, Marshall did create the more lasting victories, including this, another early example of “a Marshall swindle.”

27. Scotch Gambit

Marshall—Marco, Monte Carlo 1904

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 d4 exd4 4 Bc4 Bc5 5 e3 d3

This last was Lasker’s move, which took the fun out of a once-thriving gambit. Rather than accept the simple equality now of 6 b4 Bb6 7 Qb5 Qe7 8 0-0 d6 9 a4 a6, Marshall tries too hard to force matters.

6 0-0 d6 7 Q×d3 Nf6 8 b4 Bb6 9 a4 a6 10 Re1? Ng4! 11 Ra2? Nge5! 12 N×e5 N×e5

Twelve moves and White is already lost, because 13 Qe2 N×c4 14 Q×c4 is met by 14 ... Be6. Marshall now illustrates his trademark ability to find tactical resources where others could not.

13 Qg3! N×e4 14 Q×g×7 Rf8 15 e5!

Complicating what would after 15 Bh6 Qe7 have been a downward spiral into a lost endgame. Now 15 ... d×e5 16 Ra2 16f7 loses, as Marco pointed out, to 17 Na3 N×a3 18 R×e5+f.

15 ... N×e5 16 Kh1 Be6 17 Ra2 Qe7 18 f4 Nd3 19 f5! Ne5!

Black sees through another set of traps (19 ... N×c1 20 Bg5! and 19 ... N×c1 20 Re×c1 0-0-0 21 R×c6!), Marshall must summon up tactical compensation after queens go off the board.

N×e5 20 Kh2 Qe4 21 R×e4 N×e4 22 Kg1 Re8 23 f5! Kf6 24 R×f6 B×f6 25 Kg2! B×g5+ 26 Kh3 B×h6 27 f×g6 Kf5 28 g×f7+

Mate in 8.
20 fxe6 fxe6 21 Bh6l Qxg7 22 Bxg7 Rf5 23 Bxe5 Rxe5
24 Rxe5 dxe5 25 g3! Rd8l 26 Kg2 Rd3l 27 Rxe5 Kg7 28 Re2
Be3l 29 Re2 Bh6 30 Rf2+ Ke7 31 Rf3 Rd1 32 Rf1 Rd3 33 Rf3
Rd1l 34 Na3?

White refuses a possible draw by repetition of the position! Marshall blamed "the meticulous spirit proper to a young man" but 34 Re1l would have been best, since Black would have had to play 34 ... Rd5 and ... a6-a5, as Marco said afterward, to keep the game alive. Marco now sees past another trick (34 ... Ra1 35 Ne4 Rxa4 36 Ne5l with strong counterchances) and is soon close to winning.

34 ... Re1l 35 c4 Ra1 36 e5 Bc1 37 Ne4 Rx a4 38 Ne5l Bb2l 39 Ndl
Be3 40 Re4 a5l 41 Rh4 a x b4 42 Rb7+ Kd8 43 Nf4 b3 44 N x e6+
Kc8 45 c6l

Another move aimed at unsettling an enemy confident of victory (and better than 45 R x e7+ K x b4 46 c6 K x c6 47 R x e6 b2). Later Marco explained that he didn't meet Marshall's 45 c6 with the natural 46 ... b x c6 47 R x c6+ K x b4, to transpose into the line above, because he saw 48 Rb7+ K x b4 49 Nc5l Kbl
50 N x a4+-overlooking the superior 49 ... Ka7l! 50 N x a4 B d4 51 Kf3 K x a4
52 Ke4 K x a5 52 K x d4 K x a4 with an easy win.

45 ... Be5? 46 c x b7+ Kbl 47 Nc5 Ra2l 48 Kh3 b2

After 48 ... b2

The pawn apparently cannot be stopped. Or can it?

49 Re7l! Ka7 50 Re8 c6 51 Ra8+ Kbl

Now 52 b5l Q x b4 B x b8 53 R x b8+ K x c5 is a lost rook-and-pawn ending
(54 g4 Kc4 55 g5 Ra4+ 56 Kh4 Rb3l). But Marshall has one last trick.

52 R x a2l bl(Q) 53 b8(Q)+!! B x b8 54 Rb2+! Q x b2 55 Na4+
Kb5 56 N x b2

Some kind of miracle has occurred. White now has all the winning chances.

56 ... c5 57 Kg2 c4 58 Kf3 c3 59 Nd3 Ke4 60 Ne1 Kd4 61 h4
Bd6 62 g4 Be7 63 g5 Ke5 64 Kg4 Bf8 65 Nc2 Ke4??

The final blunder. Black saw only 66 h5 Kd3 67 Ne1+ Kd2 and a perpetual attack on the knight. The draw could still be had by bringing the king back to stop the kingside pawns, 65 ... Ke6 66 h5 Kf6 67 Kf5 Kg7.

66 h5 Kd3 67 Na1l! Ke4 68 h6 Ke5 69 Kh5 Kf5 70 Nc2l Bd6
71 Nd4+ Ke4 72 Ne2 c2 73 g6 Ba3 74 g7 Kd3 75 g8(Q) K x e2
76 Qa2l Resigns

Chigorin, shortly after Vienna 1903, wrote "One of the participants in the tournament called Marshall a swindler, a charlatan. But his 'charlatan,' so to speak, risky play is more to my liking than an 'correct' play by many first-class players." The Marco game was just the type of game Chigorin had in mind.

The following day the American had to save another difficult position against the redoubtable Schlechter, whom he recalled as 'the best liked of all the chess masters.'

28. Queen's Gambit Declined, Tarrasch Defense

Marshall-Schlechter, Monte Carlo 1904

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 c5 4 c x d5 e x d5 5 e4l?

This was Marshall's own contribution to countering Tarrasch's 3 ... c5. A kind of reversed Albin Countergambit, it was hotly debated until about 1910 when calmer policy by White proved superior.

5 ... Nc6 6 e x d5 N x d4 7 N f3l N x f3+ 8 Q x f3 Bd6 9 Bb5l
Bd7 10 0-0 Ne7 11 Bc4 0-0 12 Bd3 f6 13 Bb4 Qc7 14 Rae1 N g6
15 Qh5 f5 16 Bg5 c4l 17 Bc2 Rae8 18 Re3 R x e3 19 B x c6 Ne5
20 Bd4 Ng4 21 h3 g6

Fine defensive play by the Austrian who soon has a powerful counterattack featuring the f-pawn.

22 Qh4 Be7l! 23 Qg3 Bd6 24 Qb4 Be7 25 Qc3 f4 26 Qf3 Ne5 27 Qe2
Bd6 28 Re1l f3 29 Qe3 Nd3l 30 B x d3 c x d3 31 Q x d3 f x g2 32 Qe3
Bb2+ 33 K x g2 B h4 34 Qe7 Rf7 35 Bbl Bd2 36 Ne4! g5?

(see diagram)

A gross error that could have turned Black's position upside down had Marshall found 37 Qh6 B x e1 38 Nf6l B x f6 39 Q x f6. As played, he has to come up with a great thirty-eighth move to avoid loss.
Now that they had fulfilled the requirements, Marco and Marshall shook hands. Marco felt honorbound to agree to the draw at this point—even though his opponent had blundered horribly by trapping his bishop. White can run Black out of pawn moves, after which ... Ka6 is forced. Then Bd3 and Kb2 wins the bishop.

Marshall later blamed his failure to win the tournament on the present roulette wheel. Despite his previous experiences, he never became completely immune to it. "During the day, while sitting at the chess table, contesting with some clever expert, my mind would constantly revert to red and black, eagle bird and double, and of course, my play was ragged enough," he recalled. Nevertheless, he was in excellent shape to win his first international first prize. On the final day he and Maróczy, both with 6½ points, were paired, while Schlechter, at 6, was to play Marco. Schlechter increased the pressure by winning a nice 32-move game. That left:

30. Queen’s Gambit Declined, Orthodox Defense

**Marshall–Maróczy, Monte Carlo 1904**

1 d4 e6 2 c4 d5 3 Ne3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Be7 5 e3 0–0 6 Bd3

In his early years Marshall, like Mikhail Botvinnik, did not engage in the battle for the tempo—that is, delaying this move as long as possible so that B×c4 can be the bishop’s first move. His decision later not to play 9 a4 leads the opening back into the Queen’s Gambit Accepted.

6 ... d×e4 7 B×c4 e5 8 Nf3 a6 9 Bd3 Nbd7 10 0–0 b5 11 Ne5 Bb7 12 Qe2 c×d4 13 c×d4 Qe8 14 Rad1 Nf8 15 Kf1 Nd5 16 Qh5+ g6 17 B×e7 Q×e7 18 Qh6 f6 19 Ng4 f5 20 N×d5 B×d5 21 B×f5

Marshall has handled the attack excellently and to preserve material equality Black must allow a mini-invasion force.

21 ... B×a2 22 Bc4 Ra7 23 Ra1 Bc4 24 Re3 Rd8 25 Qf4 Kh8

26 Ne5 Qg7 27 b3

Better was 26 Ne5! Rf7 27 Q×f7 Q×f7 28 N×d8.

27 ... Bd5 28 B×d5 R×d5 29 Rf3 Kg8 30 Rcl Ra8 31 Ng4 Nd7 32 Nh6+ Kh8 33 Nf7+ Kg8 34 Nh4+ Kh8

(see diagram)

Marshall could now force a draw—and a three-way tie for first prize—with another knight check, or accept Black’s verbal offer of a draw. But he was anything but an optimist, and the thought of winning his first international tournament got the better of Marshall.
subject was Twenty Years of the Rice Gambit, published by Hermann Helms' American Chess Bulletin in 1916 and containing 133 separate sub-variations. It was the final word because Rice died in 1915, and with his wallet closed there was no reason in the world left to look at 8 0-0?!

31. Rice Gambit

Marshall-von Schewe, Monte Carlo (Rice Gambit) 1904

1 e4 e5 2 f4 exf4 3 Nf3 g5 4 h4 g4 5 Ne5 Nf6 6 Bc4 d5 7 e x d5 Bd6 8 0-0? B x e 5 9 Re1

This was Rice's idea: to keep his extra piece Black must extricate himself from the e6-f6 pin. The immediate 9 . . . Qc7 10 d4 fails to 10 . . . B x d 4+ but there are many improvements.

9 . . . Qc7 10 c3 f3?

Since every major line in the Rice Gambit had its own history, this last move, based on an ingenious 11 . . . Ne4, became "Simonson's Defense" after a Manhattan Chess Club librarian named Dr. Gustave Simonson. The variation was even the issue of a short match between Lasker and Chigorin in the previous year, won by the Russian 3 1/2-2 1/2, who played Black in every game.

When he had the Black pieces in this tournament, Marshall used 10 . . . Nf5 (the "Jasnegradsky Defense") against Mieses and won a nice game with 11 d4 0-0 12 Re x e 5 Q x h 4 13 R x h 5 Q x h 5 14 B x f 4 N d 7 (the "Marshall-Wiskerski Variation") 15 N x d 2 N b 6 16 B x c 7 B d 7 17 B x h 3 R i e 8 18 c4 Q x g 5. Marshall and Swiderski had analyzed 14 . . . N d 7 until 3 a.m. the night before.

11 d4 N e 4 12 R x e 4 B h 2+ 13 K x h 2 Q x e 4 14 g3 0-0

And this was the "Manhattan Variation" as opposed to the "Brooklyn" (14 . . . Qc7), the "Hanham" (14 . . . Nd7), the "Phillips" (14 . . . Q e 6) and the "Cosmopolitan" (14 . . . B f 5).

15 B d 3 Q x d 5 16 c4 Q h 5 17 N c 3 c 6 18 Ne4!

Down a pawn and the Exchange, White has significant positional assets, including his bishops and control of dark squares.

18 . . . f 5 19 N d 6 f 4

Based on 20 B x f 4 R x f 4, which favors Black. However, Marshall's reply forces Black to begin returning material.

20 Q e 1 f x g 3+ 21 Q x g 3 N d 7 22 B g 5 f 2 23 B f 5 N b 6 24 N x c 8 R a x c 8 25 B c 6+ R f 7

"A bishop can take only one rook at a time, thinks Black," wrote Tartakower. Black loses immediately on 25 . . . Kh 8 26 Q e 5+ but can hold out longer with 25 . . . Kgl 26 Q e 5+ Kg 6.
26 Rf1 Re8 27 Bxf7+ Qxf7 28 Qxg4 Qg6 29 Rxf2

After 29 Rxf2

If now, instead, 29 ... Re4 30 Qf3 Qe8 31 Rg2 or 30 ... Re8 31 Bh6!
White wins with a finish like the game.

29 ... Nxc4 30 h5 Re4 31 Bh6!! Resigns

A picture book finish (31 ... Rxg4 or 31 ... Qxg4 32 Rf8 mate).

It was the first time Marshall had won an international tournament.
But matters were changing fast.

Chapter Four
Cambridge Springs

In 1904 Americans were reading Rebecca of Sunnybrook Farm and
sampling the new taste treat, the ice cream cone. They were shocked to learn
of the year's great disaster: the burning of an excursion boat, The General
Slocum, in New York's East River, at the cost of 1030 lives, most of them
schoolchildren on an outing. New Yorkers also witnessed the opening of the
first section of their subway system. And Americans wondered whether the
latest labor reform would spread—a French law that limited employees to a
mere ten hours of work a day, six days a week.

* * *

More than anything else in his career, Cambridge Springs 1904
changed Frank Marshall's life. It made him the leading American in a
hierarchy of masters who were generally past their prime. It even made
him a potential world championship challenger.

Until the 1970s international tournaments were rare in America, but
whenever one was planned, it was a grand show: the New York tournaments of 1889, 1924 and 1927 and the Patigorsky cups of the 1960s were
each elite grandmaster events. Cambridge Springs was not as selective as the other tournaments but it had an intriguing theme of East versus
West. Eight European masters and eight Americans were invited, making
the round robin tournament in effect a United States versus Europe
match.

The organizers thought big. Everything concerning the tournament
would be done first class: The Europeans arrived by first-class cabin on a
transatlantic liner and were toasted from the day of their arrival in New
York harbor to the final banquet at the tournament site in western Penn-
sylvania. The prize money was more than ample ($1000, $600 and $300
for the top three places) and there were other inducements, such as the
500-franc brilliancy prize being offered by Baron Albert Rothschild. The
organizers even tried to coax President Theodore Roosevelt into attending the event, donating a trophy to the winner and inviting the players to the White House.

For Marshall there was an added incentive: proving his superiority over his fellow Americans. There was no rating system in those days to make objective comparisons, and Marshall was still considered one of many minor rivals of Harry Pillsbury. In the 1905 cable match, Brooklyn’s best player was assigned fourth board, below Pillsbury, Albert Hodges and Boston’s John F. Barry. The Pennsylvania tournament would be a golden opportunity for Marshall to prove he had surpassed them—and had also joined the ranks of the top Europeans. Among the invited foreigners were Emanuel Lasker, making his first tournament appearance since Paris 1900, Karl Schlechter and Richard Teichmann.

Marshall actually thought, according to a 1905 British Chess Magazine article, that the four strongest European players of the day (excluding Lasker, who spent his time in America) were Siegbert Tarrasch, Mikhail Chigorin, Jacques Mieses and Dawid Janowsky. Only Tarrasch, occupied with his medical practice, was missing from Cambridge Springs. The tournament might have been strengthened by the addition of Géza Maróczy. But Maróczy was a professional mathematics teacher who had to request an unpaid leave every time he entered a tournament and could not get away this time. Cambridge Springs 1904 was nevertheless clearly going to be the strongest tournament of the year—and arguably the strongest in four years.

The European invitees were joined by Marshall shortly after the Monte Carlo tournament on the transatlantic liner S.S. Pretoria. On board they enjoyed good weather, numerous stories told by the loquacious Marco and quite a lot of casual chess, including consultation games:

32. Rice Gambit
Lasker, Marshall, Teichmann, & Chigorin–Janowsky, Lawrence, Marco, & Schlechter, consultation game, 1904

1 e4 e5 2 f4 e × f 3 Nf 3 g 5 4 h 4 g 5 5 Ne 5 Nf 6 6 Be 4 d 5 7 e × d 5 B d 6
8 0–0 B × e 5 9 Re 1 Q e 7 10 e 3 B f 5 11 d 4 Nd 7 12 d × e 5

Another controversial Rice Gambit position. Lasker later introduced an improvement for White: 12 d6! so that 12 ... e × d 6 13 d × e 5 threatens to open the e-file (13 ... N × e 5 14 B × f 4 0–0 0 15 N a 3 Nh 5 16 Bg 5 or 13 ... d × e 5
14 B × f 4 Ne 7 15 Nd 2 Nd 6 16 Qa 4 with complications).

12 ... Nh 5 13 e 6 f × e 6 14 f × e 6 0–0 0

Having returned the gambit knight, Black sacrifices his own knight in order to capture on h4.

15 e × d 7+ R × d 7 16 Qe 2 Q × h 4 17 Qf 2 g 3 18 Q × a 7+!

At first sight this seems to be a blunder, but White can defend with 18 ... Qh 2+ 19 Kh 1 Qh 1+ 20 Qg 1. Meanwhile, he threatens a 19 Qa 8 mate of his own, as well as the defensive consolidation 19 Nd 2 and 20 Nf 3.

18 ... Rd 3! 19 Nd 3! R × d 2 20 B × d 2 Qh 2+ 21 Kh 1 f 3

31 ... f × g 2 32 Bc 3 c 5 33 Qe 5 Gl (Q)+ 34 B × g 1 Q × g 1+ 35 Kd 2 Qf 2+ 36 Be 2 g 2 37 Qe 7+ Kh 8 38 Qe 3 Resigns

Now what? Clearly neither 22 Qa 8+ Kd 7 23 Bb 5+ Kd 6 24 Qa 3+ c 5 nor 22 Qg 1 Q × g 1+ 23 K × g 1 f 2+ helps White.

22 Qa 8+ Kd 7 23 Qa 4+ c 6 24 Re 7+! K × e 7 25 Bg 5+ Kd 7 26 Rf 1+ Kc 7 27 Qa 5+ Kb 8 28 Qe 5+ Ka 8 29 Q × h 8+ Ka 7 30 Qd 4+ b 6
31 Ke 1

The White team has found the right sequence of checks and now wins matter-of-factly.

31 ... f × g 2 32 Bc 3 c 5 33 Qe 5 Gl (Q)+ 34 B × g 1 Q × g 1+ 35 Kd 2 Qf 2+ 36 Be 2 g 2 37 Qe 7+ Kh 8 38 Qe 3 Resigns

The day after this game was played, April 16, the players arrived in New York harbor and were whisked off to be guests of honor at the annual dinner of the Manhattan Chess Club. Over the next few days they visited other local haunts including the Brooklyn and Cosmopolitan chess clubs, and the Boulevard Cafe where Prof. Rice organized a large banquet for them. The only disappointment was that a side trip to Washington for a White House reception fell through.

The players arrived by train in the resort town of Cambridge Springs on April 21, two hours late, but nevertheless greeted by an enthusiastic crowd. A band played the various national anthems as the masters rode
by carriage to the playing site, Hotel Ryder, where they rested until the first round on April 25.

On the first day of play Marshall faced a by-now-familiar rival, Chigorin. He won a pawn from him but allowed a bishops-of-opposite-color ending in which, it turned out, the Russian had the better chances. A draw was reached in 36 moves. The next day, however, Marshall had an embarrassingly easy game against the man he assumed would be his chief American rival for the foreseeable future. Few knew that Pillsbury was dying of syphilis but the deterioration of his play was noticeable. Marshall later summed up the U.S. Champion's decline: "His originality went first, then his opening play, afterwards his combinative power, and finally his endgame play. That stayed with him longest."

33. Pirc Defense, Austrian Attack
Marshall–Pillsbury, Cambridge Springs 1904

1 d4 d6 2 e4 Nf6 3 Nc3 g6

A surprising choice of openings by Pillsbury, who almost always defended against 1 e4 with 1 ... c5. While now adopted what became known as the Austrian Attack when 3 ... g6 burst into master practice sixty years after this. Compare with Marshall–Mason, Monte Carlo 1905, which went 1 d4 g6 2 e4 Bg7 3 f4 d5 4 e5 Nf6 5 Nf3 c6 6 Be2 Bg4 7 0–0 e6 8 h3 Bxf3 9 Rxf3 10 f4 Nh4 11 Rb3? and Black won a long game.

4 ... Bg7 5 e5 dxe5 6 fxe5 Nd5 7 Nf3 Nc6 8 Be4 e6?

"The hole at f6 proves his undoing at the end," Marshall said in notes he provided for Hermann Helms in the Brooklyn Daily Eagle. When this variation was repeated, in the 1970s, the popular antidote went 8 ... Be6, so that Black maintains control of d5 with pieces but concedes no further pawn weaknesses in the center.

9 Bg5! N×c3 10 b×c3 Ne7 11 0–0 h6 12 B×f6

With 12 B×h4 White maintains a small edge (12 ... g5 13 B×g5 h×g5 14 N×g5 Nf5 15 N×f7) but Marshall prefers a forcing pawn sacrifice.

12 ... B×f6 13 e×f6 Nf5 14 Qe2 Q×f6 15 g4 Nd6 16 Ne5 Qe7

"It would have been wiser to have taken the bull by the horns and have played ... Qg5," Marshall wrote for Helms. But afterwards he found 17 N×f7! B×e6 with a winning attack (e.g., 18 ... B×c6 19 Q×e6+ Qe7 20 Q×g6 Qe4+ 21 Kh1 0–0–0 22 R×f7).

17 Bd3 0–0 18 Rf2 Kg7 19 Raf1 Bd7 20 Rf6!

A paralyzing move. Black cannot capture twice now on f6 because of 22 N×d7+, and neither 20 ... Be5 (or 20 ... Bc6) 21 N×g6 nor 20 ... Ne8 21 R×f7+ are acceptable.

21 ... Rg8 21 N×g6 Q×f6 22 R×f6 K×f6 23 Qe5 mate

In the third round Marshall unveiled what appeared to be a major innovation in Schlechter Defense to the Ruy Lopez and crushed Barry in 27 moves as Black. That left him 2½–½, tied with Lasker. The world champion won a stunning game from Napier that round, a game Napier called the best game he ever played regardless of result. Marshall maintained the pace the next day with an excellent positional victory:

34. Queen's Gambit Accepted
Marshall–Mieses, Cambridge Springs 1904

1 d4 d5 2 c4 d×c4 3 e3 Nf6 4 B×c4 e6 5 Ne5 c5 6 Nf3 Be7 7 0–0 0–0 0–0 8 Qe2 a6

Tarrasch called this "a serious loss of time" and recommended 8 ... Nc6 instead. Actually it is Black's sixth move — which now costs him a tempo — that is regarded as suspect today.

9 d×c5 B×c5 10 e4 Nc6 11 Bg5 Be7 12 Rad1 Qc7 13 e5 Nd7 14 B×e7 N×e7 15 Bd3 Ng6 16 B×g6!

An excellent decision. Black's counterplay against the e-pawn is killed off and after 16 ... h×g6 he must be vigilant against Ng5 and Qg4–h4–h7 or h2–h4–h5.

16 ... h×g6 17 Rd6 Nb6 18 Rfd1 Ne4

Now it appears Black can complete his development, since 19 R6c4 b5 20 Ng5? turns out to be unsound after 20 ... Q×e5 21 Qg4 f6.
19 Qe4! N×d6 20 e×d6

A fine Exchange sacrifice, revealing "far-sighted and accurate positional judgment," noted Tarrasch. On 20 ... Qe6 21 Q×c6 b×c6 22 d7 and Na4-c5 Black would be terminally cramped. As played, he must return material since 20 ... Qd8 21 d7 B×d7 22 Ne5 is worse than being cramped.

20 ... Qd8 21 d7! Qe7 22 d×c8(Q) Ra×c8 23 h3 Rfd8 24 R×d8+ R×d8 25 a3 b5 26 Qe6!

After this the winning technique is easy, as 26 ... Rd6 27 Qa8+ Kh7 28 Ne4 and a check on g5, or 27 ... Qb8 28 Qb7! shortens the game.

26 ... Qd6 27 Q×d6 R×d6 28 Kf1 Rh6 29 Ke2 b4 30 a×b4 R×b4 31 Nd1 f6 32 Kd3 g5 33 Ke3 Rf4

Marshall points out that the rook is misplaced here, but if he doesn't try for kingside counterplay he cannot distract White from winning the a-pawn.

34 Nd4 g4 35 h×g4 R×g4 36 Ne3 Rf4 37 f3 e5 38 Ne6 Rh4 39 N×g7! Rh1

After this (39 ... K×g7 40 Nf5+) Black's only chances lie with the increasingly removable possibility of sacrificing the rook for the last White pawn, bringing about the notorious two-knights-versus-king-and-pawn ending.

40 Ne8 Kf7 41 Nd6+ Ke6 42 Ne4 Rcl+ 43 Kd2 Rc8 44 b4 Ra8 45 Ne5 Kd7 46 Kc3 Ra7 47 Ke4 Ra8 48 Nf5+ Kc6 49 N×a6! Kb6 50 Ne5 Ra2 51 Ne3 Kc6 52 b5+ Kc7 53 Kd5! Re2 54 Ne4 R×g2 55 b6+ Kb8 56 Nd6 Rd2+ 57 Ke6 Resigns

The showdown with Lasker came the next round. Marshall employed one of his offbeat openings, sacrificing a pawn for the two-bishop advantage, in either the French or Sicilian defenses (1 e4 c5 2 Nf3 e6 3 d4 d5 or 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nc3 c5). He had introduced it at about this time, after years of meeting 1 e4 with 1 ... c5, and despite the scoffing of European critics, he used it effectively for ten years.

35. Franco-Sicilian Defense
Lasker-Marshall, Cambridge Springs 1904

1 e4 c5 2 Nf3 e6 3 Ne3 d5!? 4 e×d5 e×d5 5 Bb5+ Nc6 6 0-0 Nf6 7 d4 Be7 8 d×c5 0-0

Black's play resembles a Tarrasch French (1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nc3 c5) except that here White's knights are more aggressive, and Black's a little less. Now to preserve his extra pawn from ... B×c5, the world champion tried:

9 Bg5 Be6 10 B×c6 b×c6 11 b4 h6 12 B×f6 B×f6 13 Qd2 a5 14 a3 Qb8 15 Rab1

Everything appears to be protected and White is ready to retake the initiative with Nd4.

15 ... a×b4 16 a×b4 Ra3 17 Nd4 Qe5! 18 Nc2 Bg4 19 f3 Bd7 20 c3 Re8?

Trying to make threats when the position calls for moves designed simply to restrict White. Marshall later believed that the natural 20 ... Rf8 would have given him "a strong hold on the position." Now he must fight for the game.

21 Ra1l Rea8 22 R×a3 R×a3 23 Re1 Qc7 24 Nc2 Ra2 25 Ra1 Qa7 26 Qe1 Bf5 27 R×a2 Q×a2 28 Ndc4 Bd3 29 Qe3 B×d4 30 N×d4 Qa1+ 31 Kf2 Qb2+ 32 Kg3! Bf1 33 Kf4 Q×g2 34 Ke5 Qg6 35 Qf4

A splendid winning try, using the king to advance the queenside pawns. Now 35 ... Bb3 36 b5 f6- 37 Kd6 Qe8 38 Kc7! and White wins, as he does also after 35 ... f6=!? 36 Kd6.

35 ... Bd3 36 b5?!

In queen-and-pawn endgames it is not so much the number of pawns a player has as how close they are to queening that matters. The text, sacrificing a pawn to advance the c-pawn, follows that policy but Lasker suggested afterwards that 36 Qf4 was more accurate.

36 ... B×b5 37 N×b5 c×b5 38 Kd4! Qc2! 39 e6 Qa4+ 40 Ke3 Qa7+ 41 Kd3 b4!

A fine defense. Now 42 c×b4 Qa6+ and Black wins the more dangerous c-pawn.

42 c7 Qa6+ 43 Kd2 b×c3+ 44 K×c3 Qc6+ 45 Kd2 f6 Draw

After 35 Qf4
Although the following round was only the sixth of the 15 to be played, it ultimately proved to be decisive in the race for first place: Lasker was stunningly defeated by Pillsbury and never caught up. Marco, perhaps misunderstanding a postmortem comment, later reported that Pillsbury had waited nine years to spring his opening discovery on the world champion. Actually, Pillsbury and Napier had found the improvement long before Cambridge Springs but neither used it up until then despite opportunities to do so.

In any event, Marshall’s methodical refutation of an Albin Counter-gambit played by the Englishman T.F. Lawrence this round, followed by a lucky escape against Schlechter the next, placed him in unchallenged first place. He was also fortunate against Teichmann, who achieved close to a winning position after 23 moves of a faulty Marshall attack but then blundered twice and ultimately lost.

Marshall had two more easy games, beating former U.S. champions Hodges and Showalter in 35 and 38 moves, before the crucial eleventh round. That was when he faced David Janowsky, the only player with a chance of catching him. At that point Marshall led the field with 10 points — 9 wins and 2 draws — while the transplanted Pole had 8. If Janowsky could win with the White pieces, he was still in the race. The result was a battle of epic proportions.

36. Queen’s Gambit Declined, Semi-Tarrasch Defense
Janowsky—Marshall, Cambridge Springs 1904

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 c5 4 e3 Nc6 5 Nf3 Nf6 6 a3 Ne4!

This move, apparently a theoretical novelty, anticipates and thwarts White’s plan of 7 d×c5 B×c5 8 b4. Nearly 70 years later 6 ... Ne4 was Bobby Fischer’s choice in a 1971 candidates match game with Tigran Petrosian that went 7 Qc2 N×c3 8 b×c3 Be7 9 Bh2 0-0 10 Bd3 h6 11-0-0 Nc5— a close approximation of Marshall’s own strategy.

7 Bd3 N×c3 8 b×c3 Bd6 9 0-0 0-0 10 Qe2 Na5! 11 e4? d×c4
12 B×c4 N×c4 13 Q×c4 Qc7 14 Qd3 Bd7 15 e5 Be7 16 Ng5 B×g5
17 B×g5 Rf8 18 Qg3 Kh8!

The bishops suggest a drawn endgame—provided someone doesn’t penetrate with his heavy pieces in the middlegame. Marshall has no weaknesses on dark squares but he can invade along the c-file. Tarrasch wrote that 19 Rfc1 was necessary here but said Janowsky insisted on “playing to win—or as I would put it, to lose.” A frequent critic of his play, Tarrasch said Janowsky knew how to attack but not always when.

With an obviously material edge Black finds it hard to untangle his pieces (and meet the R×b6-b8 threat). Now, for example, 39 ... Rb4 40 R×b4, a×b4 41 Qf4. However, Marshall’s next move prepares 40 ... Rh4+.

39 ... Rcc4! 40 Qe5 Qd6 41 g4 Q×e5+ 42 R×e5 B×g4 43 f×g4
Rc2+ 44 Kg3 Rd3+ 45 Kf4 Rc4+! 46 Re4 R×e4+ 47 K×e4 Rd7
48 Kf4!

Even with his rook stalemated White prepares to deliver mate, as Tarrasch put it, “with his king!!” Janowsky plans 49 g5 and 50 g6.

48 ... a4 49 g5 h×g5 50 K×g5 a3 51 Kh6 Ra7!
Marshall saw that 51... a2?? allows a perpetual check since if his king runs to f8, White carries out his superb attack with Kh7 and Rg8 mate.

52 Rh7+ Kg8 53 Rg7+ Kf8 54 Kh7 Ke8 55 Kg8l a2 56 h6 al(Q)
57 h7

An astonishing position for a game upon which first prize hung. Black might have finished it off with the appropriately piquant 57... Ra8!! since 58 Rxh7 Qxh7+ 59 Kg7 allows 59... Qxg7+ 60 Kxg7 Ra7= 61 Kg6 Rg7Xh7 62 Kxh7 Kf7. But Marshall sees a mundane method, even though it means allowing White to queen.

57... Qxf6 58 h8(Q) Ke7 59 Qh1 Rd7 60 Kh7 Qf5+ 61 Kh6 c5 62 Rg1 Rd8 63 Qb7+ Qd7 64 Qf3 Qe6+ 65 Kh7 Qd5 66 Qa3+ Qd6 67 Qe1 e4 68 Rg2 Qe5! 69 Qx e5+ bxc5 70 Rg5 Kf6! 71 Rxc5 Re8 72 Rcl e3 73 Rf1+ Ke5 74 Kh6 f5 75 Kh5 e2 76 Ra1 f4 White resigns

"A truly masterful game," said Tarnasch.

Towards the end of the tournament, the press discovered the story: An American, in Pennsylvania no less, was winning the biggest chess tournament in years—and without losing a game. The newspapers reported on Cambridge Springs in the vernacular of the sports page. Here is Gustave Reichhelm, writing in the Philadelphia North American, May 15, the day before the thirteenth round:

It is absolutely the greatest performance in chess since Zukertort dazzled his way through the London tournament of 1883. So far, Frank hasn't lost a single solitary game, while the other masters, even Champion Lasker, have a selection of goose eggs in their scores.

There is reason for this. Marshall has breakfasted, dined, supped and slept on the game for years, and being not of the hale-fellow, well-met kind with the boys, has counted Caisa all the more. . . . The new champion has yet to play the many-mouthed Marco, the promising Napier or the wily Fox, but to his iron jaws they should all be "pie."

On the final day Marshall offered Albert Fox a draw on the twenty-first move when, he said later, he saw that Fox had blundered. Marshall knew he only needed a half point and didn't want to win the tournament by way of an opponent's double-question mark move. But there was a tournament rule against short draws, as there had been at Monte Carlo 1904, and this time Marshall was, in effect, forced to win the game. As Janowsky lost to Lasker that day, the American's winning margin was two full points ahead of the powerful field.

Cambridge Springs made the 26-year-old Marshall a star. Bohemia said the tournament showed he had "moderated his temperament" and now could "conduct positional plans no less deep than his opponents." His final score was 11 wins and only 4 draws. To finish undefeated in such a strong event was virtually unheard of. Even in Lasker's great tournament victories—London 1899 and Paris 1900—he did not emerge unscathed. Lasker's Chess Magazine later said, "This marvelous performance holds the record in international chess."

As Reichhelm put it, Marshall's victory even put Lasker's claim to the world championship in doubt and "the American boy will have but little trouble to raise the $2000 backing for a formal challenge... Like the late Mr. Barleis, Marshall is willing..."

Actually Marshall did have difficulties raising the $2000 that Lasker had demanded as a minimum for him to risk his title. But there were others who wanted a piece of the victor of Cambridge Springs. The tournament had hardly ended when Janowsky challenged Marshall to a match, offering Hastings or Paris as venues, at a stake of $400 to $1000. The Parisian Cercle Philidor offered Marshall 1000 francs for travel expenses if the match with Janowsky took place on their premises.

Meanwhile, two Americans also wanted a match with Marshall. One was Max Judd of St. Louis, a Polish-born judge who had risen through the ranks of Republican politics to earn a consul-generalship in Vienna during the 1890s. Judd was a strong amateur who had once had a legitimate claim to the title of champion of the United States during the pre-Pillsbury days and was still among the half dozen best players in the country in 1904. He and Marshall discussed a special match in which 1 d4, Marshall's favorite opening move, would not be allowed.

The other prospective opponent was Harry Pillsbury. But, as one magazine put it, Marshall "took shelter in the wilderness of New Jersey" and wasn't interested in facing Americans. Pillsbury, now in obviously declining health, was still strong at the board. In fact, despite a much-publicized hospital stay in April, he was still capable, a little more than a month after Cambridge Springs, of beating Marshall badly in a Metropolitan League match in New York. That, and a subsequent team match game in 1905 against Edward Hyunes, were the last serious games Pillsbury played. He died in June 1906, while Marshall was playing in a tournament at Ostende, Belgium.

Marshall capped his fine start in 1904 by winning two more American tournaments of consequence. In August he swept the New York State Chess Association Tournament at Sylvan Beach, on the shores of Lake Oneida, with a 6–0 score. In October he traveled to St. Louis, where the
Seventh American Chess Congress was being held during another world’s fair, the first since Buffalo three years before. The fair, the Louisiana Purchase Exposition, was best known for introducing the ice cream cone and popularizing the song, "Meet Me in St. Louis, Louis." But to American chessplayers it was regarded as the first championship tournament in fifteen years. Pillsbury was still officially the U.S. Champion, having won the title in an 1896 match with Showalter, but Cambridge Springs had put his primacy in doubt.

The St. Louis organizers hoped Pillsbury would compete in their tournament and said they would proclaim the winner U.S. champion. But Pillsbury was too ill to compete. And after Marshall scored 8½–6½ it was hard to imagine anyone else deserving the title. The Brooklynite took home $500 for his easily earned first prize. Alfred Marshall, Frank’s father, died shortly after Cambridge Springs, but lived just long enough to see the boy he brought to the Hope Coffee House in Montreal become the best player on the continent.

37. Queen’s Gambit Declined

Marshall–Roethling, Sylvan Beach 1904

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Ne3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Nbd7 5 c4 dxe4 6 Nxe4 Bb4+ 7 Nc3 Bxc3+?! 

Losing a tempo in comparison with the Paris game against Lasker (7...c5 8 a3 Bxc3+). Marshall’s opponent, Otto Roethling, had lost a match to him 5–2 four years before and appears quite out of his league in what follows.

8 bxc3 c5 9 Bd3 Qa5 10 Bd2 0–0 11 Nf3 Qc7 12 0–0 b6 13 Qe2 Bb7 14 Ne5 Rd8 15 Bd4 Nxc5 16 Bxc5 Qe7

Black may have intended to blunt the coming attack with 16...Qc6 17 f4 N4e4 but thought better of it after seeing 18 Rae1 Nxe3 19 Qg4 f6 20 d5 or 18...e5 19 d5 (19...e5 20 cxd5 Rxd5 21 Bc4). 

17 Rae1 Nd7 18 Bc7 Rdc8 19 Bg3 Qf6 20 Qg4!

Threatening 21 Bh4 as well as 21 d5.

20...g6 21 d5! Nf8 22 Be5 Qd8 23 Qf4 Nd7 24 Bd6 Nf6 25 Re3 Qd7 26 Rfe1 Rfe8 27 Bxf8! Rxf8 28 Qh6 e6 29 Re7 Qe8 30 Rxe5!

(see diagram)

White has handled the attack superbly and there is no real defense to 31 Rh5 now.

30...Qa4 31 f3 Resigns

About another game from Sylvan Beach, Lasker’s Chess Magazine, the new magazine the world champion had begun in November, commented, “I wonder how Marshall looked when he advanced this pawn. There is just a little bit of bluff in this savage-looking onslaught.”

The St. Louis tournament (Seventh American Chess Congress) carried the same name as the series which had begun with Paul Morphy’s victory at New York 1857 and which continued through the first international tournament on United States soil, New York 1889 (the Sixth American Chess Congress). But the seventh was a weak event and only the young New Jersey expert Stasch Mlotkowski could manage a draw that prevented Marshall from sweeping the event. He finished a point and a half ahead of Judd, whom he beat in 17 moves.

38. Queen’s Gambit Accepted

Marshall–Eisenberg, St. Louis 1904

1 d4 d5 2 c4 dxc4 3 e3

Marshall had an innocent fondness for this move, which allows Black a relatively easy game with 3...e5 (4 dxe5 Qd4+ 5 Kxd1 Bb6 with advantage to Black). However, in the 1990s masters began to score well against the French Defense with 1 c4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 cxd5 cxd5 4 c4 e4 5 Bb4+ transposing exactly into this game.

3...e5 4 Bxe4 exd4 5 exd5 Nf6?

Much easier to handle is 5...Bb4+ 6 Nc3 and now 6...Nf6 7 Qb3 Qe7+ and 8...0–0.

6 Qb3 Qe7+ 7 Kf1

A typical Marshall reaction which avoids the trade of queens that follows 7 Ne2 Qb4+ or 7 Be3 Qb4+. Some sixty-four years after this game Grandmaster
Rafael Vaganian played 7 Kf1 in a Soviet championship game that continued 7 ... g6 8 Ne3 Bg7 9 Bg5 0-0 10 Nd5 Qd8 when Black can equalize by driving the knight back with ... c6.

7 ... g6 8 Nf3 Bg7 9 Bd2!

After 9 Bd2

Marshall poses a different danger—10 Bb4! Now 9 ... Ne6 10 d5 is unpleasant so Black tries to block the danger diagonal.

9 ... Ne4 10 Bb4 Nd6 11 Ne3 0-0 12 Re1 Qd8 13 Ne5! Bxe5
14 dx5 Nxe5 15 Qxc4 Re8?

Black’s last chance to coordinate his pieces lay in 15 ... Be6.

16 Rd1 Qg5 17 Ne4! Qxe5 18 Be3 Be6 19 Qd3 Qf4 20 Qd4! Resigns

Another indication of how slowly opening theory was mastered: Another Marshall game, against Harry Fajans, a New York expert, varied at move seven with 7 ... Ne6 8 Nb3 h6 9 Rd2! Nc6 10 Ne3 Qd6 11 Nb5 Qxb6 12 Re1+ Be7 13 Bf4 and White won quickly. This occurred in Marshall’s last tournament, the 1940-41 Marshall Chess Club Championship—thirty-seven years after Cambridge Springs.

This was also the year that the first of Marshall’s ten books appeared. It was called Marshall’s Chess Openings and was published in England, selling for 4 shillings on one side of the Atlantic and $1 on the other. It was, in many ways, his most opined work, taking issue with the prevailing “book” evaluation of most openings of the day. For example, he wrote of the Ponziani Opening, “there is no point in White’s third move unless Black plays badly.” Today, with the Ponziani long out of fashion, this would pass almost unnoticed. Not in 1940, however. “In trying to set aside all teachings of former masters, Mr. Marshall has attempted the impossible,” sniffed Lasker’s Chess Magazine. His comments about the Ponziani and others showed “conclusively where Mr. Marshall’s strength and weakness lie.”

By year’s end negotiations with Janowsky had firmware up and Marshall planned a busy 1905 beginning with a match against the Polish Frenchman in Paris. He spent the remaining weeks of 1904 with an extensive simultaneous tour of the United States and taking care of personal business, including one matter that earned special attention.

William Randolph Hearst’s New York American headlined it as “Chess Champion’s Farewell Ends in Quick Marriage” and accompanied the story with photos of the newlyweds atop chess pieces next to a cartoon Cupid playing chess. Atop the headline was this chart:

**MARSHALL’S WINNING GAMBIT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chess Champion Proposes</th>
<th>10:45 a.m.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Miss Krauss Accepts</td>
<td>11:15 a.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They Are Married</td>
<td>11:50 a.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parents Forgive Her</td>
<td>3:00 a.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They Sail for Europe</td>
<td>9:00 a.m.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What had happened is that the 27-year-old Marshall had met a girl, a 17-year-old named Carrie D. Krauss, the daughter of retired Brooklyn merchant Charles R. Krauss. They had met in August at the wedding of Carrie’s brother and “that very night,” according to My Fifty Years, “I went to Carrie’s mother and said, ‘I have fallen in love with your daughter and I’m going to steal her’.

But Carrie’s mother just laughed and Marshall headed for the St. Louis tournament. Towards the end of the year, however, he began a whirlwind two-week courtship of Carrie which led, as the American put it, to a “romance the existence of which few of their friends even suspected.”

It culminated on the busy night of January 6. Frank was making his goodbye after packing for Europe when he called on Carrie, at her home at 192 Palmetto Street. They took a walk and when returning to the house he proposed.

“He urged his suit vigorously as they neared the Krauss home, dwelling upon the long separation that faced them, and at her doorstep, the young woman consented,” the American reported. The couple then headed for Marshall’s home, 173 Reid Avenue, “picking up on the way the Rev. Ortho Bartholow”—later to become a fiery prohibitionist and the highest paid Methodist minister in the country. They were married in Marshall’s parlor. “I thought I had better marry him,” Carrie like to say in later years, “as he told me it was my last chance.”

The newlyweds finally got back to the Krauss home with “the startling news not only that their daughter had been married but that she
would sail for Europe within six hours," as the American put it. Eventually everything was ironed out and with forgiveness and blessings bestowed, Mr. and Mrs. Frank J. Marshall sailed on the S.S. Philadelphia, beginning a new life together that lasted nearly forty years.

Chapter Five

Consistently Inconsistent

The world's headlines in 1905 were dominated by a revolt in Russia, a war in Far East Asia and by what would later be called the First Moroccan Crisis. More momentous seemed James J. Jeffries' retirement, after six years, as world heavyweight champion. On a more cerebral note, Alfred Binet began using his revised tests for what was called Intelligence Quotient, or IQ. A German student, Albert Einstein, concluded that $e$ equals $mc$ squared. But perhaps the year's most lasting legacy came when a Brooklyn toymaker's invention, the Teddy Bear, became a national craze.

* * *

Despite all the talk of his being a future challenger, world champion Lasker had warned after Cambridge Springs that Frank Marshall might turn out to be another W.H.K. Pollock, referring to Frank's Montreal mentor. Pollock had one great result, winning the Belfast tournament of 1886, but, as Lasker noted, "never winning a prize again." Marshall meant to prove him wrong with an extremely busy year of European events in 1905.

In mid-January he and Carrie arrived in Paris for the first of Marshall's matches with Janowsky, who turned out to be his most frequent foe.

Janowsky was a much more experienced match player, having previously triumphed over a Pole, Simon Winawer, a German, Carl Walbrodt, an American, Jackson Showalter, a Viennese, Georg Marco, and a fellow transplanted Frenchman, Jean Taubenhaus, in stakes play. Altogether Janowsky had played fifteen matches, and in 1899 alone he contested five, including that informal crush of Marshall.

When a New York newspaper referred to that first session of games with Marshall as a "match," Janowsky was "incensed at the notion," according to Lasker's Chess Magazine. Janowsky "considered a match a very serious contest" against a worthy opponent—and in 1899 Marshall was just "not in his class."
But by 1905 he was. The two men were similar in some ways, at least in their playing style and style. Both men were also easily influenced by results, suffering badly after a loss. They lacked the stolid, emotionless rudder that so typified great match players like Lasker. In tournament chess, where a streak player often flourishes, this personality failing was not a problem. In 1905 both Marshall and Janowsky were capable of finishing first—or last—in almost any tournament. (By 1911 Marshall had discovered the value of draws and his streakiness diminished.)

Away from the board, the contrast could not have been sharper. Janowsky was a dandy, usually appearing in expensive suit and cane. Marshall's only sartorial distinction was the bronze chess knight that appeared on his watch chain and, in smaller size, as a tie pin. A few inches shorter than the American, Janowsky often appeared taller because he walked stiffly and sat erectly, in contrast to Marshall's slouch. At the board Marshall often sat "sideways, having crossed his legs and pulled the upper leg so it hardly rests on the knee," as a frequent spectator, the Russian dramatist G. Gye, once noted. Marshall, he added, was "an extraordinarily scrawny and tall young man with a wavy mane of light hair. The face is shaven, with a Mephistophelean profile, and a parrotlike sharp nose. His small eyes are screwed through long yellow eyelashes."

Janowsky, on the other hand, wore a neat moustache, with meticulously coiffed wavy hair sitting above a large forehead, and pince-nez. The Frenchman was neat to the point of addiction. Marshall, wrote Gye, "chews the cigar more than he smokes it," often leaving tobacco on the sides of his face, the playing table—and sometimes even on his opponent. Janowsky was a gourmet, a connoisseur of fine wine and good cigarettes. Marshall was a meat and potatoes man, a whiskey fancier and a cigar hound. (This last difference helped win him a game in the last half of the match, as we'll see.)

The match terms called for the winner to score eight victories, draws not counting. Stakes would be $500 a side. A word of explanation is needed here. The modern method of match financing, in which an organizer offers a large sum to host the event and the purse is divided into a winner and loser's share, was not universally accepted in 1905. In Marshall's day often both players had to raise a stake, say $1000, and the winner took all. Unofficially, there was something more at stake in the first Marshall versus Janowsky match, since the two men considered it akin to a modern candidates match; the winner would have at least a moral claim to challenge Lasker.

They agreed to play in a small room at the Cercle Philidor in which only the players, a French arbiter, and the two seconds were allowed. Marshall's choice of second was Leo Nardus, a wealthy art dealer who was an old friend of his from the Manhattan Chess Club and who also happened to be Janowsky's principal patron. Moves were passed outside to a large audience which followed the game on a demonstration board.

In the first game Marshall held to his opinion of European endgame skill. He traded queens on the eighth move of a Queen's Gambit Declined. But he then so quickly got the worst of it that Marco later claimed a forced win for Black at move 28. A few careless moves, however, allowed the American to simplify into a drawish rook ending in which each side had one rook pawn left. Then disaster struck Janowsky. At move 63 Marshall was able to advance his a-pawn, while forcing the capture of Janowsky's h-pawn. The 8 hour and 15 minute game ended with Janowsky's resignation on move 82.

In the next game Marshall handled the hanging Black pawns imaginatively and well:

39. Queen's Gambit Declined, Semi-Tarrasch Defense
Janowsky-Marshall, second match game, 1905
1 d4 e6 2 c4 d5 3 Nc3 c5 4 e3 Nc6 5 Nf3 Nf6 6 Bd3 Bd6 7 0-0 0-0 8 Bd2

White is modest in his opening goals, allowing Marshall to conduct what the Russians call "the Ape Game"—imitating White's moves.

8 ... b6 9 Re1 Nb4! 10 Be2 Ne4 11 a3 Nxc3 12 Rxc3 Nc6 13 Bd3 f5?

With 13 ... d x e4 Black would get the kind of easy equality—and quick "grandmaster draw"—that later plagued chess. Marshall keeps the position sharp by stopping e4 and preparing to lift a rook to h6.

14 Re1 Rf6 15 c x d5 e x d5 16 d x c5 b x c5 17 Be3 Rh6 18 g3! Rh8 19 Re1 Qe8 20 Bf1 Ne7 21 Bg2 Qh5 22 h4 Bb7 23 Ne5?

After 23 Ne5
Better is 23 Ng5, since now Black's hanging pawns become an asset in the endgame after his rook reaches e6.

23 ... Qxd1 24 Rexd1 Re6f 25 Nd3 Ba6 26 Rbl Be4l 27 Nc1 Be5l
28 Bxe5 Rxex5 29 b3 a5 30 a4 Kf8 31 Nd3

This loses a pawn but there were no good moves.

31 ... Bxd3 32 Rx d3 c4 33 Re3 Re6 34 Rbc1 Rxb3 35 Rxb3
36 Rbl 37 Bf1 Rd4

Leading to the same result is 36 Bfl Re4 37 Bb5 Rd4 and wins.

36 ... Rb6 37 Bf1 Rd4 38 Bb5 Ne8l 39 Kh1 Nd6 40 Bd3 Ne4 41 Ke2
g6 42 f3 Nb6 43 Bb5 Ne4 White resigns

But excellent endgame play with the Black pieces, and a bad Marshall cold, helped Janowsky equalize the score at 2–2 with two draws. Marshall won his best game of the match in game eight.

40. Franco-Sicilian Defense
Janowsky–Marshall, eighth match game, 1905

1 e4 c5 2 Nc3 e6 3 Nf3 d5 4 exd5 exd5 5 d4 Nc6 6 d5 Nb6 7 Bb5 0–0 8 0–0?! Bb4! 10 Bxe6 bxe6 11 Bd4 Ne4!

In the year since Cambridge Springs no one had found a clear answer to Marshall's French-Sicilian gambit. Now ... Ng5 is hard to stop. White keeps his pawn but his QN never moves again after the next move.

12 Na4 Ng5 13 Be3 Bxf3 14 gxf3 d4! 15 Bxg5

Of course, 15 Bxd4 Qxd4 16 Qxd4 Nxf3+. As the game goes, White has negligible control of the dark squares (against ... Bh4 and ... Qh4).

15 ... Bxg5 16 f4! Bxf4 17 Qg4 Qf6 18 Rfe1 Rae8 19 Qg2 Re6
20 Rad1

After 20 Rad1.

Consistently Inconsistent

Marshall explained in My Fifty Years that “White ran out of good moves long ago.” He quotes a Schlechter analysis that runs 20 Rxe6 bxe6 21 Qxe6 Bxb2 22 Kxb2 Qxb2 23 Kg1 Qf2+ 24 Kh1 Qh4+ 25 Kg1 Qg3+ 26 Kh1 (26 Qg2 Qe3+ and ... Rf2) Qh3+ 27 Kg1 b6! and wins after the rook invades.

20 ... Rfe8 21 Rxe6 Rxe6 22 Kf1 Qe5 23 Qf3 Rf6 24 Kg2 Bxh2
25 Qh3 b6!

Now neither 26 Qe8+ nor 26 Qxh2 Rxf2+ are acceptable.

26 c5 Qc2 27 Rfl Be5 28 Kg1 d3 29 f4 d2 30 Qc8+ Kh7 White resigns

After Janowsky won the ninth game Tarrasch wrote in the Berliner Lokal-Anzeiger that the games had turned out to be a bore. “The match promised to bring to the chess world great pleasure,” since both opponents had previously shown “specimens of the highest mastery.” However, Tarrasch added, in the match they had been fighting without energy. Marshall, he explained, was “on a wedding trip. He quietly got married not long before his arrival from America and brought with him his young wife.” And so, unlike Janowsky who had “in the most careful manner” remained a bachelor, the American was at a disadvantage. “It’s quite impossible,” Tarrasch wrote, “to give your opponent queen odds!” (Tarrasch, it should be noted, regarded the very idea of this “candidates match” as silly since he considered himself the true challenger to Lasker.)

The tide began to turn in late February. After an 89-move draw in the tenth game, Marshall took the lead:

41. Marshall–Janowsky, eleventh match game, 1905

Black had either sacrificed—or blundered—away his f-pawn five moves earlier but after 19 ... c5! he created excellent compensation with the threats of ... Nh4×g2!
There followed 20 Ne2 and with 20 ... cxd4 or 20 ... Bxf3 21 Qxf3 cxd4 Black could have regained material equality, but with positional superiority. Instead, he played what Lasker called the incomprehensible 20 ... c4? and there followed:

21 Qe3 Rf8 22 Ne1 Rad8 23 f4 Nh4 24 Re3 Nf5 25 Qf2 Qd7 26 Nc2 Be4 27 Rd1 Bd3 28 Ne1 Be4 29 Ne2 Kh8 30 Ng3 N×g3 31 h×g3 a6 32 a3 Rf7 33 Ne1 Qa7 34 Nf3 Rfd7 35 Ng5 R×d4 36 R×d4

Here Janowsky noticed that 36 ... R×d4 allows 37 N×e4, and so the game was decided with 36 ... Q×d4 37 Nf7+ Kf8 38 N×d8 Q×d8 39 Re3 Bc6 40 f5! Black played on until move 57.

By March 3 Tarrasch had changed his mind when he noted Marshall's 7-4 lead and described how the quality of play "has substantially improved." But, he added, Janowsky, "formerly so enterprising and bold, is almost unrecognizable."

Marco, in the Wiener Schachzeitung, questioned this judgment. "If Janowsky played badly," he wrote, "what does that say about Marshall?" Lasker's magazine had the answer: Marshall played "logically and flawlessly" and the games were of an extremely high class.

An explanation of one of Janowsky's eight losses is offered by Marshall in his unpublished notes. He recalled that he had arrived in Paris by boat with more than good opening preparation:

Prof. Rice game me three boxes of large Havana cigars ... one box for myself, one for Janowsky and one for a prize. I was told on board that the [French] duty on Havana cigars was more than 50 per cent. I was worried and smoked or gave away many but saved some for Janowsky.

Now Janowsky was only a cigarette smoker, and I had to laugh as during one of the match games he tried hard to smoke a cigar. He became sick and I easily won that game. He gave all the cigars back to me.

The match ended March 7 with Marshall's eighth victory, to Janowsky's five, with four draws. The American had played quickly—taking 50 hours and 24 minutes to Janowsky's 57 hours, 38 minutes—and, after the shaky start, solidly. Nevertheless, the result was considered surprising. Leopold Hoffer, in The Field, wrote that after the first five games the match score should have been 4-0, with one draw, in Janowsky's favor, instead of 2-2. Yet somehow the American overcame his vast deficit of experience and beat one of the world's half dozen best players. Perhaps the most remarkable comment, considering what lay in store for Marshall vis-à-vis Lasker, Tarrasch and Capablanca, came from the Louis van Vliet, a minor Dutch master who had taken up residence in London. Van Vliet wrote that all the 1905 match proved was that Janowsky wasn't a good match player.

Janowsky never accepted such reverses gracefully. After losing a match to Schlechter two years before he complained that his opponent was lucky and belonged in a cafe playing dominoes, instead of chess in a hushed hall. He added that he would be willing to play Schlechter again—but only at knight odds. hardly any of his colleagues took Janowsky's pique seriously, but once Amos Burn did. According to Spielmann, at the Vienna Jubilee tournament of 1898 Burn accepted Janowsky's offer of a pawn and move odds in casual games. After losing several times Janowsky said pawn and move wasn't enough. He couldn't take Burn seriously unless he was giving him knight odds.

And so, just hours after the match ended in Marshall's favor, Janowsky sent him a note:

I consider that the result of the match does not at all reflect our capabilities. On the contrary, taking into account that in the majority of the games I missed either a win or a draw, one is persuaded that in principle I should have won without difficulty. Therefore I have the honor to call you to a revenge match on the following terms: a struggle for 10 wins, draws not. I give you the odds of four points, that is, my first four victories do not count...

To this Marshall made no formal reply. He and Carrie prepared to leave for Germany where Frank had a series of simultaneous exhibitions arranged and where talks with Tarrasch, for a $500-a-side match, were proceeding. But before leaving Paris the newlyweds experienced one close call. According to Marshall's notes, he was on his way back to his hotel one night with Carrie with the prize money in one pocket:

Luckily in the other I had a bull's-head revolver. I was soon conscious of men following us. Each time we stopped these men would stop. We tried to lose them in the crowd of the Boulevards but they were too clever for us. My wife became alarmed and we hurried down a narrow street, the shortest way to our hotel. Hearing steps behind us I stopped and turned. The two men were almost upon us. I whipped the revolver out of my pocket.

"If you come near I shoot," I said.

I spoke English. I was too excited to use French. To my astonishment one of the men replied "I'm an American without a cent. Give me something," and he crept nearer.

"Stand clear or I'll shoot you like a dog," I cried.

At the moment a gendarme appeared on the other side of the street and the men slunk off. Two days later a woman was robbed and murdered in that very street and I've little doubt that my friend the
pseudo-American had something to do with it... A step or two nearer and his knife might have done for me.

Marshall also prepared for a short Rice Gambit match with Napier, who had returned to the land of his birth and won the first British Chess Federation championship the year before. Their match turned out to be another bit of bad advertising for the professor's invention: In the five Rice Gambits played, Napier won the three times he had Black and the Marshall won once and drew once — when he had Black.

Ostende 1905

The first big tournament of the year for Frank began in June at Ostende in Belgium where the tradition of the now-defunct Monte Carlo tournaments was continuing under the initiative of the Brussels Cercle des Échecs. Ostende, once a quiet fishing village, was then one of the charms of Europe. Apart from other renowned seaside resorts, it was a town of great promenades and quaint bathhouses. The beach stretched from the casino westward nearly four miles, with several topnotch hotels in between, including the Villa des Étoiles, where most of the invitees were housed. Near the Étoiles lay the palace of King Léopold and Fort Welling, where the British troops landed just before Waterloo.

The first casino had opened at Ostende in 1852 and by the turn of the century the casino management was highly prosperous. It financed concerts nightly in the theatre of the Kursaal. Not surprisingly, 30 masters applied for the 16 available places in the tournament. Only Pillsbury, now fatally ill, and Lasker, busy with his new chess magazine, were absent. The solid lineup was attracted by the liberal prize fund of more than 15,000 francs and by the playing conditions, which included, as Lasker's Chess Magazine put it, “free hotel accommodations (not including liquor).”

Ostende 1905 underlined one of Marshall's traits: He had become a streak player. Lacking the self-discipline to steady himself after a bad game with a draw or two, he would often lose several games in a row in an effort to win back the first lost point.

He began the Belgian tournament by sacrificing the Exchange and losing to Paul Saladin Leonhardt of Leipzig. Next came a fighting draw with Schlechter, followed by a long dull one with Teichmann, and a third with the undistinguished Heinrich Wol. Round five saw one of the best games of 1905, with Marshall being positionally outplayed by Maróczy in a superb queen-and-pawn endgame. That made Marshall's tournament start an unqualified disaster: The hero of Cambridge Springs found himself with $\frac{1}{2}$ and was near last place.

But he broke into the win column with his pet Franco-Sicilian Defense against Taubenhaus, who couldn't seem to bring himself to resign in a hopelessly lost rook endgame. And the following day Frank won one of his finest games.

42. Staunton Gambit

Marshall—Chigorin, Ostende 1905

1 d4 f5 2 e4 fxe4 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Bg5 c6 5 Bxe4

Black's fourth move was an ancient preparation for 5 ... d5, since the immediate 4 ... d5 loses the pawn to Bxf6 and Qb5+. As a nondeveloping move, however, it should have been met by 5 f3! in true gambit style.

5 ... e5 6 Nxe4 Qb6+? 7 Rb1 d5?

But 7 ... Qa5+1 would force White into a choice between 8 e3 Qxa2 and 8 Ne3 Bh4. In My Fifty Years, Marshall writes that this idea was not considered deeply by either player "in accordance with their temperaments." Black should have played 6 ... d5 on the previous move and then 7 Ng3 Qb6 (8 Qe2+ Kf7).

8 Ng3 Be6 9 Bd3 Nd7 10 Qe2 Kf7 11 Nf3 Re8 12 0-0 Rd6 13 e5 Nf8 14 Nh4 Bf5?

There is nothing wrong with Black's position that 14 ... g6 wouldn't cure. Now Marshall spots a flaw in Chigorin's plan to trade bishops. Surely Black saw White's fifteenth and sixteenth moves — but not his seventeenth.

15 Nh×f5! R×c2 16 N×d6+ Ke6

Perhaps Chigorin realized now that 16 ... Kg8 would have given White too much from 17 N×e4, e.g., 17 ... g6 18 e4 c5 19 d×c5 Q×c5 and now 20 Nb5! d×c4 21 R×f7 with a win, as given in My Fifty Years. But could he have predicted Marshall's next move?
17 Nc8!! Qc7 18 Bxe2 Kf7

No better was 18 ... g6 (to prepare 19 ... Qxe8 20 Bg4+ f5) because of 19 Rf6+ Kg6 20 Bd3+ Kh5 22 Rael Nf4 23 Re7! Qa5 24 Bb1 g6 25 g3 Nh3+ 26 Kg2 Ng5 27 Bd3! Rx e8?

The terrible check at e2 could not be stopped. Chigorin tries a combination that just fails.

28 Nxc8 Qd8 29 h4! Qxe8 30 hxg5 Resigns

Or 29 ... Nf7 30 Rxh7 Qxh8 31 Rhxh7+ and mates.

After a disappointing loss to Blackburne, who had some improvements against Marshall's French-Sicilian variation, the American got a second wind. He resumed his ongoing rivalry with Janowsky in a drawn Queen's Gambit Declined in 65 moves. This was followed by a spectacular Marshall win:

43. Giuoco Piano

Marshall-Burn, Ostende 1905

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 Bc4 Bc5 4 c3 Nf6 5 d4 exd4 6 cxd4 Bb4+ 7 Kf1?

Marshall claimed in My Fifty Years that he played this on the spur of the moment because 7 Bd2 Bxd2+ 8 Nxd2 was "too simplifying" and because the Möller Attack, 7 Nc3 Nxe4 8 0-0 Bxc3 9 d5, was "too complicated." Whatever the case it throws Burn, normally a super-solid defensive master, on his own devices and he begins to err. Better now is 7 ... d5! as in so many similar positions.

7 ... Nxe4? 8 d5 Nc7 9 Qd4! Nf6 10 Bg5

Black has "not been allowed to catch his breath" since winning the pawn, Marco commented, and Marshall's gambit has been vindicated.

10 ... Ng6 11 Nbd2 h6

Marshall noted that on 11 ... 0-0 he could continue 12 h4 or "cramp Black's game unbearably" with 12 Ne4 Be7 13 d6 c x d6 14 N x d6. Best, in fact, was 11 ... B x d2, he said, although Gunsberg considered Black just as badly off after 12 N x d2 as in the game (12 ... h6 13 R e1+ Kf8 14 B x f6 and 15 d6).

12 Re1+ Kf8 13 Bd3! Be7 14 B x g6

Now 14 ... f x g6 15 Ne5! wins, e.g., 15 ... Qe8 16 Qd3 h x g5 17 N x g6+.

14 ... h x g5 15 Ne5!

"I saw the move in a flash but its sequel had to be calculated with great exactitude," Marshall said afterwards.

15 ... f x g6 16 N x g6+ Kf7 17 R x e7+ K x g6 18 Qd3+ Kh6 19 h4!

As Richter explained, after Cambridge Springs, "The old pawn grabbing style ... will be superseded" by a new one that combined the best of Morphy and Marshall. Marshall himself had written earlier in the year in the British Chess Magazine that even though modern players knew more of the science of chess, Morphy was the greatest player the world had seen. Here we see a Morphy-like finish, since 19 ... Q x e7 allows 20 h x g5+ K x g5 21 N x f5+ Kg4 22 Q x g6+ K x f4 23 g x f4 and mates.

19 ... g4 20 h5! N x h5 21 Qf6! Resigns

Another fitting end would have been 21 ... g6 22 R x h5+! g x h5 23 Q f6 mate.

For this Marshall won the second brilliancy prize of 150 francs—nearly one third as much as his final prize for all 26 rounds. Following another spirited draw, this time with Tarrasch, Marshall won this fine positional game:

44. Philidor's Defense (by transposition)

Marshall-Alapin, Ostende 1905

1 d4 d6 2 c4 Nf6 3 Nc3 Nbd7

Perhaps seeking to transpose into the Philidor's Defense (4 Nf3 e5) without having risked a King's Gambit at move two. Marshall now finds the sharpest play.

4 f4! e5 5 Nf3 c6 6 Bc4! h5 7 Bd3 Qc7 8 0-0 Be7 9 Kh1 0-0 10 Ne2 a6 11 Ng3 e x d4 12 N x d4 Ne5 13 h3 Rd8 14 Qf3 N x d3 15 c x d3 c5 16 N x f5 B f8 17 B d2

A typical illustration of how Steinitz's teaching had exceptions. Black has the two bishops and a queenside pawn majority and should by all rights have a clear advantage. But he is faced with painful threats of Bc3 and e4-e5.

17 ... d5 18 e5 N e 8 19 R ael B x f5 20 N x f5 d4 21 Re4! g6 22 Ng3 f 5 ! 23 e x f 6 N x f 6 24 R e6 B g 7 25 f 5 R f 8 26 R c6 Q d 7
32 ... Qe6 33 Bxf6 Bxf6 34 Qe4 Qxa2 35 Qxg6+ Bh7 36 Nf5 Resigns

It was also in this tournament that Marshall revealed a talent for defense. He was not just a thud-and-blunder romantic but could parry and thrust against the young attackers.

45. French Defense, Gledhill Attack
Leonhardt–Marshall, Ostende 1905
1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 c4 Nfd7 5 Qg4 c5 6 Nf3

This was called the Gledhill Attack and remained a dangerous weapon, occasionally inflicting a pretty defeat on a strong master, until a Bogolyubov–Réti game showed how to destroy the attack and center with 6 ... cxd4 7 Nb5 Nc6 8 Nxd6+ Bx6d 9 Qxg7 Bxg7 and 10 Nxe5 Qf6. In this game, as in other Gledhill Attack games, White sacrifices his e-pawn.

6 ... Nc6 7 Bb5 cxd4 8 Nxd4 Ndxe5 9 Qg3 a6 10 Nxc6 Nxe6 11 Bxc6 bxc6 12 0-0

Since White cannot change the pawn structure he uses his superior development to challenge Black on the open lines.

12 ... Ra7! 13 Be3 d4 14 Ral Rd7 15 Bg5 f6 16 Ne4!

Consistently Inconsistent

After 16 Ne4

There was little future in 16 Bcl. Now we see Marshall as defender.

16 ... fxg5 17 N×g5 Rd5 18 N×h7 g5! 19 Qd3 Rf5! 20 N×f8 Rh×f8 21 Q×d4 Q×d4 22 R×d4 Kc7 23 f3 c5 24 Re4 Bb7

The excitement is over and Black has a bishop for two pawns. Despite the badness of the bishop, the endgame is easy.

25 Re2 g4 26 Rf1 g×f3 27 R×e6+ Kd7 28 Re7+ Kd8 29 R×b7 f2+ 30 Kf1 fxe1(Q)+ 31 Ke1 Re5+ 32 Kd2 Rf2+ 33 Kc3 R×g2 White resigns

After 15 rounds, Marshall had recovered quite a bit of ground and stood fifth, at 6-7, behind Maróczy's 10 points, Janowsky's 9½, Tarrasch's 9 and Schlechter's 8½. But in rounds 16 and 18 he spoiled a fine position against Teichmann and lost badly to Maróczy, while drawing unevenly with Wolf in between. Once again, the tide had turned and Marshall was in another bad streak. It was broken only by this victory over Taubenhaus, who, like Janowsky, was born in Poland but had taken up residence in Paris.

46. Queen's Gambit Declined, Orthodox Defense
Marshall–Taubenhaus, Ostende 1905
1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Be7 5 e3 Nbd7 6 Nf3 0-0 7 Bd3?

Again, Marshall's out-of-date specialty at the time. Black should equalize now with 7 ... d×c4 and 8 ... c5.

7 ... d×c4 8 B×c4 b6 9 0-0 Bb7 10 Qe2 Nbd5! 11 B×c7 Q×c7?

A subtle error. With 11 ... N×c3! 12 B×c8 N×e2+ 13 B×e2 Re×d8 Black equalizes. After 11 ... Q×c7 White can play 12 N×d5 e×d5 13 Ba6 to attack the queenside, as Tarrasch later demonstrated.
12 e4 Nf4? 13 Qe3 Ng6 14 Rad1 a6 15 Ng5! h6 16 Nh3 b5 17 Bb3 c5 18 d5

In the Queen's Gambit Accepted Marshall fully understood the need to push the two White center pawns. Now 18 ... cxd5 19 Bxd5 is strong.

18 ... c4 19 d6 Qf6 20 Be2 e5 21 f4! exf4 22 Nxf4 Qg5 23 Nxd5 Nde5 24 Kh1 Nxf4 25 Ne7+ Kh8 26 Rxf4 Rd8 27 Qf2 f6 28 Rf5 Qg4 29 h3!

As a German critic put it earlier this year in the Münchner Neueste Nachrichten, Marshall's "bravery is boundless, his play full of ideas, strength and glitter. Marshall is not a modern player... as that word is used. He compares with Anderssen and Zukertort. It's possible to say that Marshall is Anderssen playing the Queen's Gambit."

29 ... Q×d1+ 30 B×d1 R×d6 31 R×e5! R×d1+ 32 Kh2 Rfd8 33 Re6 Be8 34 R×f6! Resigns

"A beautiful little affair," said Hoffer in The Field.

The rest of the tournament was a nightmare for Frank. He lost a game that won Blackburne the third brilliancy prize, followed by mismatches against his one and future match opponents, Janowsky and Tarrasch. Said Helms' American Chess Bulletin:

Naturally, Americans are most interested in the achievements of Frank J. Marshall, whose efforts were not attended by the signal success that rewarded him at Cambridge Springs and St. Louis. In the company he was thrown into at Ostende, anyone of his class, not at his best throughout, might easily land where he did without occasion surprise.

In the final round Frank was crushed in 14 moves, in another game that shared a brilliancy prize, and he finished dismally in a tie for seventh place:

47. Falkbeer Counter gambit

Apabin-Marshall, Ostende 1905

1 e4 e5 2 f4 d5 3 c×d5 c6

The American had been caught in a published Alapin analysis which demonstrated that the early ... Bf5+ is worse than useless (7 ... Bf5+ 8 Kd1 Q×d5+ 9 Ng6). His last move is swiftly punished.

13 b4! Bb6 14 Qe7! Resigns

It's mate (14 ... Qd7 15 Bc4+ and 16 B×g7).

For his troubles Marshall received point money of 462½ francs, the same as Burn and Leonhardt, with whom he tied for seventh place. Lasker said of his showing, "There is such a thing as too much chess," no doubt referring to the American's play against Janowsky and Napier and now at Ostende.

Marshall had a different explanation, writing his New York backers that he did poorly partly because of bad lighting and "the early hour at which play began each day." The rounds began at 9:30 A.M. and American masters, like Eastern Europeans, were used to sleeping late and playing in the afternoon.

But if he was exhausted during Ostende 1905 he didn't show it in the small, four-player event organized immediately afterwards by two German amateurs. There was no prize money per se at what was called the Ostende Supplementary Tournament. Instead, the players—Marshall, Marco, Leonhardt and Teichmann—would receive 60 francs for each win, 40 for each loss and 30 for each draw.

Would the slight difference between a win and draw mean there would be a high percentage of draws? Or would the equally small difference between a loss and draw inspire greater risk-taking? As it turned out there was only one draw, Marshall—Leonhardt, out of the six games played.

Since Marco won twice and lost once he took first prize (and 10 francs) while Marshall and Leonhardt, with one win, one loss and their mutual draw, shared second prize and received 150 francs apiece. Marshall's best game:

48. Falkbeer Counter gambit

Teichmann-Marshall, Ostende (supplementary tournament) 1905

1 e4 e5 2 f4 d5 3 c×d5 c6

It's been widely—and incorrectly—claimed that Black's third move was first played by Nimzovich in 1907 and today it is often referred to as "Nimzovich's Variation." The basic idea is that 4 d×c6 N×c6 grants Black excellent compensation.

4 Ne3 c×d5 5 f×e5 d4 6 Ne4 Ne6 7 Nf3 Qd5 8 Nf2 Bf5 9 Bd3 Bg6 10 0-0 0-0-0!
Black's position seems suspect but Marshall now demonstrates the power of his d-pawn.

11 Qe2 Bc5 12 a3 Nb6 13 b4 Bb6 14 Bc4

After 14 Bc4

14 ... d3! 15 c×d3 Nd4! 16 N×d4 Q×d4 17 Ra2 Ng4 18 Bb2 Qf4! 19 g3 B×f2+ 20 Kg2 Qg5

Here 21 R×f2 N×f2 22 Q×f2 allows 22 ... B×d3 23 B×f7 Bb4!. Similarly, 21 h3 walks into 21 ... Ne3+! 22 K×e2 N×c4 23 d×c4 R×c2 or 23 b4 Qf5+. Now after a neat sacrifice to secure e5 for Black's queen, White succeeds in getting four pawns for his knight.

21 h4 Qf5 22 Bc3 b5! 23 B×b5 Qe6 24 Qf3 Bb6 25 Bc4 Qd7 26 c6 Qb7! 27 Q×b7+ K×b7 28 c×f7 Nf6 29 Rc1 Rd7 30 Be6 R×d3 31 B×f6 g×f6 32 Re2 Rf8 33 Be8+ Kb8! 34 Bf5? B×f5! White resigns

Napier used this game to challenge "the silly lamentation" that Marshall only saved lost games with coffeehouse swindles. "Despite broken bones, he went on playing attentively till the whistle blew—a practice not always followed by his opponents."

Thanks to Marshall’s forgetfulness, or a ghostwriter’s clumsiness, My Fifty Years says that between the Janowsky match and Ostende, the newlyweds went on to the “beautiful Dutch resort Schveningen” where Frank won first prize in a minor tournament. Actually, Ostende ended in late July and Scheveningen, the Fourth International Tournament of the Netherlands Chess Federation, began August 1.

The opposition was not particularly strong at Scheveningen and the better form Marshall had shown in the Ostende Supplementary carried over.

49. Marshall–Duras, Scheveningen 1905

Oldrich Duras “calmly ignored opening finesses and often came into the middlegame with a deplorable position,” according to Marshall’s friend Napier. “But he was a patient, crafty incredibly stubborn fighter.” Here, with his own King appearing the more vulnerable, Marshall missed a strong chance against the young Czech: 30 Qh4, which wins in all but one variation (30 ... Kf7 31 R×g7+ K×g7 32 Qh8+ or 30 ... R×f5 31 Qh8+ Kf7 32 R×g7+ Ke6 33 Rh6+ Kd7 34 R×e7+ and 35 Qh7+). The one line that saves Black is the perpetual check he can achieve after 30 Qh4 Rh5! 31 Q×h6 Qd1+.

Instead Marshall played the cautionary 30 Kh2, after which 30 ... Qc4 should have handled all threats. But Durus nervously replied 30 ... Kf7? and resigned after 31 R×g7+1 because of 31 ... K×g7 (or 31 ... Kf8 32 Kg5 etc.) 32 Qg3+ Kf7 33 Rh7+ Ke8 34 Qb8+ Kd7 35 Q×b7+ and wins.

At Scheveningen Marshall also had an easy time with Gerard Osakam of Rotterdam, whom he later described as “the chess masters’ lawyer and a very fine chess player.” It was games such as this that showed 1 d4 had as much potential to create miniature victories as 1 e4.

50. Queen’s Gambit Declined, Tarrasch Defense

Marshall–Osakam, Scheveningen 1905

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 c5 4 Nf3!? e×d4 5 N×d4 e5 6 Ndb5

This is similar to but not quite the same as a variation in which Bg5 and ... Nf6 have been played and White gets into trouble. Here 6 ... d4 7 Nxd5 N×d5 8 e4 was later shown to favor White.

6 ... a6 7 Qa4! Bd7 8 c×d5

Four years later Ossip Bernstein found that, after 8 ... Nc6 9 d×c6 B×c6 also fails, to 10 Qb3 a×b5 11 e4 b×c4.

8 ... Nf6 9 d6!
Faced with a deadly check at e7, Black becomes desperate.

9 ... axb5?! 10 Qxa8 b4 11 Na4 Bxd6 12 Be3 0-0 13 Rd1 Ne4
14 f3!

Risky, but ultimately decisive, as the board is stripped of hanging pieces.

14 ... Qh4+ 15 g3 Nxf3+ 16 Bxf3 Na6 17 Qb7 Bxa4 18 Rxd6
Qc4 19 Bxg3! Qc1+ 20 Kf2 Qc5+ 21 e3 Qxe6 22 Qxa6 Qd2+ 23 Be2

White is a clean piece ahead. Marshall's working day is over.

23 ... Be2 24 Bxe5 Qd5 25 Bd4 Qh5 26 Qd6 Resigns

Marshall found little resistance at Scheveningen, and he finished with 11 victories, 1 draw and a single loss. Two days after collecting his first prize he began his fourth international tournament of the year, at Barmen in the Prussian Rhine district. This major event, in commemoration of the fiftieth anniversary of the German Chess Union, was organized with some 106 players competing in various sections. The strongest of the minor sections was, in effect, a debut event for the next generation of masters — the generation born in the late 1880s that included Rudolf Spielmann, Aron Nimzovich, Savielly Tartakower, and Dawid Przepiórka. It was there, for example, that Akiba Rubinstein and Oldrich Duras first gained the master title.

"This was supposed to be a weak tournament," Marshall wrote of the top section in his unpublished notes. "But what was my surprise to see among others Janowsky, Chigorin and Maróczy playing there." Among the games he annotated in his notes but ultimately left out of My Fifty Years was this one, against the noted problemist and tournament player Hermann von Gottschall:

51. Queen's Gambit Declined, Orthodox Defense

Marshall–von Gottschall, Barmen 1905

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Be7 5 e3 c6 6 Qc2 Nbd7 7 Nf3
Nh5?

A faulty attempt to ensure the exchange of bishops. It only fuels Marshall's kingside attack.

8 h4! h6 9 Bxe7 Qxe7 10 g4!

After 11 Rg1 the threat of g5 (11 ... e5 12 g5 and 13 exd5) forces Black's hand and he must castle queenside.

10 ... Nh6 11 Rg1 dxe4 12 Bxe4 Nb6 13 Bb3 Bd7 14 e4 0-0-0
15 0-0-0 Kb8 16 e5 Nfd5 17 Ne4 f6 18 Qe5!

After 18 Qe5

Marshall could not have avoided having learned from Pillsbury's games how to handle this middlegame. "Having established a strong position White plays for the weakness at Black's d6 and his e5," he wrote in his notes.

18 ... Qf5 19 e5xf6 e6xf6 20 Qxf8 Rxf8 21 Nc5 Be8 22 Rde1
Rde8 23 Rg3 Na8

Since 23 ... e5 loses a pawn and 23 ... Nd7 does the same, Black has no good moves.

24 Nd2 Nac7 25 Bxd5 Nxd5 26 Ncc4 Kc7 27 Nc4 Rd8 28 g5!
fxg5 29 hgx5 hxg5 30 Rxc5 Ng4 31 Rg7+ Kb8 32 Nc5?

"The plot begins," Marshall wrote. The winning moves now include Ne5 and Na6+.

32 ... Rxd4 33 Nc5 Ka8 34 Re4 Rxe4 35 Nxc4 Nd5 36 Nd6 Kg8?

A blunder. With 36 ... Nb6 Black has chances for a draw.

37 Nxb7 Nb4 38 Na5 Ka8 39 a3 Rf5 40 a4 h4 41 Rgl Rxa5
42 bxa5 Kb7 43 Kd2 Kc7 44 Kc3 Bd7 45 Kd4 resigns

"One of the leading critics remarks recently that Marshall plays at his best in a rushing game when complications are the feature, and he is not in his element in a game that is slow, dull and a hard grind," Lasker's magazine noted. But it added: "This is only partly true, however, as the games he won at Barmen were not all of the dashing kind."

Marshall got off to a good start at Barmen and was startled one day when one of his leading opponents, Schlechter, resigned after just 21 moves. Marshall wrote in My Fifty Years: "I knew my position was strong, but not that strong!"
52. Queen's Gambit Declined, Orthodox Defense
Marshall–Schlechter, Barmen 1905
1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Ne3 Be7

A little finesse by Alapin that was rediscovered sixty years later. By preventing 4 Bg5 (which 3 ... Nf6 allows) Black forces his opponent to commit himself, such as with Nf3 rather than retain the option of Nge2.

4 Nf3 Nf6 5 Bg5 Nbd7 6 e3 0–0 7 Qc2 Re8 8 h4?! 

Marshall reveals with this move that he is going all out (intending h5 after ... Nf8–g6) to beat an opponent who was developing a reputation of invincibility. Schlechter “is the spirit of denial in chess,” the British Chess Magazine would later editorialize; he is the “ingenious upholder of inconstancy, the protagonist of action.” Marshall’s play forces Black into passivity from which even Schlechter couldn’t emerge.

8 ... c6 9 a3 Nf8 10 Bd3 dxc4 11 Bxc4 Nbd5 12 e4! Nxc3 13 Qxc3 f6 14 Be3 a5 15 Ba2 Bd7 16 0–0

Now White’s eighth move may appear ridiculous, but it has served a purpose in provoking 13 ... f6.

16 ... Qb6 17 Rfd1 Re8 18 Qd2 Be8 19 d5! cxd5 20 exd5 Rfd8 21 Bf4! Resigns

Resignation is explainable not only by 21 ... Bd6 22 d x e6 (threatening discovered check) and by 21 ... c5 22 d6+ and 23 Qd5!, but by 21 ... Qa7 which can be met by 22 d6! threatening 23 d x e7 R x d2 24 e5+ and 25 R x d2 with a mating attack. Black would then be quite lost after 22 ... Ng6 23 B x e6! Kh8 24 h5, e.g., 24 ... N x f4 25 Q x f4 B x f4 26 R d5 B c6 27 Nh4+ and Nge6.

One reason for the strong early showing of Marshall and Janowsky was their mutual love of gambling. Barmen 1905 was unique because, as a correspondent for Lasker’s Chess Magazine noted, someone had set up a betting bureau so that amateurs—or the players themselves—could wager on the outcome of specific games or of the final disposition of prizes. Each day the odds on each player’s success were posted on a huge blackboard in the playing hall “and a brisk business is carried on by players and spectators,” the magazine reported. “On Thursday after the tenth round in the tournament, Marshall and Janowsky were equal favorites, 2–1 against them being taken....”

Marshall’s chances for a second straight first prize, his third international victory in a year, were worth a wager. Going into the final round, his 10–4 score led the pack, with Janowsky and Maróczy a half point back.

Moreover, both of the American’s rivals were due to play Black, while Marshall had White. But, as at Monte Carlo a year before, there were many things that could go wrong in a last round.

53. Queen’s Gambit Declined
Marshall–Chigorin, Barmen 1905
1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Bb4?!

Another of Chigorin’s unusual ideas that has never caught on but never actually been refuted. Nimzovich would later show that Black could soundly exchange off this bishop if he subsequently compensated for its absence by placing pawns on dark-colored center squares (e5, d6, e5). But Chigorin didn’t seem to mind if his pawns were on light-colored squares, such as c6, d5 and e6. In his game with Bernstein from this tournament play continued 4 Nf3 Nf6 5 e3 0–0 6 Bd3 Nbd7 7 0–0 c6 7 a3 B x c3 8 b x c3 Re8 10 c x d5 e x d5 11 c4 d x c4 12 B x c4 Nb6 13 Bd3 B g4 14 Qc2 B f3 15 g x f3 Qd5 16 Be2 Rac8 17 Rb1 e5 and Black soon stood better.

4 Nf3 c6 5 a3 B x c3+ 6 b x c3 Nf6 7 e3 Nbd7 8 Qc2 0–0 9 Bd3 Re8 10 c x d5 e x d5 11 0–0 Nf8 12 Ne5 c5 13 c4?!

Correct on the previous move, this was played here to stop 13 ... c4 but leaves him with a weak isolani that Chigorin exploits masterfully.

13 ... c x d4! 14 e x d4 d x c4 15 B x c4 Be6 16 Bb2 Re8 17 Qd3 B x c4 18 N x c4 Ng6 19 Re1 Nf 4! 20 Qf1

The choices aren’t pretty (20 Qb5 Qd5 or 20 Qf3 R x c4 21 Q x f4 Rc2). Black has won the battle over d5.

20 ... Qd5 21 R x e8+ R x e8 22 Ne5 Ne4 23 Qc4

After 23 Qc4

“The interesting move 23 ... Ng3 presents itself,” wrote Chigorin in Nviss, a popular Russian magazine that in English means “The Cornfield.” The idea
behind the knight move is 24 \textit{Q} \times d5 \textit{N} \times e5 mate! “But after 24 \textit{f}3! \textit{N} \times e4+ 25 \textit{K} \times f1 \textit{Q} \times c4 26 \textit{N} \times c4 \textit{N} \times d3 27 \textit{R} \times b1 \textit{B} \times f4+ 28 \textit{K} \times b1 \textit{N} \times c5 29 \textit{R} \times b2 \textit{N} \times b2 30 \textit{R} \times b2 \textit{Ke}6!"

As played, he wins a pawn.

23 \ldots \textit{Q} \times e4 24 \textit{N} \times e4 \textit{b}5 25 \textit{N} \times e5 \textit{f}6 26 \textit{N} \times f3 \textit{R} \times f8 27 \textit{N} \times e1 \textit{N} \times d2 28 \textit{f}3 \textit{N} \times e4 29 \textit{g}3 \textit{N} \times d6 30 \textit{B} \times c3 \textit{N} \times b6 31 \textit{B} \times b2 \textit{R} \times e4 32 \textit{R} \times d1 \textit{N} \times c7 33 \textit{K} \times f2 \textit{N} \times d5 34 \textit{f}4 \textit{K} \times f7 35 \textit{R} \times d2 \textit{N} \times a4 36 \textit{N} \times g2 \textit{a}6 37 \textit{N} \times e3 \textit{N} \times e3 38 \textit{K} \times c3 \textit{N} \times b2 39 \textit{R} \times b2 \textit{Ke}6!

Better than 39 \ldots \textit{R} \times e3+ 40 \textit{K} \times d4 \textit{R} \times b2 41 \textit{R} \times b2 \textit{R} \times e3 when White has activated his rook and king at the inexpensive price of a pawn.

40 \textit{R} \times b3 \textit{K} \times d5 41 \textit{R} \times d3 \textit{f}5! 42 \textit{h}3 \textit{h}5 43 \textit{K} \times e2 \textit{R} \times d4 44 \textit{R} \times e4 \textit{R} \times e4+ 45 \textit{K} \times d2 \textit{h}4! 46 \textit{R} \times d7 \textit{h} \times g3 47 \textit{R} \times g7 \textit{R} \times f4

Games between Marshall and Chigorin always were fought to the bitter end. At Ostende the Russian played on to the sixty-fifth move before resigning, even though he had been quite lost for the final 25 moves. The remainder of this game, however, is a highly instructive rook-and-pawn ending that has been since used in several endgame texts.

48 \textit{R} \times g3 \textit{K} \times e5 49 \textit{K} \times e2 \textit{R} \times e4 50 \textit{R} \times g6 \textit{R} \times e4 51 \textit{R} \times f4 52 \textit{R} \times b3 \textit{R} \times e4 53 \textit{K} \times d1 \textit{K} \times d5 54 \textit{h}4 \textit{f}3 55 \textit{K} \times c1 \textit{K} \times f4 56 \textit{h}5 \textit{R} \times e4 57 \textit{K} \times f2 \textit{R} \times e4 58 \textit{K} \times e1 \textit{K} \times g3 59 \textit{h}6 \textit{R} \times h6 60 \textit{a}4! \textit{b}4! 61 \textit{h} \times g7 \textit{R} \times h7 62 \textit{R} \times b4 \textit{R} \times h1+ 63 \textit{K} \times d2 \textit{f}2 \textit{White resigns}

Meanwhile, Janowsky, from a bad position, and Maróczy, from a drawish one, both won and moved past Marshall in the standings. Maróczy had, in fact, scored 6 1/2 out of his last 7 games to score one of his most impressive victories. For Marshall it was a bitter blow, and with some reluctance he finally turned his attention to Tarrasch.

\textbf{The Tarrasch Fiasco}

Tarrasch’s professional duties as a physician left him time for chess only during vacations. Nevertheless, the German was at the peak of his powers. He regarded himself as the only legitimate challenger to Emanuel Lasker and rarely missed an opportunity to belittle rivals such as Marshall. The American found him “vain” and “arrogant” — but also unaccountably difficult to handle over the board. They agreed to play in Nuremberg in September for $1000. Marshall would also get expense money — $200 if he lost, $300 if he won.

In an age when masters were distinctive in their appearance, Tarrasch stood out. His hair was parted in the middle, he wore high-buttoned shirts, and had a goatee and pince-nez. He suffered from a club foot, but

\textit{at the board, he seemed almost to strut, with a severe posture and a right arm thrust forward to rest at a rook file. Tarrasch also liked to make his opening moves quickly, often blitzing off the first dozen or so moves in a minute or two to show his theoretical erudition. A man of enormous ego, he had published at age 33 a colossal book of his games, at a time when very few such autobiographical collections existed. And not 50, or 70, but 300 games. It was still one of the most expensive books ($31) around in 1905 and it helped establish Tarrasch as the foremost authority on the game of chess.}

“Without trying to make excuses, I may say that I was exceedingly fagged at the time,” Marshall later explained. “I was unfit for serious combat after an unbroken series of play in four tournaments and a match.” In fact, he began the match disastrously and was lost by the sixteenth move, as White, in the first game:


1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Nbd7 5 e3 c6

Tarrasch does not use his beloved 3 \ldots \textit{c}5 but invites Marshall to enter the variation named after his most famous triumph. Whether this was purely psychological — or Tarrasch had noticed a flaw in Marshall’s opening preparation — is not known. Whatever the case his decision achieves instant success, and for years afterwards Marshall would suffer when handling the Cambridge Springs Defense.

Even as late as Berlin 1928 the opening posed problems to him, as Marshall’s game with Akiba Rubinstein showed: 6 Nf3 Qa5 7 c \times d5 N \times d5 8 Qb3 Bb4 9 Rcl e5! 10 e4 N \times e4 11 b \times c3 Bb3 12 Rdl c \times d4 13 R \times c4 Bc5 14 Rd2 0-0 and after 15 Bd3 Bb6! 16 0-0 Ne5 White was in very bad shape. (But Rubinstein later forfeited on time in a winning position.)

6 Qc2 Qa5 7 c \times d5 N \times d5 8 Nf3 Bb4 9 Kd2!? c5!

After 9 \ldots c5

\textbf{After 9 \ldots \textit{c}5}
White’s position is already critical, as e3 cannot be held.
10 a3 B × c3+ 11 b × c3 c × d4 12 e × d4 N7b6 13 Bd3 Bd7 14 Rfe1
Re8 15 Qb3 0-0 16 Ke2 R × e3 17 R × e3 Q × e3 18 Qbl b6 19 Bd2
Qc7 20 Kf1 Nc4 21 Bc1 Ba4 22 Qa2 Re8 23 Qe2 Ne5 24 Qe1 Na5!
And after 25 . . . Nb3 White was quite lost. He resigned 19 moves later.

As the match proceeded the reeling Marshall switched to 1 c4 but
found himself unprepared to meet Tarrasch’s adoption of Bird’s Defense
of the Ruy Lopez. If you lose with White, you cannot expect to win
matches, and Marshall was crushed, losing 8 games and winning only one.
Tarrasch promptly used the one-sided result to propose a world-
championship match with Lasker, saying it was “much harder for me to beat
a young Marshall than it was for Lasker to beat an old Steinitz” when the
title changed hands in 1894.

More than a century later Arpad Elo, the Wisconsin statistician
whose rating system helped transform grandmaster chess, analyzed the
results of Tarrasch versus Marshall and several other matches. Based on
their previous results, Elo wrote that the predicted result of a 17-game
match should have been approximately 9.7–7.3 in the German’s favor.
The actual results, 12–5, was therefore widely out of sync: Tarrasch
scored more than two points above what Elo felt he should have. In fact,
of 77 major matches since 1900 that Elo studied, the difference between
predicted and actual result in the Tarrasch–Marshall match was exceeded
only by two other surprises (the 1935 Alekhine–Euwe upset and a 1983
women’s candidates match between Nana Alexandria and Irina Levitina).

Lasker later explained what happened to Marshall in terms of psy-
chology. Marshall, he wrote, “is to such a degree under the influence of
environment . . . In a city where he is admired, where friends stand ready
to shake his hand . . . he will do himself justice. Otherwise he will be
depressed.” (One problem with this theory is Marshall’s subsequent suc-
cess at the 1906 Congress of the German Chess Union— which was held
in Nuremberg, the same city, presumably with the same lack of admiring
fans, as the Tarrasch defeat.)

Nevertheless, the Tarrasch match was important to Marshall because
he learned from it how to adjust to his opponents. Before the match, his
score with the German was 3 losses and a draw. Including the match, his
score was 11 losses, 9 draws and a single win. Yet after their meeting in
Ostende 1907, Marshall began to reverse the trend. For the remaining two
decades that they met over the board, Marshall scored 6 wins, 9 draws and
only 2 losses—or better than 60 percent, compared with the previous

22 percent. The ability to adjust was the single biggest lesson Marshall
would learn in the next five years.

Napier had written in Lasker’s magazine that the Barmen tour-
ament had showed, among other things, that Marshall was “consistently in-
consistent.” And, he added, Marshall had discovered another painful
lesson—that chess is a very difficult game.

Finally, that year of great success and failure ended on a happy note.
On December 28 a son, Frank Rice Marshall, was born to Carrie.
Chapter Six

Candidate Marshall

History knows 1906 as a year of dramatic events. In April San Francisco had its great earthquake and fire. In June on the roof of Madison Square Garden millionaire Harry K. Thaw committed the "crime of the century" by shooting the celebrated architect Stanford White. And also in New York, health officials traced the first of 53 cases of typhoid to a cook, dubbed "Typhoid Mary."

* * *

Despite the clear recognition that he was now the number one American player, Marshall did not repeat the great success of Cambridge Springs, that of achieving clear first place in a major American tournament, for twenty years. In fact, his results at home upon his return in late 1905 were decidedly unimpressive.

He had to concede the 1905-6 Manhattan Chess Club Championship to Albert Fox, who had been an also-ran at Cambridge Springs. Marshall scored only 9–3 and finished third. And in the 1906 Brooklyn Chess Club Championship he tied with Fox for second place, at 6½–1½, after losing to Eugene Delmar in Delmar’s finest tournament. (Sixty years later Delmar’s grandson, Walter Goldwater, would become president of the Marshall Chess Club.)

A much stronger tournament, with a $1000 first prize, had been planned by Hermann Helms, whose American Chess Bulletin had been launched two years earlier. But when the plans for the event, the Eighth American Chess Congress, fell through there was nothing to keep Marshall home. Frank left Carrie in Brooklyn with their newborn child and began his next European siege in the summer of 1906.

First came the massive, chaotic, 36-player tournament at Ostende, beginning June 5. It is worth considering this extraordinary event in some detail:

55. Queen’s Pawn Game
Swiderski-Marshall, Ostende 1906

1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 c5 3 e3 Nf6 4 Nbd2 Nc6 5 Be2 Bf51 6 dxe5

White’s fifth move was passive (5 Bd3) and his pawn-grabbing sixth, in Marshall’s words, “quite provocative.” Swiderski had played the same way against Spielmann in an earlier round and lost in 23 moves.

6... e5 7 Bb5 Qc7 8 b4 Be7 9 Bb2 Nd7 10 a3 0-0 11 c4 Bd3!
12 Qb3 e4 13 cxd5!

An improvement over 13 Bxc6 in Swiderski’s earlier game. White sacrifices a bishop for pawns and a dominating center, and Marshall is thrown into the somewhat unfamiliar role of defender.

13... Bxb5 14 Nxe4 Nxe6 15 Bxe5 Nxe5 16 d6 Nd3+ 17 Kd2 Qc6 18 dxe7?
(see diagram)

Too quick to regain material. After the game it was discovered that 18 Ne3!, which threatens 19 dxe7 as well as 19 Nxb5 and 20 Qxd3, would probably have won. Now Marshall gets to play like Marshall.

18... Qxe4! 19 exf8(Q)+ Rxf8 20 Nd4 Nxf2!

And here 21 Nxb5 Nxb1 22 Rxb1? Qxb4+ loses quickly. Black now has sold Exchange compensation.
then Marshall tried an innovation—4 e3 Nf6 5 B×c4 a6 6 Qf3?. But it backfired after 6 ... c5! 7 d5 e×d5 8 N×d5 Nb7 9 B×d2 Ne5! and White was soon on the defensive and then quite lost (10 N×f6+ g×f6 11 Qe4 Bg7 12 Ne3 f5 13 Qe2 N×c4 14 Q×c4 Be6 15 Qc2 Rg8 16 0-0-0? Qd8! 17 a3 Qa2).

3 ... a6 4 B×c4 Nf6 5 Ne3 c6 6 a4 b6

Black delays ... c5 too long and eventually this allows White to advance in the center—the classic sin of omission in the Queen's Gambit Accepted.

7 Ne3 Bb7 8 0-0 Ne6 9 Oe2 Nb4 10 e4!

Black's failure to play an early ... c7-c5 makes this advance particularly strong.

10 ... Be7 11 Bg5 h6 12 B×f6 0-0 13 Rf1 Rc8 14 Ne5 Qe8 15 Rd2! c5 16 d×e5! B×e5 17 Rad1 Qe7 18 Bg3!

The misery resulting from the pinning 19 Bh4 cannot easily be avoided, since 18 ... Qe7? 19 Ng6 is worse.

18 ... Rfd8 19 Bh4 R×d2 20 R×d2 g5? 21 Bg3 Rd8 22 R×d8+ Q×d8 23 h4 Qd4 24 h×g5! N×e4

After 24 ... N×e4

This last move was Black's idea when he wagered at move 20 that his kingside would survive 20 ... g5.

25 Qh5! N×e5 26 B×e6!

Evidently overlooked by "Ian," as he was known: 26 ... N×e6 allows 27 Q×f7+ and 28 Ng6 mate while 26 ... f×e6 allows 27 Qg6+ Kf8 28 Q×h6+ and 29 Q×g5 or 27 ... Kf8 28 Q×h6+ Nh7 29 Qg6+.

26 ... Qd2 27 B×f7+ Kf8 28 Q×h6+ Ke7 29 Qg7 B×f2+! 30 B×f2 Nh5+

Did Marshall miss this? (31 g×h3 Qc1+ and 32 ... Qh1+ wins the Q)
31 Kh2! Qx f2 32 Bd5+ Kd6 33 Ne4+ Resigns

"The sun never sets on games like this," wrote Napier. But there were better ones. In fact, Marshall's best game of the tournament was the following, a superlative example of counterattack. Amos Burn was a frequent punching bag for Marshall, losing some of the American's most celebrated games. By the end of their careers the tournament record stood at 6 Marshall wins, 2 Burn victories, 5 draws.

57. Queen's Pawn Game
Burn–Marshall, Ostende 1906

1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 e5 3 c3 e6 4 Bf4 Nc6 5 e3 Nf6 6 Nbd2 Bd6 7 Bg3 0–0 8 Bd3 Re8! 9 Ne5?

White stops the intended ... e5 at the unsound cost of at least a pawn, but Black soon conjures up dangerous kingside compensation.

9 ... Bxe5! 10 dxe5 Nd7 11 f4 c4 12 Be2 Qb6 13 Kg2 Qxb2 14 Re1 Qxe2+ 15 Qe2 f5!

An indication of Steinitz's influence. In the 1870s and 80s Black would have played quietly (e.g., ... Nc8 and a queenside pawn advance) - and probably gotten mated by move 30.

16 exf6 Nxf6 17 Bh4 Rf8 18 Bxf6 Rxf6 19 Nf3 Qa3 20 Bxh7+ Kxh7 21 Ng5+ Kg8 22 Qh5 Ne5!

The king's escape is prepared—to c6. "This game more than any other shows Marshall's genius in complicated positions," wrote Hoffer.

23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qh8+ Ke7 25 Qxg7+ Kd6!

Not 25 ... Ng7 because 26 Nh7! would then win. The simple part here is that 26 Qx f6 allows a knight fork, which Burn bars with his next move.

Candidate Marshall

Marshall recalled Burn as a "quiet, unassuming man . . . who was silent for long periods and rarely argued with others." He let his strong moves speak for him:

26 Kg3! Nd7 27 e4! Kc6! 28 e5 Qf8!

Another fine move in what has become a dicey position. On rook retreats, White would have won with 29 Nx e6 and its multiple threats. Now 29 e6 Qx f6 30 Qx f6 leads to a pawn race that either player might win. But Burn breaks serve first and Marshall finishes with a fine sacrificial attack.

29 e6 Qx f6 30 Qg8? Nc5 31 Qe8+ Bxd7 32 Qxa8 e5

Reminiscent of the Pillsbury game at Vienna 1903 when Marshall was down an army and a half and yet won. Here, for example, 33 Rhf1 e x f4 34 Kf2 Nxd4+ wins.

33 Nh3 Qg6+ 34 Kh2 Nc6+ 35 Kf1 N x c1 36 Nb2 Qc2 37 g3 Nd3 38 Q x a7 d4 39 N x d3 Bh3+ 40 Ke1 c x d3 White resigns

Once stage two was over, the four players with the best cumulative scores from each section advanced. This meant Marco, Duras, Blackburne, Chigorin and Mieses were eliminated. Marshall's 10–5 was the third best result overall.

The third stage featured section A versus D, and B versus C. Marshall did poorly, losing to Maroczy and Rubinstein and drawing with Hans Falkn, an obscure Swiss master who would set a record for most games played in a simultaneous exhibition that year. Marshall managed only one victory in this stage, over Paul Johner, another minor Swiss master. But no one was eliminated this time. All the surviving masters advanced to the fourth stage, in which each section played its own four-man round robin. In his section Marshall registered an even score, drawing with Teichmann, losing to Julius Perlis, an enterprising Viennese, and winning the following, a good example of how to positionally press an opponent all game long.

58. Queen's Gambit Declined, Tarrasch Defense
Marshall–Spielmann, Ostende 1906

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 c5 4 c x d5 exd5 5 Nf3 Nc6 6 Bg5

There was no consensus on White's best procedure against the Tarrasch Defense until Schlechter popularized 6 g3 around 1908. White's sixth move was Marshall's latest idea. It aimed at leaving Black with a bad bishop hampered by a d5-pawn.
6 ... Be7 7 B×e7 Ng×e7 8 d×e5 Qa5

A year later, Spielmann demonstrated that 8 ... d4! 9 Ne4 0-0 gave Black excellent compensation for the sacrificed pawn in the shape of centralized piece play (10 g3 Bf5 11 Nd2 Qa5 etc.).

9 e3 0-0 10 Bd3 Q×c5 11 0-0 Be6 12 a3 Rfd8 13 Rc1 Qd6 14 Nb5 Qd7 15 Nb4 Rac8 16 Bb1 N×d4 17 Q×d4 R×c1 18 R×c1 Nc6 19 Qh4 h6

To ensure his strategic edge, Marshall has been setting little traps. For example, the strategically desirable 19 ... Bf5 would have allowed 20 B×f5 and 21 Nd4, or 20 R×c6 B×b1 21 Ne5 Qe8 22 Rc7 with a substantial edge.

20 h3 Rc8 21 Qf4 Qd8 22 Bd3 Qa5 23 Kh2 a6

White has nurtured his plan quite nicely and now begins an effective queenside initiative.

24 Rc3! Qb6 25 b4 Rfd8 26 Rc5 Kf8 27 h4 Rd7 28 Be2 Rfd8 29 g3 Ke7 30 Nd4 N×d4 31 Q×d4 f6?

Black saw at move 28 that most endgames are lost for him (28 ... Qc7 29 Q×c7 and 30 Nd4) so he brought his king to the center. With one winning method blocked, Marshall finds another.

32 Qd3! Qd6 33 Qh7 Kg8 34 Bg4 Bf7 35 Qc2 Rfd8 36 Rc7+ Kf8 37 R×b7 Kg8 38 Qc5 d4 39 Qa7! Qd5 40 e×d4 Qa2

After 40 ... Qa2

41 d5!

No Marshall win without tactics. This protects f2 and threatens 42 R×f7.

41 ... Q×d5 42 Re7 Kf8

Otherwise Be6 or Bh5 wins (42 ... f5 43 Bh5! B×h5 44 R×g7+ Kh8 45 R×h7+ and mates).

43 Bf3 Qa2 44 Re21 Resigns

There was no defense to 45 Qe7+.

Since Marshall by now had a total score of 13-9 he was among the nine survivors with the best overall results. The final nine played a round robin, and here Marshall became a drawing master, beating only Perlis and losing only to Schlechter and Tietzmann.

When scores were totaled and prizes given out on July 12, it turned out that Marshall had only a plus-three score, 16½-13½, thanks to the tournament's gradual elimination of the weaker players. Nevertheless, that was good enough for seventh place in the final standings, well behind Schlechter's winning score of 21-9 and Maróczy's second-place 20-10, but quite creditable in one of the most remarkable events in chess's golden age.

Nuremberg 1906

Whenever he was abroad Marshall wrote home to Carrie, often on postcards home. Picture postcards had been invented in the 1870s and came into fashion in the 1890s. At most major resorts a vacationer could get a card made of a photograph of himself in front of a recognizable backdrop. There are Marshall postcards from the 1905-14 period showing him, for example, at Ostende, Biarritz and St. Petersburg, as well as various places in Germany, a country that had become a favorite of his. Eleven days after Ostende 1906 ended Frank was in Nuremberg for his second German tournament.

Nuremberg organizers had sponsored a major tournament every ten years since 1886. The 1906 version was intended to be a "champion" tournament—although exactly what that meant was never made clear. It did attract some world-class players, such as Tarrasch, Schlechter, Janowsky, and Chigorin. Among the old generation, its most significant absentee was, as usual, Lasker, who now played rarely. The world champion wrote in his magazine that there wasn't enough money to attract him back to the board: "Probably the chess world was content to enjoy the music but let Nuremberg pay the piper, and hence funds were not large enough to provide for the expenses of the principal characters."

By 1906 Marshall, although only 29, was counted among the veterans, in contrast with the youngsters, each at least five years younger than him, such as Duras, Spielmann and Milan Vidmar. Another was 22-year-old medical student Erich Cohn, "a fine young fellow" according to Marshall, who achieved his best results in his native Berlin just before
the World War. Cohn's great promise was snuffed out when he was killed weeks before the armistice in November 1918. Marshall was always a bit better than Cohn, scoring 5 wins and 2 draws in their seven career games with one another.

59. Queen's Gambit Declined, Tarrasch Defense

Marshall–Cohn, Nuremberg 1906

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Ne3 c5 4 c×d5 e×d5 5 Nf3 Nf6?

Now regarded as an elementary opening error, this move was played by many masters at a time when move order in the Tarrasch Defense was often haphazard and experimental. If White now continues 6 g3 Nc6 Black will have escaped unpunished.

6 Bg5! Be6 7 e4 c×d4 8 Bb5+! Nbd7 9 N×d4

This ensures a positional plus (9 . . . a6 10 B×d7+ B×d7 11 e5? favors White more).

9 . . . Bb4 10 e5! h6 11 e×f6 B×c3+ 12 b×c3 h×g5 13 N×e6 f×e6 14 f×g7 Rg8 15 Qh5+ Ke7 16 Q×g5+ Kf7 17 Qh5+ Ke7 18 0–0

A pawn ahead and with e6 as a permanent weakness, it doesn't look like Black can reach move 30. He doesn't.

18 . . . R×g7 19 Rf1! Nf6 20 Qh3 Qd6 21 Bd3! Rag8 22 g3 Ng4 23 Bf5! Ne5 24 B×e6! Rf8

Because 24 . . . Q×e6 25 Q×e6+ K×e6 26 f4 is a hopeless rook ending, and 24 . . . Nf3+ 25 Kh1 N×e1 26 R×e1 is a lost middlegame.

25 Qh4+ Rf6 26 B×d5! Q×d5 27 Qd4 Ke6 28 Rd1! Resigns


Nuremberg 1906 is also known in chess history for a particular rule, suggested by Leopold Hoffer. Hoffer, who perhaps exerted greater influence than any other chess journalist ever, wondered whether the time forfeiture rules were too severe. At his urging, the organizers instituted a new rule, which applied to all games that had continued from the morning session of play (9 A.M. to 3 P.M.) and were resumed at 5:30 P.M.: In the evening session, players would not be forfeited if they exceeded the time limit of 15 moves per hour. Instead, they would be fined. The levy was one mark—the equivalent of 25 cents—for each extra minute taken. So if a player took four hours to play 45 moves, he owed 60 marks. "The funnest occurrence," according the French magazine La Strategie, fell to Dr. Tarrasch, the local hero. Not only did he lose a disappointing game to Salwe, he took so much time in doing so that he had to pay a fine of 95 marks for the privilege.

Towards the end of the tournament the Hoffer rule was dropped. Marshall avoided problems with the clock by finishing most of his games early:

60. Queen's Gambit Accepted

Marshall–Wolff, Nuremberg 1906

1 d4 d5 2 c4 d×c4 3 Nf3 Nf6 4 Ne5 g6 5 e3 e6 6 B×c4 e5 7 0–0 Nc6 8 h4? Qe7 9 Qe2 b5 10 Ba2 Bb7 11 d×c5 B×c5 12 b4 Bd6 13 Bb2 0–0 14 Rac1 Rad8 15 Bb1 Bb8? 16 Ne4!

Marshall often played the Gambit Accepted, an opening that should have suited his style, passively trying to extract small advantages from near-symmetrical positions. His modest eighth move was designed to be able to exchange on c5 and support his twelfth and thirteenth, as in a Semi-Tarrasch Defense.

After 16 Ne4

Here, however, he exploits Black's weak fourteenth and fifteenth moves: 16 . . . N×e4 17 B×e4 Qb6 (to get out of the c-file pin) would be met by 18 Ng5 h6 19 Qh5, threatening 20 Q×h6 g×h6 21 Bh7 mate. No better is 16 . . . Be7 17 N×f6+ B×f6 18 Qe2 or 17 . . . g×f6 18 Qe2 f5 19 Nd4 Rc8 20 N×f5.

16 . . . N×d5 17 Ng5+ g6

There is little choice since 17 . . . h6 18 Qc2 g6 19 N×e6 annihilates Black.

18 N×h7! K×h7 19 Ng5+ Kg8 20 Qh5+ f6 21 B×g6! Rd7 22 N×e6 Rh7!

A clever defense, based on 23 Q×d5 B×h2+ with a perpetual check (24 Kh1 Be5+ 25 B×h7+?? Q×h7+ and wins).
23 B×h7+ Q×h7 24 Q×h7+ K×h7 25 N×f8+ B×f8 26 Rfd1

Two rooks usually overwhelm three minor pieces when the pieces cannot protect one another (e.g., after 27 e4!).

26 ... Nce7 27 e4! Nb6 28 Rc7 Kg8 29 B×f6 Ng6 30 Rd8 Resigns

What eased Marshall's progress towards a prize was the surprisingly poor play by the men he expected to be his rivals. Tarrasch, who had proven so mystifying an opponent to Marshall in this same Nuremberg a year before, could only manage a final score of 7½-8½. Janowsky was unrecognizable at 4-12. In fact after Johann Berger, the Austrian.endgame authority, dropped out of the tournament—thereby wiping out his loss to Janowsky—the latter decided he, too, would drop out. When that was refused, Janowsky sleep-walked through the tournament, losing game after game.

Marshall's real rivals for first prize turned out to be Schlechter, a brilliant but pathetic player who was constantly trying to earn prize money to support his mother, and Duras. But the latter, a 23-year-old Czech, was not immune to Marshall's confusing openings. Capablanca would later write: "A hard worker, with original ideas, Marshall has contributed many a startling move to the technique of the openings" which managed to regularly surprise the uninitiated.

61. Ruy Lopez, Steinitz Defense
Duras-Marshall, Nuremberg 1906

1 e4 c5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 Bb5 d6 4 d4 Bg4?!

Marshall also played his fourth move against 4 c3. After 4 d4 Bg4 White can obtain an edge in a variety of ways, e.g., 5 d×c5 d×c5 6 Qd5!

But it usually took Marshall's opponents several years to catch up with his latest idea and by that time he'd moved on. One of the Showalter-Marshall match games of 1909 went 4 d4 Bg4 5 d5 a6 6 d×c6 a×b5 7 c×b7 Rbb 8 c4 b×c4 9 Qa4+ Bd7 10 Q×c4 R×b7 11 Ne3 Be7 12 0-0 Nf6 13 a4!? 0-0 14 a5 c5 15 b6 and Black was soon better: 15 ... Rb4 16 Qe2 Qb6 17 Nd2 Ra8 18 Ne4 Qc6 19 Bg5 Be6 20 Ne3 Rb6 and ... Rb×a6.

5 d×c5 d×c5 6 Q×d8+ R×d8 7 B×c6+ b×c6 8 Be3 f5!

"A surprise and very strong strike," wrote Tarrasch.

9 e×f5 Bd6 10 Nbd2 Ne7 11 Ne4 B×f5 12 N×f5 N×d5 13 B×a7?

Tarrasch added that this demonstrates how "the natural consequence to an indifferent position is where good moves are scarce, one is apt to make a bad one."
chess. Another was the presence of a more worthy American challenger, Pillsbury. And a third was a traditional one—money.

Pillsbury had pursued the matter of a world championship match several times and, when it seemed a possibility in 1902, he and Lasker were talking about a huge $5000 stake. When, a year later, Marshall proposed playing Lasker in England for a mere £100, a miffed Lasker said he expected to be paid as a professional and wouldn't risk the title for less than £400. As world champion he also wanted to determine the venue. Tarrasch then entered the picture, offering the £400 stake Marshall felt was too high. But at that critical juncture Tarrasch had to cancel his bid after a serious skating accident.

By 1904 the championship picture remained confused. Pillsbury was dying but there was a new face, Czeza Maróczy. The Hungarian became the natural choice for a challenger after his successes at Monte Carlo 1904, Ostende 1905 and Baden-Baden 1905. Lasker, meanwhile, kept Marshall at bay with several conditions. This led Marshall's friend Napier to sarcasm: "Dr. Lasker might prefer to play in a balloon, or in the nether recesses of a coal mine, or at Archangel or Timbuctoo," he wrote in British Chess Magazine.

Nevertheless, Marshall and the world champion got as far as fixing January 14, 1905, as the start of the match—before negotiations collapsed again. Marshall then decided to take on Janowsky, while Maróczy made his own bid to play Lasker. A group of New Yorkers wanted the Hungarian to challenge the champion in a three-stage match, beginning in Vienna, continuing at Havana and then climaxing in New York. Talks got as far as a signed contract in April 1906. But that also fell through.

In turn, in late 1906 Karl Schlechter, who had won Ostende 1906, was ready to challenge Lasker. But here Marshall made his move. Less than a month after the Nuremberg tournament ended, and within days of arriving back in New York, he issued a formal challenge on September 11, 1906. Lasker quickly agreed to play him in early 1907 for a $1000 purse that would be held by the noted Philadelphia amateur Walter Penn Shipley. Draws would not count and the winner would be the first to score eight victories. The playing sites would be several American cities. In late September Lasker wrote to various clubs asking for sponsorship of individual games, at a rate of $250 per game, or $500 for three. Everything was so quickly arranged that an outsider might have wondered why it had taken 11 years since the last world title match.

Prematch publicity was considerable. It was going to be a showdown between the dashing young American and the crafty, worldly wise European. Marshall, at 29, was nine years younger than his opponent—and perhaps too young. Today, we regard 29 as the prime age for a grandmaster but it was not always true. Between the first official world championship match in 1886 and 1950 there was only one other challenger as young as Marshall. And that was Lasker himself when he won the title from Steinitz in 1894.

Marshall was also one of the few masters with a plus score against the German, recalling his win at Paris 1900 and a draw at Cambridge Springs. Lasker's Chess Magazine quoted from one interview in which Marshall claimed he trained by cutting down his tobacco consumption to 10 cigars a day, compared with the 15 he would normally smoke in a three-hour session. The challenger spoke of other training tips:

I'm very careful about what I eat for a week or so before the first day so as to get my nerves as steady as possible, and to keep my head clear. And then I sleep a whole lot. Why, some days I sleep as much at 12 or 14 hours. Sleep is the best training for a chess master.

Originally planned to begin January 1, 1907, the match finally got under way January 26 in New York with the challenger taking the White pieces. Lasker defended against Marshall's Ruy Lopez cleverly, striking a shrewd psychological blow by sacrificing a knight at move 14. Marshall immediately began to go astray and by the twenty-fourth move he was lost. Losing with White was not a good policy at any time but in the first game it was a calamity.

The next game was worse. The two men castled on opposite wings and Marshall sacrificed a pawn to open the g-file. Several annotators, including Tarrasch, thought the challenger had a winning position but failed to find a key nineteenth move. Actually, as Lasker later showed, he could have answered that improvement by sacrificing his queen for a rock and knight, with "an impenetrable king position." As it went, Marshall soon had another lost endgame and was ground down in 52 moves.

In retrospect the third game, playing January 31, and the eighth, about three weeks later, doomed Marshall's chances.

62. Queen's Gambit Declined, Lasker Defense
Marshall–Lasker, third match game, New York, 1907
1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Be7 5 e3 Nc6 6 B×c6 Q×c6 7 Bd3! N×c3 8 b×c3 Nbd7 9 Nf3 0–0 10 0–0 Rd8 11 Qc2 Nf8 12 Ne5

Marshall had had such early success with the Pillsbury plan of Ne5, Bd3 and Qc2 in other Queen's Gambit Declined positions that it took him years to appreciate how poorly it worked when two minor pieces had been exchanged off.
that Marshall was badly outplayed throughout the match but actually he should have won two of the early games, when the issue was still in doubt. Down 3-0, he missed a golden opportunity when the match moved to Philadelphia:

63. Queen’s Gambit Declined, Tarrasch Defense
_Marshall–Lasker, seventh match game, Philadelphia, 1907_

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 c5 4 cxd5 exd5 5 Nf3 Nc6 6 Bg5 Be7
7 Bx e7 Ng e7 8 d5 Qa5 9 e3 Qc7 10 Bd3 Bg 11 0-0 Rd8
12 Re1 f5? 13 h3 Bb5 14 Bc2! 0-0 15 Nd4 Bxe2 16 Ncxe2

Unexpectedly weak opening play by Lasker, who leaves e6 horribly weak and has a d5 problem as well.

16 ... Rxf6 17 Qb3! Nf5 18 Qd3 Ne4 19 b3 Nd6 20 Rac1 Qb6 21 Rc2
Ne4 22 Rfc1 a6 23 Nf4 g5 24 Rc7! Nc6 25 Nxe6 Ne5 26 Kg7+ Kh8
27 Rcc7!!

So far, a wonderful game by the challenger. Now 27 ... Rxe6 28 Rxc7+ Kg8 would lose to 29 Rg7+ Kf8 30 Nxf5 Rh6 (else 31 Rh8 mate) 31 Nxb6
Qxb6 32 Rxb6 Nxb3 33 Rxb3.

27 ... Qx c7 28 Rxc7 Nxc3 29 Nxc3 Nxc2 30 Rxb7 Nbd 31 Ne7+ Kg8 32 Nxb5+ Kg6 33 Nxd7+ Qf7 34 Rxe7 Kx f7
35 Nxf5?

Two careless moves cost Marshall a major success. Had he played 35 h4 here, to provide an escape route for his knight, or 33 Nge6 earlier (33 ... Nxe3 34 Ra7 Kh6 35 Rxe6) the game would have been over shortly. As it goes, Marshall loses one of his knights now and has just enough compensation to draw.

35 ... Ndc3 36 a4 Kg6 37 Ne7+ Kxh7 38 b4 Nd6 39 Kf2 Kg7
40 Kf3 Kf6 41 Ne6 Ne4 42 b5 a5 43 b6 N×b6 44 N×a5 N3×a4
45 h4 Ng5+ 46 g4 Ng4 47 g5+ Kf5 48 Ne6 Ne1+ 49 Kf2 Draw

A heartbreaking result—but the eighth game was worse for fans of the challenger.

64. French Defense, McCutcheon Variation
Lasker–Marshall, eighth match game, Philadelphia 1907

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Bh4 5 e×d5

This was played during the high tide of the McCutcheon. A few months later Tarrasch would give White’s fourth move a question mark and Black’s an exclamation point because the defense was then considered so strong.

5 ... Q×d5 6 B×f6 g×f6 7 Qd2 B×c3 8 Q×c3 Nc6 9 Nf3 Qe4+!

Marshall’s improvement over 9 ... Rg8 10 0-0-0 Q×a2 11 d5 which led to a dangerous attack for White in the sixth game. After the check 10 Be2 Rg8 creates problems for White.

10 Kd2 Bd7 11 Rel Qf4+ 12 Qe3 Qd6 13 Kc1 0-0-0 14 Rd1 Rhg8
15 g3 Nb4! 16 Qa3? Bc6 17 Bg2

![Diagram](image)

After 17 Bg2

Now 17 ... Bd5 leads to virtually a winning position since 18 b3? loses the queen to 18 ... Nd3+. A lengthy analysis by Janowsky, Schlechter and others found 18 Q×a7 Qc6 19 c3 N×a2+ 20 Kb1 N×c3+ 21 b×c3 B×f3 22 B×f3 Q×f3 23 d5 R×d5! wins for Black. Similarly, 18 e3 N×a2+ 19 Kc2 Qc6.

17 ... Bc4?? 18 Ne1! B×g2 19 N×g2 Ng6 20 Q×d6 R×d6 21 c3 e5? 22 d5!

And White, completely recovered, went on to win a fine endgame in 68 moves.
Chapter Seven

The Longest Trip

Everything, it seemed, was newer, faster, better during 1907 and 1908. Flo Ziegfeld unveiled his first Follies on Broadway while Henry Ford unveiled his first Model T. The Lusitania broke the Atlantic speed record, making the ocean crossing in five days. Baseball fans, who enjoyed the new hit song “Take Me Out to the Ballgame,” said there would never be a better team than the winners of the fifth World Series, the Chicago Cubs and their infield of Joe Tinker, Johnny Evers and Frank Chance. The Hoover vacuum cleaner was patented and the disposable drinking cup appeared for the first time.

*

Marshall licked the wounds of the Lasker match by leaving almost immediately for Europe with Carrie and 16-month-old Frankie for what proved to be his longest trip aboard. First on his itinerary was a return to Ostende, for the third and last invitational at the Belgian resort.

Each time the Ostende organizers wrestled with a new format. This year, led by Prince Dadiani, Prof. Rice, and Victor Tietz of Karlsbad, Czechoslovakia, they intended their “Tournament of Champions” to be what is today called a candidates tournament. It was limited to six of the strongest players in the world, with the expectation that whoever won first prize would be acclaimed as Lasker’s next challenger. Typically, Tarrasch went a bit further and claimed the winner would earn a new title, “World Tournament Champion.”

Lasker was among the original six men invited but he declined, as did Maróczy. But Marshall, Tarrasch, Janowsky and Schlechter accepted. To fill out the roster, the organizers invited two members of the older generation, Amos Burn and Mikhail Chigorin. Each of the six would play each other four times, making it a kind of match-tournament. That Marshall was invited showed that he was still considered world class, despite his ruin against Lasker. In the tournament book these players were called (in German) by the name “Groß Meister,” one of the first uses of the “grandmaster” title.

The players who were merely good but not yet great ended up in Ostende’s Master Tourney. In retrospect, the Tournament of Champions was actually a tournament of players past their prime, with the sole exception of Marshall, who would not reach his peak until 1910. But the Master Tourney contained the players of the future, such as Aaron Nimzovich and Rudolf Spielmann. First place in it was shared by two 24-year-olds: Ossip Bernstein of the Ukraine, and a former Talmudic student from Poland, the twelfth child in a family of teachers—Akiba Rubinstein.

When play in the top section began May 16, Marshall looked ragged. He drew uneventfully with Tarrasch, Schlechter and Chigorin in the first three rounds, then blundered against Burn in the fourth. In the fifth he ended up on the wrong end of a swindle against Janowsky after achieving what had been a winning endgame. It got even worse for the American in the sixth when his Schliemann Defense Deferred to the Ruy Lopez was crisply refuted by Tarrasch. Marshall, with 1½−4½, found himself deep in last place. His turnaround finally began with:

65. Queen’s Gambit Accepted

Marshall−Schlechter, Ostende 1907

\[1 \text{d}4 \text{d}5 \ 2 \text{c}4 \text{xe}4 \ 3 \text{e}3 \text{Nf}6 \ 4 \text{B}x\text{c}4 \text{e}6 \ 5 \text{Nf}3 \text{a}6 \ 6 \text{0−0} \text{c}5 \ 7 \text{Nc}3 \text{Qe}7 \ 8 \text{Qe}2 \text{Nf}6 \ 9 \text{a}3 \text{b}5 \ 10 \text{Ba}2 \text{Bb}7 \ 11 \text{d}x\text{c}5 \text{B}x\text{c}5 \ 12 \text{b}4 \text{Bd}6 \ 13 \text{Bb}2 \text{0−0} \ 14 \text{Rc}1 \text{Qe}7 \ 15 \text{Bb}1 \text{Ra}8 \ 16 \text{Nc}4 \]

Play has developed pretty much along the lines of Marshall−Wolf from Nuremberg except that now Schlechter, unlike Wolf, can exchange knights. But Black then proceeds to push his center pawns too far.

\[16 \ldots \text{N}x\text{e}4 \ 17 \text{B}x\text{e}4 \text{f}5 \ 18 \text{Bb}1 \text{c}5 \ 19 \text{Rf}d1 \text{e}4? \ 20 \text{Ba}2+ \text{Kh}8 \ 21 \text{Ng}5! \]

After 21 Ng5

117
This is why Tarrasch, in the tournament book, recommended the retreat 19 ... Bb8 instead of Schlechter's overly hasty advance of the e-pawn. Now 22 Qh5 is threatened, and 21 ... Ne5 fails to 22 Rxc8 Rxc8 23 Bxe5 and 24 Nf7+.

21 ... Qxg5 22 Rxd6 Rfd8 23 h4!

Tarrasch had high praise for this move, which is the only way to exploit the fragile coordination of Black's pieces. He pointed out that 23 ... Qxh4 is answered by the forcing line 24 Bxg7+ Kxg7 25 Qb2+ Kf8 26 Qb8+ Ke7 27 Re6+ Rd7 28 Qg7+ Ne7 29 Rd1+ Ke6 30 Qe5+ and mates. In fact, Tarrasch recommended 23 ... Qe7 here but Marshall later showed that also loses—24 Re5; e.g., 24 ... Qf8 25 h5! Rd6 26 h6.

23 ... Qg4 24 Qd2 Rxd6 25 Qxd6 Rfd8 26 Qc7 Ba8 27 Bb3!

By stopping 27 ... Rd1+, White removes Black's only tactical resource—and the only deterrence to 28 Rxc6, 27 ... f4 28 Rxc6 Rf8 29 Qe7 Resigns

This fine victory was followed by a titanic, drawn endgame with Chigorin, then by a long, routine draw with Burn and then by what Frank described as "one of my typical games with Janowsky. You had to get him before he 'got you'!" he commented.

66. Queen's Gambit Accepted

Marshall–Janowsky, Ostende 1907

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 c5 4 Bxc4 e5 5 Nf3? e4 6 Nf2 f5?

Returning the compliment and turning White's faulty fifth into a plus. With 6 ... Qf8! Black stands better, since 7 0-0 Bh3 would cost White the Exchange to avoid mate.

7 0-0 Bd6 8 Nc3 Qh4 9 g3 Qh3 10 Bxg8

Hardly the kind of move the younger Marshall would have considered. It clears e4 for a strongly placed knight while eliminating the one additional piece that could have made Janowsky's attacking plan (... Ng8–f6–g4) work.

10 ... Rxg8 11 Ne4 Bd7 12 Nxd6+ cxd6 13 b4!

Tarrasch also praised this move, not for the transparent trap (13 ... Nxb4 14 Qb3), but because it provides the basis for White's assault in the center.

13 ... g5 14 f3 exf3 15 Qxf3 Rg6 16 Bxa3 0-0-0 17 Ra1 Kb8 18 Nxd5 Rh6 19 Rf2 Re8 20 h5 Ne7 21 Nxc7 Rxe7 22 Qd5!

Black is quite lost because both his last rank and the d6-pawn cannot be adequately protected. For example, 22 ... Rxe3 allows 23 Bxd6+ Ka8 24 Qg8+ Re8 25 Qxe8+.

22 ... Rce6 23 Bxd6+ Ka8 24 Rce7 Resigns

"A dashing finish," commented Tarrasch.

Still, Marshall remained mired in last place after his second victory. A loss to Schlechter in 30 moves that followed left him two points behind his nearest competitor. But a swindle of Chigorin then helped his score, as did a swindle of Burn, and then the following:

67. Queen's Gambit Declined, Tarrasch Defense

Marshall–Schlechter, Ostende 1907

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 c5 4 exd5 exd5 5 Nf3 Nc6 6 Bg5 Be7 7 Bxe7 Ng5 8 e3 0-0

Since White has refrained from Marshall's previous favorite 8 dxc5, Black should take advantage of the subtle difference by inserting 8 ... cxd4, as Rubinstein showed against the American at Karlsbad 1907 (9 Nxd4 0-0 10 Bc2 Qe6 11 Nb5 d4 12 e5 dxc4 with a fine game for Black).

Black's tenth move was an improvement over Marshall-Olland from the same tournament in which Black missed the antithetical 10 ... Nxc4! 11 Qxd4 Be6 12 0-0 f5?! and went rapidly downhill: 13 Rfd1 Qe8 14 Bf3 Kh8 15 Ra1! f4? 16 e5 e4 Nf5 17 Qe5 Qg6 18 Nxe5 Nxe5 19 Bxe4 Bf5 20 Ne7! and Marshall won with 20 ... Qh5 21 Nfx5 Nxf5 22 Bxf5 Rxf5 23 Qe7 Rf8 24 Rd7 Qh6 25 Re1 Rae8 26 Rd8 Qc6 27 Qc8+ Resigns.

9 dxc5 Qa5 10 Bd3 Qxc5 11 0-0 Be6 12 Rc1 Qb6 13 Na4 Qb4 14 Bc3 h6 15 a3 Qd6 16 Nc5

So far, Marshall has followed the recipe he used against Spielmann a year before at Ostende: trade the dark-squared bishops and occupy the weak squares such as c5 and d4.

16 ... Rab8 17 Qe2 Bf5 18 Bxf5 Nxf5 19 Rxd1 Ne7 20 c4 b6?

Black underestimates the impact of 21 e5. He needs to play 20 ... Rd8 so that he can respond 21 e5 Qg6 and not worry about the fork at d7. Perhaps Schlechter counted on 20 ... b6 21 e5 Nxe5 22 Qxe5 Qxe5 23 Nxe5 bxc5 only to discover 24 Nxd7! once again costs the Exchange.

21 ... Qd8 22 Ne4! Qc8 23 Nf6+ gxf6 24 exf6 Ng6 25 Qd2! (see diagram)
After 25 Qd2

Marshall could switch the theme of the middlegame from positional to tactical as quickly as any master of his era. Here he could have regained his sacrificed knight immediately with 25 Qb5, but his threat of $Q \times h6-g7$ is stronger. Now 25 ... Kh7 26 Nd4 would be hopeless for Black.

25 ... Qf5 26 $Q \times h6! Q \times f6$ 27 $R \times c6! Q \times b2$

Of course, 27 ... $Q \times c6$ 28 Ng5 mates and 27 ... Qg7 leads to a lost ending two pawns down.

28 Rd4! Qh1+ 29 Kh2 Qf5 30 Rg4 resigns

The threat was $R \times g6+$ as well as $Ng5$.

Only in the final week of the tournament did Marshall struggle out of last place, thanks in part to Chigorin’s running out of time against him. This was one of the great Russian’s last games. At 56, he was already dying. The Field reported that he left Ostende for Karlsbad “and underwent the cure.” But his health was so far gone that the doctors there gave him no more than three months to live. Chigorin fooled them—and survived for eight more months, dying in January 1908.

68. Scotch Game, Four Knights Variation

Chigorin–Marshall, Ostende 1907

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 d4 exd4 4 Nxd4 Nf6 5 Nc3 Bb4 6 Nxe5

A quiet variation in contrast to the more dynamic 11 Qf3 but one that was popular at the time even in the hands of Aaron Nimzovich, e.g., 11 Ne2 h6 12 Bh4 Re8?! 13 Nc4 Bd7 14 Qf3 e5 15 Ng5 with advantage to White as in Nimzovich–Reggio, Barmen 1903.

11 ... Bg4 12 c3 Be7 13 Qc2 h6 14 Bh4 B \times e2!
with a wide variety of strengths among the players. Against a routine master like Paul Johner, Marshall was able to demonstrate his versatility, winning the Exchange for a pawn and then just pressing and pressing on both wings.

69. Marshall-Johner, Karlsbad 1907

Here Black tried to eliminate one of the weaknesses with 34 ... e5. Marshall found a fine method of crushing further resistance: 35 Bc2! fxe4 36 Re4+ Nxe4 37 Qxe4+ Kf7 38 Bxc4.

Then the threat of 39 Qf5+ is crushing, e.g., 38 ... Qe5 39 Qe5 or 38 ... Qe6 39 Qxe6+ Kxe6 40 Rxe4 Rd7 41 Bxb3. Therefore, Black tried 38 ... Kg6 but resigned after 39 Qg4+ Kh6 40 Qh4+ Kg6 41 Bxd5.

It appears that Karlsbad 1907 was the first time Marshall met Aaron Nimzovich, then a 20-year-old philosophy student, over the board. They had both been at Barmen 1905 and Ostende 1907 but in different sections. Although Karlsbad was a great success for the younger man, he seemed to find Marshall's classical approach to the game positively baffling.

70. King's Indian Reversed

Nimzovich-Marshall, Karlsbad 1907

1 Nf3 d5 2 d3 Nf6 3 Nbd2 Nc6 4 g3

In a similar position the iconoclastic Nimzovich once played 4 d4!, conceding the loss of a tempo but preventing Black's next move. Now we get what is actually a reversed Pirc Defense in which White is vulnerable to the sacrificial 1 e3-e4 before he is castled.

4 ... e5 5 Bg2 e4 6 dxe4 dxe4 7 Ng5 e3! 8 fxe3 h6 9 Nge4 Ng4

The point of Marshall's seventh move. To prevent ... Nxe4 White must accept some king discomfort.

10 Nb3 Qxdl+ 11 Kxdl Bf5 12 Ke1 Nb4! 13 Nd4 0-0-0!

After 13 ... 0-0-0

Undoubtedly overlooked by Nimzovich. Black's move threatens 14 ... Rxd4 and 15 ... Nxc2+ and takes advantage of White's inability to play 15 Nxf5 because 15 ... Nxc2+ and 16 ... Rd1 is mate.

14 h3 Rxd4 15 e4xd4

Best, since 15 h4 g4 Bxe4 16 e4xd4 Bxg2 17 Rg1 Nxc2 18 Kf2 Be4 is too ugly to bear.

15 ... Nxc2+ 16 Kd2?

But this loses. Chigorin later found a drawable way out of White's mess: 16 Kd1 Ng4xe5+ 17 Bxe5 Nxe5+ 18 Kd2 Nxe2 19 Nc3 Bb4 20 Re2 Bd6 21 Kd3 c5 22 Ke2 and eventually Rg1.

16 ... Nge3! 17 Bf3 Nxa1 18 Kxe3 Nc2+ 19 Kd3

Unfortunately, 19 Kf2 Nxd4 leaves Black a pawn up. White must try to muddy the water.

19 ... Nb4+ 20 Ke3 Nc2+ 21 Kd3 Nb4+ 22 Ke3 Nxa2 23 g4 Bg6 24 Bd2 Nb4 25 Rcl Be7 26 Nc5?

A blunder. With 26 Kf2 before 27 Nc5 White can put up resistance.

26 ... Bh5+ 27 Kf2 Bxd2 28 Rc4 b5! White resigns

But Marshall also lost eight games and, with a 10-10 score, he disappeared into the middle of the scoretable of what turned out to be one of Rubinstein's greatest triumphs. The American played well enough against the prize winners but lost to the players in fourteenth and fifteenth place (Tartakower and Janowsky) and two who tied for sixteenth (Mieses and Chigorin).

Among his victories was one Marshall annotated briefly in his notes but did not include in My Fifty Years, against Milan Vidmar. The Latvian
master A.N. Koblenz, who later served as second to Mikhail Tal, met both Marshall and Vidmar in the 1930s and described them as “antipodes.” Marshall was “stately, tall, thin with a coarsely-lined face” and a “typical wide American smile.” Vidmar, on the other hand, was short, stocky, solid, standing on short legs, but he moved “remarkably lightly, elastically and quickly.” There styles of play also contrasted—the rollicking Marshall, versus the cautious Vidmar, according to Koblenz.

71. King’s Gambit Declined

Marshall–Vidmar, Karlsbad 1907

1 e4 e5 2 f4 Bc5

“A rare way of declining the gambit,” was Marshall’s remarkable comment—remarkable in that the only other method of declension that was popular in Marshall’s day was 2...d5?, the Falkbeer Countergambit.

3 Nf3 d6 4 c3

After 4 c3

Marshall’s game with Erich Cohn from this tournament went 5...Bg4 6 Nf4+ Bd7 7 Qc2 Nc6 8 b4! Bb6 9 Bc4 Nxf6 10 0-0 0-0 11 d3 b5 12 Bb3! a5 13 bxa5 Nxa5 14 Ba5 Qxb3 15 Nxb3 Rb8 16 d4! Since 16...dxe5 17 e5 loses a piece, Black found 16...Be7 17 Nxe5 b4! 18 Nxe5 Bxe5 but lost anyway after 19 Rf2 bxc3 20 Qxc3 Nxe4! 21 Ne4 Bg4 22 Nf7! (22...Rxf7 23 Rxf7 Kxf7 24 Nxe4+ Qxe4 25 Qxe4+),

4...Nf6 5 fxe5 dxe5 6 d4 exd4 7 e5?! Nd5

“Interesting is 7...Ne4 8 Bd3 f5 etc.” is Marshall’s brief comment here in his unpublished notes. The text leaves White with a freer hand in the center.

8 cxd4 Bb4+ 9 Bd2 Ne6

In the same tournament Schlechter played 9...Bxd2+ 10 Qxd2 Bg4 against Marshall and managed to draw after 11 Be2 0-0 12 0-0 Ne6 13 Ne3 Nxc3 14 bxc3 Bf3 15 Bxf3 Nxe5.

10 Nc3 0-0 11 Be2 Be6 12 0-0 f6 13 Bc4!

This maintains White’s center (13...fxe5 14 Ng5) although Black should soon be equal.

13...Kh8 14 Bxd5 Bxd5 15 Nx d5 Qxd5 16 Bxb4 Nxb4 17 Re1 c6

Here Marshall commented: “At once 17...Ne6 appears stronger.” Capturing on a2 would allow 18 Rxc7, but 17...Qd7 and...Nd5 might also have held. Now the knight goes out of action.

18 a3! Na6 19 Re1 Rad8 20 e5! f6 21 Re5 Qd7 22 Qe2 Ne7 23 Re7 Qc8 24 Ng5 Qf5

Naturally, not 24...Rxd4 because of 25 Rxc7 Qxc7? 26 Qe8+!

25 Rxc7 Qg5 26 Re1 Qe4+ 27 Rxd5 Qxh5 28 Kh1 Rd8 29 h3 h6 30 Qe3

"Playing for the exchange of queens as the rook at the seventh was powerful," the winner noted. Like so many Marshall–Vidmar games, the loser never appears to make a major error, yet never seems to be close to salvation.

30...Qd6 31 Qe5 Qxd6 32 Qxe5+ Kh7 33 Kg2 Rg6 34 Kb8 Rf6 35 Kc7 Rf6 36 Rb8 Rf6 37 Rxf8+ Rxf8 38 Re4! Qd2

Marshall pointed out the favorable endgame that comes about now from 38...Rf1 39 Kg4 Rh1+ 40 Kg3 Qc1+ 41 Qc1 Rxe1 42 Ra4.

39 Kg4 Qd7 40 Rg6 Kg8 41 Qg3 Qd4 42 Rxh6 Rf1 43 Qb8+ Kf8 44 Qb3+ Rh7 45 Rh5 Qf4+ 46 Qg3 Qe1? 47 Qb8+ Rf8 48 Qb3+ Rf7 49 Rf5 Resigns

The Marshalls also spent a good part of 1907 in France, revisiting old friends including Leo Nardus, whom Frank was to see on every European trip. Marshall shared first prize at a small tournament in Paris, losing to the little-known E.M. Antoniadi but winning the rest of his games, including a rare victory over his new nemesis Saviole Tartakover.

In Paris, Frank and Carrie frequently appeared at the Automobile Club, which was trying to organize a second Marshall-Janowsky match. At the club Frank played a lot of casual games, such as the following...
consultation game in October. Janowsky's teammate had beaten Marshall in a previous exhibition.

72. Danish Gambit

Janowsky & Bonaparte-Wyse-Marshall & Baron Lefore, Paris 1907

1 e4 e5 2 d4 exd4 3 c3 dxc3 4 Bc4 exd2 5 Bxb2 Nf6 6 Nf3 d5
7 e5 Bb4 8 Nc3 Qe7 9 Ne2 Ne4

By returning one of the gambit pawns Black is ready to castle or exchange pairs of minor pieces. For example, 10 Qd4 is easily handled by a double capture on c3 and 12 ... 0-0 with a fine game for Black. Janowsky has an Exchange sacrifice in mind.

10 Re1 0-0 11 0-0 Nxc3 12 Bxc3 Bxc3 13 Bc3 Nbd7 14 Re1 Nf6
15 Bd3 Qd8 16 Re5! Re8 17 Rg5

Imaginative play by White, who now had ideas of 18 Qa1 and 19 B x f6. Black finds an apparent refutation.

17 ... h6! 18 Rg3 Nh5 19 Bc2! N x g3 20 h x g3 f5 21 g4!

A fine recovery of the initiative. Now 21 ... f x g4? 22 Qd3 is death and 22 g x f5 followed by 23 f6 is threatened. Black needs something better than 21 ... Rf8 (21 ... g6?? 22 Qd4) 22 Nd4.

21 ... Re4! 22 Ne5 Qg5 23 d6 c x d6 24 Q x d6 Qc1+ 25 Bd1 R x e5!

This game is a sparkling example of tactics in balance. Black avoids 25 ... Q x c3 26 B b3+ and has just enough to draw.

26 B x e5 Kh7 27 Kh2 B e6! Draw

Black's last move was his only resource, Janowsky said, noting 27 ... Qc6 would have lost to 28 Qe7 Qd8 29 Q f8. The final position is legitimately drawn if White wishes with 28 Qe7! Rg8 29 Q x e6 Q x d1 30 Q x f5+ Kh8

Both men wanted another shot at one another and the rematch of the 1905 combatants finally began on January 17, 1908. But it came about behind closed doors, at Nardus' villa at Suresne. This was what could be called a "secret match" as the games were conducted without notice and the result was not known until Hoffer printed them in The Field.

This time it was a match for five wins, draws not counting. Revenge was a powerful stimulant—and Marshall's dubious choice of openings was also a factor. Janowsky crushed Marshall's Scotch Gambit in 25 moves in the first game and positionally demolished his Dutch Defense in the 37-move second. The American managed to draw the third after a quick queen trade but lost another quasi-Dutch in the fourth.

And it took all of his endgame skill to save the fifth:

73. Queen's Gambit Declined, Orthodox Defense

Marshall—Janowsky, fifth match game, 1908

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Nbd7 5 Nf3 Be7 6 e3 0-0 7 Qc2 c5 8 e x d5 e x d5

Somewhat dubious since the preferable 8 ... N x d5 eases Black's game considerably (9 B x e7 Q x e7 10 d x c5 N x c5). But this wasn't known until at least the 1930s, when 24-year-old Sammy Reshevsky won a famous game from Capablanca in this line. The position now resembles a line popular in the early 1990s, but with Black's bishop at e7 instead of b4.

9 Bd3 e4 10 Bf5 g6 11 B x d7 Q x d7

Now 12 Ne5 Qd8 13 f5 was recommended. Marshall allows Black to seize the initiative.

12 0-0 h5! 13 e4 d x e4 14 N x e4 N x d5 15 Ne5 Qc7 16 B x e7 Q x e7 17 Re1 Bf5 18 g4? B x e4 19 Q x e4 Qd6 20 g5?! R c8 21 Qh4 f6

Black's last move anticipates Ng4-f6+ and reveals how positionally outplayed Marshall has been. (He may have been hoping that 22 N f7 worked, e.g., 22 ... K x f7! 23 Q x h7 mate. But it fails to 22 ... Q h4). Now Black should have been able to cash in his positional chips by doubling on the f-file (24 ... R f5) rather than trying to win on the queenside.

22 g x f6 Q x f6 23 Q e4 Q e6 24 f4 Rc8?! 25 Re2 c3

(see diagram)

Clearly 26 b x c3 N x c3 is out of the question. Marshall once again must pull counterplay out of a hat.
The score was 3-0, with 2 draws, and beginning to look like a lopsided Janowsky victory, before Marshall broke the drought in the sixth game.

74. Albin Countergambit
Janowsky–Marshall, sixth match game, 1908

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e5!? 3 dxe5 d4 4 Nf3 Nc6 5 g3 Nge7 6 Na3

A natural-looking method of attacking the d-pawn that should, it seems, be just as good as the Nbd2–b3 maneuver. Note that Black could now equalize with 6 ... Ng6 7 Ne2 Nxb3 8 c5, trading his d-pawn for the c-pawn.

6 ... Bg4 7 Nc2 Qd7!

The Albin was then just about the peak of its popularity and was considered reasonable even by conservative players such as Schlechter and Maroczy, who adopted it on occasion. Janowsky's method of attacking the d-pawn (rather than the orthodox Nbd2–b3) runs him into trouble. Here he didn't like 8 Nc4xd4 because of 8 ... 0-0-0 9 Be3 Nf5.

8 Bg2 0-0-0 9 h3 Bxf3 10 exf3?! Nc5xd5 11 b3 d3!

This wins a piece, and should have been averted by 11 f4 Nxe4 12 Qf3, when White has some compensation for his lost pawn.

12 Ne3 d2 13 Bxd2 Qxd2 14 Qa4 N5c6 15 Rad1 Qa5 16 Rxd8+ Kxd8 17 Qc2 g6 18 b4!

Despite his loss of a piece Janowsky plays the game with great energy and Marshall has to demonstrate accurate technique to win.

18 ... Qxb4 19 Rbl Qa3 20 Rxb7 Bg7 21 Nd5 Qa6! 22 Qbl Nxd5 23 cxd5 Nbd4 24 f4 Rf8 25 Qbl Bf8 26 d6! Qd6 27 Qa4

Threatening 28 Rb8+ as well as the elimination of queenade pawns after Qa7 and a later R×c7.

27 ... Re1+ 28 Kh2 Re2! 29 Rb8+ Ke7 30 Qe8+ Kf6 31 Q×f8 Qxf8 32 Rxf8 R×f2

Black has given the piece back but his extra pawn and superior rook and king prove decisive. An excellent fighting game despite the errors.

33 a4 Ra2 34 g4 R×a4 35 Rh8 Ne2 36 Rb7 h7 N×f4 37 Bf1 Ra1 38 Bb5 Ra5 39 Bc6 Rc5 40 Bc8 Re2+ 41 Kg3 Ke5 42 Rx7 R×f3+ 43 Kh4 N×h3 44 Rf1 g5+ 45 Kh5 Kd6 46 Ra1 Ke7 47 Bb5 Kf6 48 Ra6+ c6!
The bishop cannot stop the a-pawn and knight after 49 R×c6+, and 49 B×c6 allows mate in two with 49 ... Nf4+.

49 Kh6! Nf4 50 Kh7 Nd5!

So that 51 R×c6+ R×c6 52 B×c6 a5 is the lost major piece ending once again. And 51 B×c6 Nb4 forks a piece.

51 Kg8 Ng7! White resigns

Marshall also won the seventh game when Janowsky, getting the upper hand, blundered on the thirty-fourth move and had to resign immediately. Marshall came close to equalizing the score in the eighth.

75. Albin Counter gambit

Janowsky–Marshall, eighth match game, 1908

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e5 3 d×c5 d4 4 e4 Nc6 5 Nf3

Janowsky was fond of the rare 4 e4, despite losing a famous game to Maróczy with it in 1900. Marshall now finds a dynamic route to equal chances.

5 ... Bg4 6 Qh3 Bb4+! 7 Nfd2 Qh4?!

A bizarre opening has evolved in which White makes nondeveloping moves in the hopes of repelling Black (8 a3 and later 11 f4), while Black gets his pieces off the first rank as quickly as possible.

8 a5 B×d2+ 9 N×d2 0–0–0 10 g3 Qh5 11 f4! g5!

Black needs an open file and 11 ... f6 can be effectively met by 12 h3 f×e5 13 f5.

12 Qd3 g×f4 13 g×f4 Nge7 14 Rgl! Rhg8 15 Rg2

Here 15 R×g4 R×g4 16 Bh3 and 17 Nf1 was suggested as a means of killing the attack. Janowsky has a different idea, allowing Black’s rook to penetrate to h1.

15 ... Be6 16 Rf2! Rg1 17 Nf3! Rh1 18 Bd2 f6!

"A beautiful combination to destroy the center," commented *The Year-Book of Chess*. "The position is too complicated in actual play to fathom the latent possibilities—with a time limit, of course. Marshall does not stoop to such trifling means: he plays by instinct." However, 19 0–0–0 Nf5? 20 Ng5! f×g5 21 e×f5 or 19 ... f×e5 20 f5 would probably have won for White.

19 e×f6 Nf5! 20 0–0–0

White could probably hold the queen-sacrifice ending after 20 e×f5 B×f5 21 Q×f5 + Q×f5 22 0–0–0 but the text keeps the position sharp, winnable—and losable.

20 ... Ne3 21 B×e3 d×e3 22 Q×e3 R×d1+ 23 K×d1 B×c4 24 Qe1 Qe5!

Sacrificing a rook for at least a perpetual check.

25 Bh3+! Kh8 26 Q×h1 Bb3+ 27 Ke2 Qc2+ 28 Ke3 Qc5+ 29 Ke2 Qc4+ 30 Ke3 Qc5+ 31 Ke2 Qc4+ 32 Kd2 Qc2+ 33 Ke3 Qc5+ Draw

But two days later in the ninth game Marshall blundered away the Exchange, giving Janowsky his fourth victory and virtually conceding the match. Janowsky finished up on February 4 by trapping Marshall’s queen and forcing resignation on move 36. The match ended 5–2 in Janowsky’s favor and had taken only 10 games and 2½ weeks. This was typical of the speed and decisiveness of matches before the 1950s. By comparison, the 1984–85 world championship match between Anatoly Karpov and Garry Kasparov ended with the score 5 wins to 3 — yet took 48 games and a marathon 22 weeks.

This was the first of a whirlwind series of matches by Marshall. Besides Janowsky, he played Akiba Rubinstein, Jacques Mieses and the
Ukrainian master Fyodor Dus-Chotimirsky in 1908. The Dus-Chotimirsky match was played in Poland and ended without much publicity in a draw, each side scoring two wins and two games ending in draws.

In fact, 1908 was an exceptionally busy year for Marshall. Today an active grandmaster has many more opportunities to play and many grandmasters believe it essential to compete as often as possible. Viswanathan Anand of India, for example, has said a professional should play 100 games a year, but he concedes he often gets only about 70 games in. Yet in 1908 Marshall played in four major tournaments—for an impressive 69 games—plus four hard-fought matches. His total for the year was 103 serious games against masters. For comparison, we can contrast this with Jose Capablanca, whose international career began after his match with Marshall in 1909. Before world chess was interrupted by the First World War, Capa played only 91 tournament games and 20 match games. In other words, he played fewer games in five years than Marshall in this one. And Emanuel Lasker played only 61 tournament games in the twenty years between Cambridge Springs 1904 and New York 1924. This was, clearly, a remarkably busy era for America’s best player. It was also the happiest time of Frank Marshall’s life.

Vienna and Prague

The Marshalls originally intended to spend a good part of 1908 in central Europe before returning to the United States by fall. Two great tournaments, both in honor of the sixtieth anniversary of Franz Joseph’s elevation to emperor of the dual monarchy of Austria-Hungary, were on Frank’s schedule. The first was organized by and held at the Vienna Chess Club where 20 generally familiar faces began 3½ weeks of play on March 23.

For each trip to Europe Marshall liked to have a new set of chess weapons but because of the length of the 1907–8 excursion he had little in the way of new ammunition by the time of the Vienna tournament. However, he found he was still able to catch opponents with his trusty Franco-Sicilian more than four years after its introduction:

76. Franco-Sicilian Defense, Marshall Variation
Mieses–Marshall, Vienna 1908

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Ne3 c5 4 Nf3

Janowsky even tried 4 dxe5 against Marshall’s pet system in their 1905 match—but had nothing better after 4...d4 than the humble 5 Nbd2.

Black then had a comfortable game with 5...Bx5 6 Bd3 Ne6 7 Nf3 Nge7 8 Nbd2 Ng6 and...

4...Ne6 5 Be3 Nf6 6 e5 dxe5 7 dxc5 Bxc5 8 Be2 0-0 9 0-0 Re8 10 h3 Bf5 11 a3 a5 12 Na4?

This preserves the extra pawn and eyes occupying b6 but surrenders e4 to the enemy knight.

12...Qc7 13 Qc1 Rad8! 14 Bd3 Ne4!

Marshall was prepared to sacrifice the Exchange: 15 Bx4 Qd7 16 Nb6 Qc6 17 Bc7 and now 17...Bxh3 18 Bx8 Qe4 19 Ne1 Bxe5 20 Bc7 Nxf2+ 21 Rxf2 Rxc1+ and mates. This may be the only combination in this brilliancy-prize game—and it occurs only in the annotations, not over the board.

15 Nd2 Qe5 16 Re1 Qf6 17 Bxc4 dxe4 18 Nh1 Qg6!

Both players recognize quickly, as evidenced by the last move, that 17 Bxe4 has created a serious weakness at g2.

19 Ng3 h5 20 Nxf5 Qxf5 21 b4 Ne5!

Tartakover later pointed out that this move, which threatens 22...Nf3+ 23 gxf3 exf5 is much better than the careless 21...a5 22 b4 axb4 23 Rxb4 which allows 23 Rd1 Nd5 24 Rxb7, favoring White. “Marshall’s strategy can serve as an object lesson to all attacking players,” he wrote.

22 Bh4 Ng6 23 Be3 Nh4 24 Bh4 Qg6 25 Bg3 Bg5 26 Qb1 Rd2 27 Qb3 e3! 28 Qe3 e2+ 29 Bxf2

After 29 Bxf2

29...Be3!! White resigns

There was a fairly good prize fund of 16,000 Austrian crowns at Vienna. The Mieses victory was worth an extra 200 crowns for Marshall.
since it won the second brilliancy prize, donated by Baron Albert Rothschild. As it too often turned out, this was more than the 166 crowns Marshall received for his final score.

His mediocre result can be partially blamed on his unwillingness to draw. His games, instead, were a matter of feast or famine. Some days he won spectacularly and some days he was humiliated. One of his seven losses came at the hand of Tartakower, continuing a trend against the man who would prove a quarter-century puzzle to Marshall. In 16 games, played from Karlsbad 1907 to the 1935 Warsaw Olympiad Marshall never won a game from Tartakower. He lost 7 and drew 9.

On some days at Vienna the American played fearlessly and well—and was still punished:

77. Stonewall Attack

Marshall–Teichmann, Vienna 1908

1 d4 d5 2 e3 Nf6 3 Bd3 Nc6?! 4 f4 Nf4 5 Nf3 N x d3+ 6 c x d3! e6 7 0–0

Marshall's sixth move, an idea of Showalter's, enforces a grip on key center squares c4 and e4, as well as the main outpost of e5. He played this three times at Vienna, drawing with Maroczy and beating Hugo Stuchting, who forestalled a kingside attack with 7 Ne3 b6 0–0 e5 9 Ne5 h5?.

The Stuchting game was instructive because White handled this primitive attacking weapon in a decidedly positional manner and won in the endgame: 10 B d2 Bd7 11 Q f5 B c8 12 B e2 B c7 13 Ne2 c x d4? 14 N x d4 B c5 15 B c3 b5 16 a 3 a 6 17 Q g 3 K f8 18 Rac1 Rh6 19 Nb3 B d6 20 Q g 5 B c7 21 Ba3 Q e 8 22 Q g 3 N g 8 23 N x d 4 Q x d 4 24 R x e 8 Q x e 8 25 Re1 Q a 8 26 Ne4 h 4 27 Q f 6 Q a 6 28 Q c2! B d 6 29 Q e 6 etc.

7 ... B c 7 8 Ne 3 0–0 9 B d 2 b 6 10 Ne 5 Bd 7 11 R f 3 c 5 12 Rh 3 Rc 8 13 Q f 3 a 6 14 g 4 g 6 15 Rh 6!

Now a crisis arises over the defense of h7 against Marshall's Q h3 and g4–g5.

15 ... R e 7 16 Ne 2 Kg 7 17 Q h 3 Rh 8 18 Be 3?

With 18 d x c5! first, this move has extra strength, since 18 ... b x c 5 allows 19 B a 3 and 18 ... B x c 5 19 B c 3 threatens 20 g 5 strongly.

18 ... c 4 19 g 5 Ng 8

(see diagram)

"Don't play for safety—it's the most dangerous thing in the world," Hugh Walpole had said. Marshall knew when he chose his nineteenth move that retreating here would be ultimately fatal. He counted, instead, on a sacrifice of the knight for three pawns.

20 N x f 7! K x f 7 21 R x h 7+ R x h 7 22 Q x h 7+ K f 8 23 Q x g 6 c x d 3!

Otherwise 24 f 5 clears a square for N f 4 and N x e 6+.

24 N g 3 B e 8 25 R f 1 Q e 8! 26 Q x d 3 Q b 5 27 Q g 6 Q e 8 28 Q d 3 Q b 5

Although the modern three-time repetition rule was still not widely accepted, here the American could have assured himself of a draw with 29 Q g 6. However, Marshall decided that he, not Black, had the principal winning chances.

29 Q h 7?! B d 6 30 Q h 8 Q d 3!

White is now clearly losing and Marshall searches for one last roll of the dice.

31 e 4 d x e 4 32 g 6+ e 3 33 f 5 e 2! 34 N x e 2 c x f 5!

Black keeps the f-file closed in this manner and kills the attack.

35 N f 4 Q c 4 36 Q h 4 Re 7 37 N g 2! Q x h 4 38 N x h 4 Re 2 39 N x f 5

And here Teichmann announced mate in four beginning with 39 ... B x h 2++.

Vienna 1908 turned out to be one of Oldrich Duras' greatest triumphs, as he shared first with Maroczy and Schlechter. An indication of how competitive the tournament was is the fact that last place was occupied by a local mathematics student who managed only 3 draws and 16 losses. It was Richard Réti's baptism of fire in international chess.

Marshall often produced his greatest games in tournaments where he finished innocuously on the scorechart. Here is his best game from the Vienna tournament—far better than anything he produced at Cambridge Springs 1904 or Nuremberg 1906:
78. Two Knights Defense

Salwe-Marshall, Vienna 1908

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 Bc4 Nf6 4 Ng5 d5 5 exd5 Nxd5 6 d3

Morphy's variation which is occasionally revived by players (e.g., Viktor Korchnoi) adept at stubborn defense.

6 ... h6 7 Nf3 e4 8 Qe2 Nc4 9 dxc4 Bxc5 10 Nfd2

The opening theory of the day criticized 10 h3 (to stop 10 ... Bg4) 0-0 11 Nh2, after which 11 ... b5! was known to be fine for Black.

10 ... 0-0 11 Nb3 Bg4 12 Qf3! Bb4+!

Despite the somewhat grotesque appearance of White's game, this was considered a good position for him—until Marshall introduced a theoretical novelty with his last move. White cannot allow 13 Bxd2 Bxb2+ followed by 14 Re8 and 15 ... e3!! and doesn't like the pin of 13 Nc3 e6! The result is that White must weaken the queenside, particularly around d3, where he will have to castle.

13 e3 Be7 14 h3 Bh5 15 g4 Bg6 16 Be3 Nd7! 17 Nfd2 Ne5 18 0-0-0 b5

Otherwise White begins asserting himself with 19 f4 and 20 Nd4.

19 exb5 Nd3+ 20 Kbl Qxb5 21 Ka1 Qc5 22 f4 a5! 23 Rbl f5 24 Nd4 Qa4!

After 24 ... Qa4

Black's idea is mate on a2 via ... Nb4!, e.g., 25 Nxf5 Rxf5 26 gxf5 Nb4! 27 a4 bxa4 and now we see why Black preserved his bishop and not his rook at move 25 (28 Qe4+ Bf7!). After 28 a3 Bf6 29 Ka2 Black mates with 29 ... Qa3+!

25 b3 Qd7 26 gxf5 Bxf5 27 Qg2 e5! 28 Nxf5 Qxf5 29 Qe4 Bxf6!

The point of attack has been transferred from a2 to c3 by White's twenty-fifth and Black's twenty-seventh moves. Of course, White sees 30 Qxf5 Bxc3+ but Black embroilers on this tactical idea.

30 Qc4+ Kh8 31 Ne4 Ra8!

Here's another version of that ... Bxc3+ idea (32 Qd3 Qc2+ 33 Qxe4 Bxc4+). Best now for White, according to Marshall, was acceptance of an unfavorable endgame by way of 32 Nb6 Qd6 33 Qxd3 Qc3.

32 Nxf6 Rxf6 33 Bc1 Rf6 34 Ba3 Rf2 35 Rh1 Rd1

A splendid way to conclude this powerful game: Hopeless now are 36 Rcl Nc2+ 37 Rxc2 Qxc2 38 Bb2 Ra1 or 36 Qxe2 Rxg2 36 Rxe1 Rxh3 after which the h-pawn should be decisive.

36 Bxc5 Nc2+ 37 Kb2 Nb4+ White resigns

Marshall also won a fine game against the new Russian champion, Rubinstein, by surprising him with the Stonewall Attack. Hoffer said the American succeeded in taking Rubinstein "out of the books" with 1 d4 d5 2 c3 Nf6 3 Bb5 c5 4 e3 c6 5 d4 Nb6 6 Qc2 d6! 7 Qb3! Bd7 8 Nf3 Qe6 9 Nce2, after which Rubinstein made "no doubt the worst move on the board," queenside castling, and was soon trying to fend off mate. Rubinstein lasted until the fifty-fourth move but had been lost since the twenty-fifth.

Yet all these efforts were good enough only for the smallest of plus scores, 10–9, and a tie for ninth to eleventh place. Marshall produced pretty much the same story a month later when he found himself playing for the second time in what would soon become an independent Czechoslovakia.

The Prague tournament of 1908 was a mirror image of the Vienna one. Besides honoring the Emperor, the tournament was held in conjunction with another international exhibition. There were firework displays, clowns, races of Indian horsemen and flower shows. Duš-Chotimisky, playing in only his second international event, was surprised that next to all that gliter of the exhibition, the tournament was held in an unimpressive wooden building that, he said, resembled a shed.

Nevertheless everyone who was anyone in chess—again excepting Lasker and Tarrasch—came to Prague. There were 20 players invited and 13 of them had been at Vienna. Only Tartakower and Julius Perlis of the Vienna prize winners failed to play at Prague. And the winners were the same. Schlechter and Duran, who had tied with Maroczy at Vienna, shared first at Prague and received the same 3500 crowns as they did in the previous tournament.

The scoretable indicates Marshall was more willing to draw at Prague.
than at Vienna but the scores of his games don't necessarily bear this out. He had a number of reversals stemming from good positions. Typical was his game with Paul Johner:

79. Albin Countergambit
Johner–Marshall, Prague 1908

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e5 3 dxe5 d4 4 Nf3 Nc6 5 Nbd2 Bg4 6 g3 Qd7 7 Bg2 0–0 0–0 8 a3 Nge7

Taking advantage of White's inexact move order (8 0–0 and if 8 ... Nge7 then 9 Qa4 threatening b2–b4–b5 or Nb3/Rd1 is much more aggressive).

9 b4 Ng6 10 Bb2 Ne×e5 11 0–0

In similar positions Black gets a fine game if he can push his d-pawn, e.g., with Qe2 instead of Bb2 played by White. Black would stand well with 11 ... d3 12 e×d3 N×d3 13 Bb2 Bh3 14 Bd4 Nfd4. Marshall now tries to carry out a similar idea.

11 ... Be7 12 N×d4 N×d3! 13 Bc3 N×f4? 14 g×f4 N×f4

Black's threats include 15 ... Bf6, 15 ... N×g2 and 15 ... Bh3.

After 14 ... N×f4

15 Nf3 Bh3?

Temporarily regaining a piece (since 16 B×h3?? Q×h3 would mate). But the only good move here was 15 ... Bf6!, with prospects such as 16 e5 B×d4! 17 e×d4 (17 Q×d4?? N×e2+ or 17 B×d4 N×g2 18 K×g2 Qf5) and ... Qh5+–h3+) N×g2 18 K×g2 Qf5 19 Re1 Qh5 20 Re3 Rd6 21 Qd3 Qh3+ 22 Kh1 Rh6 and wins.

16 Ne5! Qd6 17 e3! N×g2 18 Qf3

Now 18 ... Q×e5 19 Q×h3+ or 18 ... Qb6 19 N×f7 (or 19 Nf5) wins, so Marshall becomes desperate.

18 ... Bd7 19 Nf5! Nh4?? 20 N×d6+ c×d6 21 Q×f7 d×e5 22 Q×e7 N×f3+ 23 Kg2 Bc6 24 Rfd1 Rde8 25 Qc5 Ng5+ 26 f3 Rh8 27 b5 Ne6 28 Q×f8+ R×f8 29 b×c6 Rf5 30 e×b7+ K×b7 31 Rd5 Resigns

The first half of the tournament was a Marshall disaster. But he came on strong in the second half, registering 5 wins and 5 draws in his final ten games. One of his most remarkable was his adjourned sixteenth-round game.

80. Four Knights Game
Schlechter–Marshall, Prague 1908

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 Ne3 Nf6 4 Bb5 Bb4 5 0–0 0–0 6 d3 d6 7 Ne2 Bg4

The Four Knights—and particularly this variation, rather than 7 Bg5, was at the peak of its popularity at the time. Later in the year at the Lodz match-tournament Marshall faced Salwe's 8 B×c6 b×c6 9 Ne1, trying to exploit the superior pawn structure. The American responded 9 ... d5 10 f3 d×e4 and actually had winning chances after 11 f×g4 Be5+ 12 Kh1 N×g4 13 g3 Nf2+ 14 Rx×f2 B×f2 15 Ng2 e×d3 16 e×d3 e×d4.

8 c3 B×f3 9 g×f3 Bc5 10 Ng3 Qc8! 11 B×c6

Otherwise the Black knight reaches b4 with great effect via e7 and g6.

11 ... b×c6 12 Kg2 Qe6 13 f4 e×f4 14 B×f4 d5 15 e5? Nd7 16 d4 Be7 17 Be3 f6 18 f×e5 19 f×e5 R×f1 20 Q×f1 Rf8 21 Qa6? h5! 22 Rf1

Seeing that 22 N×h5 Qg4+ 23 Ng3 Qf5+ costs a piece, Schlechter trades into an endgame in which the damage to Black's doubled pawns slightly offsets White's inferior minor pieces.

22 ... b4 23 R×f8+ N×f8 24 Nf1 h3+! 25 Kf2 Bb4+ 26 Ke2 Qg6 27 Qd3 Qg8+ 28 Kd1 Q×b2 29 Bd2 Q×a2 30 Q×h3 Qbl+ 31 Ke2 Qe4+ 32 Ne3 Bg5

Here the game was adjourned and Marshall sealed his move. One difference between the Vienna and Prague tournament was that the former employed the German system of scheduling one session of play in the morning and resuming adjourned games in late afternoon, at 5 p.m. At Prague adjourned games were not continued the same day, but rather accumulated so that they could all be played off on the weekly free day, Thursday.

In My Fifty Years there appears a comment claiming that after the "midday adjournment" the position was so easy to analyze that "the sequel was worked
out as a win by the spectators! Actually this comment was not Marshall's, but was lifted directly from Hoffer's notes. And an examination shows that the win is not at all easy.

In his unpublished notes Marshall wrote that the win was, in fact, "very difficult," and went on to tell this story of what transpired before the Thursday resumption:

As I lay awake at night I saw a white shape resembling Steinitz standing near the curtains. I was scared. Then I heard a voice like the voice of Steinitz telling me to make a certain move in my game the next day. Then the spectre vanished.

Frightened though I was I jumped out of bed, lit a candle, took out my pocket chess board and studied the move suggested by the ghost. After deep analysis I found that the move would infallibly win me the game. Needless to add I played it next morning and won.

I owe Steinitz much but this is perhaps my greatest debt.

33 Qc8 e5!!

Undoubtedly a move from a ghost. Now 33 Q×c7 c×d4 34 c×d4 Ne6 36 Qe8+ Kf7 37 Qd7+ Be7 and a knight check will be decisive. With the Steinitzian undoubling of the c-pawns assured, Marshall can create a deadly knight versus bad-bishop ending.

34 Qa8 B×e3 35 B×e3 c×d4 36 c×d4 c5! 37 d×c5 Qc4+ 38 Kf3 d4 39 Bf4 Q×c5 40 Ke4 Kh7 41 Qd5 Qc3!

Trading queens makes the c-pawn too strong. But 42 Q×d4 Q×d4+ 43 K×d4 Ne6+ 44 Ke4 N×f4 is a won king and pawn ending.

42 e6 Qel+ 43 Kd3 Qf1+ 44 Ke4 Qe2+ 45 Kf5 Qh5+ 46 Ke4 Qe2+ 47 Kf5 Qd3+ 1 48 Kg4 Qg6+ 49 Kf3 N×c6 50 Bc1 Qd3+ 51 Kf2 Qc2+ White resigns.

After 32 ... Bg5

This, incidentally, was the only game Schlechter lost of the 38 he played at Vienna and Prague. And few would have believed at the time that this was also one of the last Marshall versus Schlechter games, a rivalry that had seen 8 victories for Marshall, 5 for Schlechter, and 20 draws.

One mystery that Marshall's notes do not unravel concerns the following. Both Helms' magazine and the annual British publication Year-Book of Chess give the following (and other games) from Prague 1908 attributed to a player named Leontiev. Leontiev was, in fact, an obscure Russian named Abram Rabinovich.

81. Queen Pawn's Game
A. Rabinovich--Marshall, Prague 1908

1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 c5 3 e3 Nc6 4 b3 Bg4 5 Bb2 c×d4

Playing the position like the reversed Queen's Gambit Declined that it is, Marshall opts for what was becoming his favorite idea, the Exchange Variation.

6 exd4 c6 7 Be2 Bb4+! 8 c3 Bd6

Compare with Marshall--Duras from Karlsbad 1911, Game 112. The American adopts a much more aggressive setup as Black.

9 Nbd2 Nge7 10 0-0 Ng6 11 h3 h5!

The signal to attack. Black can equalize easily with 11 ... Bf5, but with ... Qf6 and ... Nh4 in mind, he doesn't want to relinquish the pressure on f3. Now 12 h×g4? h×g4 13 N×e5! moves? Qh4! is instant death, so White delays until reaching a position in which the bishop can be safely taken.

12 c4 Qf6 13 c×d5 c×d5 14 Re1 0-0-0 15 h×g4 h×g4 16 Ne5 g3! 17 Bg4+ Kb8

A difficult position for White. Clearly 18 f×g3? Ng×e5 19 d×e5? Be5+ fails the test. Both 18 N×f3 g×f2+ 19 K×f2 Qf4 and 18 Q×f3 g×f2 19 K×f2 (19 Q×f2? Rh1+ Qh4! 20 g3 Qh2+ 21 Qg2 Ng×e5 are tricky.

18 N×c6+ b×c6 19 f×g3 B×g3 20 Rf1 Qg5 21 Bh3 Bf4! (see diagram)

Now Black gets back at least the Exchange and finishes the game off with forced blows.

22 Rf3 Be3+ 23 R×e3 Q×c3+ 24 Kf2 R×h3! 25 g×h3 Q×h3+ 26 Kg1 Qe3+ 27 Kg2 Nh4+ 28 Kf1 Qh3+ 29 Kf2 Nd3+ 30 Ke2 Re8+ 31 Ne4 R×e4+ 32 Kd2 N×b2 33 Qf1 R×d4+ 34 Ke2 Qh2+ White resigns.
The tournament ended June 12 and Marshall's 11-8 score, good enough for a tie for seventh place, was worth 433 crowns—not bad money in 1908. After a quiet July he appeared next in Germany, where the Deutsche Schachbund was holding its sixteenth Congress at Düsseldorf. The first four games of the long-expected Tarrasch-Lasker world championship match were to be held just at end of the tournament, so it promised to be one of the biggest chess events that year.

Yet the top Congress section, despite the presence of Spielmann, Salwe, Mieses and a few others of note such as young Karel Trebyhal of Czechoslovakia, was much weaker than the Vienna-Prague duo. Marshall rolled over the opposition, to score his sixth international tournament victory. The American scored 11½-3½ without a loss. In the following he has one of his easiest games ever against the then-Munich resident Spielmann, a fine combinative player who rarely lost this badly.

82. Staunton Gambit
Marshall—Spielmann, Düsseldorf 1908
1 d4 f5 2 d4 fxe4 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Bg5 c6 5 f3 exf3 6 N×f3 e6 7 Bd3 Be7 8 0–0 d6 9 Qe2 Na6 10 a3 Nc7 11 Rae1

Marshall in My Fifty Years believed Black is simply "afraid to castle," but in fact it is the only good plan, as Marshall prepares Nh4 followed by B×f6 and Qh5+.

11 ... b6 12 Nh4! Kd7?! 13 Nf5! Qf8

Black cannot afford 13 ... e×f5 14 B×f5+ Ke8 15 B×c8 R×c8 16 R×f6! and wins.

14 N×e7 Q×e7 15 Ne4 Rf8 16 N×f6+ g×f6 17 Qf3 Ne8 18 R×e6!

Not a difficult combination to calculate but a nice one: 18 ... Q×e6! 19 B×f5 wins the queen and 18 ... K×e6 19 Qf5+ K×f7 20 Q×h7+ Ng7 (or 20 ... Ke6 21 Re1+ winning the queen favorably) 21 Bg6+ and 22 Re1+.

18 ... Qf7 19 Re4 Bb7 20 Rh4 Ng7 21 R×h7

Black is helpless against the threats of Bh6 and Q×f6.

21 ... Rh8? 22 Qh3+ Resigns

Marshall wrote in his unpublished notes that "Chess masters are notoriously superstitious," from the days of Zukertort and Steinitz to his time. He added that he had been "a little superstitious" ever since he had dinner one evening during the Düsseldorf tournament at a table with two Swedish women. After dinner one of the women gave Marshall a small silver pig. "Keep this," she said. "It'll bring you luck in your chess—but also ill health to those you love."

Marshall kept the pig—and finished 1½ points ahead of second-place Salwe. He had won his first international since Nuremberg 1906, which was also a German Chess Union Congress, and had now twice become "Champion of Germany." (But after his son Frankie fell ill, "I parted with the pig and my child recovered," he wrote. "The friend to whom I sent the pig lost his wife a year afterwards")

From Düsseldorf, Marshall proceeded to Łódź, then part of Russian Poland, in mid-September for a month-long match tournament. The Łódź Chess Society had organized an annual event each year since 1903 in which Rubinstein and Salwe were joined by a third and perhaps a fourth master and each player played four to six games with one another. Regional favorites such as Chigorin, Alexander Flamberg and Duschotimirsky had been invited before but in 1908 the organizers wanted distant foreigners. Originally five players were invited, but Marco and Schlechter declined. So the tournament became a triangle affair of Marshall and the two best Polish players.

Georg Henryk Solomonowicz Salwe was a manufacturer who lived in Łódź. He had founded the city's chess society and been its leading player before the arrival of Rubinstein. Marshall usually had an easier time with the older of the two men. The American's career record against Salwe was 6 wins, 2 losses and 9 draws.

But at Łódź 1908 Salwe proved just as intractable an opponent as Rubinstein, who was already being touted as Lasker's next challenger. Both Salwe and Rubinstein were believers in the Tarrasch Defense and Marshall's games with them this year helped lay the foundation for this popular, evergreen opening.
83. Queen's Gambit Declined, Tarrasch Defense

Marshall–Salwe, Łódź 1908

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 c5 4 c×d5 c×d5 5 Nf3 Nf6 6 Bg5 Be7
7 d×c5 Be6 8 e3!

Improving on 8 Re1 0-0 9 B×f6 as the American had used to beat Rubinstein in this tournament. Now 8 ... B×c5 9 Bb5+! (9 ... Nc6 10 Nd4) creates problems. Best is 8 ... 0-0 as Rubinstein played in their match later this year.

8 ... Qa5 9 Bb5+ Nc6 10 Nd4 Re8 11 Qa4!

Excellent. White retains at least one pawn whether Black trades queens or not.

11 ... Q×a4 12 N×a4 Bd7 13 N×c6 B×c6 14 B×c6+ R×c6
15 B×f6! B×f6 16 Rd1

The c-pawn is doomed, but Salwe—"a true coffeehouse champion," according to Reuben Fine—now complicates matters by attacking the queenside pawns.

16 ... Ra6 17 b3 0-0 18 R×d5 Ra5! 19 0-0 b6 20 Rfd1 Re8

White is better but far from a won game (21 c×b6?? R×d5 loses a rook). How Marshall solves the technical difficulties here is typically educational.

21 g×f4 b×c5 22 g5 Be7 23 Re5!

![Diagram after 23 Re5](image)

The other rook can always be the one to go to d7, e.g., 23 ... Kf8 24 Rd7 Bd8 and 25 N×c5! makes it easy (25 ... R×c5 26 R×d8+).

23 ... Bf8 24 Rd7 Ra6 25 Rf5 f6

Marshall noted the tricky 25 ... c4!? after which 26 R7×f7 Bd6 27 Rd7 R×a1! 28 R×d6 c3 29 Rd1 c2 turns the tables. However, 26 R5×f7 c3

27 N×c3! R×c3 28 R×a7 kills off Black's counterplay and leaves him with four winning pawns for the sacrificed knight.

26 g×f6 g×f6 27 Ne3 c4 28 b×c4 R×c4 29 Nd5 Rg4+ 30 Kf1Bg7
31 h3 Rh4 32 Rf3 Rh5 33 Ne7+ Kf8 34 Ng5 Rg5 35 e4!

The power of the centralized knight and rooks (36 Re3) and the vulnerability of the immobile g5-rook decide quickly, e.g., 35 ... Rc6 36 Rb3 Rb6 37 Re3 Rb8 38 Rc7.

35 ... Kg8 36 Rc3 h5 37 f4 Rg6 38 Ne7+ Kh7 39 N×g6 Resigns

Marshall also was the beneficiary of a bit of good fortune at Łódź. It's difficult to believe the player of the Black pieces in the following is the same one who handled White in the previous one. Marshall's introduction to this game in his unpublished notes reads: "Wherein a great player makes an obvious blunder and an amusing mate is recorded."

84. Queen's Gambit Declined, Semi-Slav Defense

Rubinstein–Marshall, Łódź 1908

1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 c4 c6 4 Nc3 e5 5 e×d5 exd5 6 N×e5 N×e5 7 N×e5 B×e5 8 B×c4 N×c4 9 Bc2 Bb4+ 10 Bd2 Qa5 11 0-0 B×d2
12 N×d2 0-0 13 c5!

The type of clearly favorable middlegame position (better bishop, more space) that Rubinstein used to win matter-of-factly against other players.

13 ... b6 14 Nb3 Qb4 15 Qf3 Ba6! 16 Rfd1 b×c5 17 d×c5 Rad8!

Solving Black's piece-play deficiencies at the cost of a pawn.

18 Q×c6 Bb7 19 Qc7 Nd5 20 Qe5 Nf4 21 R×d8 R×d8 22 Rd1 R×d1+ 23 B×d1 f6 24 a3!

![Diagram after 24 a3](image)
A simple, apparently devastating answer to Black's mini-initiative. Now 24 ... Qe4 loses the Bishop with check, so Black must play into an equal-material endgame.

24 ... fxex5 25 a×b4 B×g2 26 f3 e4 27 c6??

White wants more than 27 Kf2 e×f3 28 B×f3 B×f3 29 K×f3 Nd3 30 c6? Ne5+ and walks instead into...

27 ... g×f3 28 c7 Nh3 mate!

Łódź 1908 despite, or perhaps because of, its small number of players was of historic significance. By modern standards it would be called a Category 13 tournament, meaning an average rating of at least 2550. That is considerably stronger than Monte Carlo 1903, Cambridge Springs 1904 and Ostende 1905, which were each Category 11, according to retrograde calculations by the English historian Ken Whyld.

It is, admittedly, unfair to compare events and players separated by more than ten years since there is a natural tendency of chess ratings to inflate or deflate. Nevertheless, there had only been one previous tournament—St. Petersburg 1895–96—that was certifiably stronger than Łódź 1908.

In the final round Marshall trailed Rubinstein by a half point but was well ahead of Salwe, so he went all out for first prize—and lost. His final score was 8–8, including 2 wins (versus 3 losses) with Rubinstein and 2 wins versus 1 loss against Salwe.

Marshall may have been lucky to leave Łódź—"a hospitable town, fanatically interested in chess"—when he did. Like most grandmasters he was apolitical, being equally at home with socialists, monarchists, or Bull Moose Republicans—as long as they were talking about chess. Politics, economics and world affairs were of little interest to him, and he was probably unaware that Łódź was a socialist stronghold. A correspondent for The Field later described how, a few months after the match tournament, the city was "in a state of siege" with armed soldiers patrolling the streets.

Nevertheless, in late October Marshall was back in Poland, to play a best-of-eight-games match in Warsaw with Rubinstein. At 26 Rubinstein was five years younger than Marshall and looking to gain experience for a possible world championship challenge of Lasker. Despite his impressive string of tournament successes, Rubinstein had never played a match with a foreign master before this year. To help rectify that, he also took on Teichmann and Mieses, beating the former 3½–2½ and the latter 6–4.

85. Queen's Gambit Declined, Tarrasch Defense
Marshall–Rubinstein, second match game, 1908

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 c5 4 c×d5 e×d5 5 Nf3 Nf6 6 Bg5 Be7 7 d×c5 Be6 8 e3

Marshall is the first to deviate from 8 Rcl, as in the Łódź game, and the position soon resembles Marshall's game with Spielmann from Ostende 1906.

8 ... 0–0 9 Bd3 B×c5 10 Rcl Nc6 11 0–0 Be7 12 Bbl Rc8 13 a3 Qa5 14 Qd3 g6 15 Ba2 Ne4?

But this is a faulty liquidation that loses a pawn and allows Marshall to demonstrate that he knew as much about winning technique as Rubinstein. Better was 15 ... Rfd8.

16 B×e7 N×e7 17 N×e4 d×e4 18 Q×e4 B×a2 19 Q×e7 Bd5 20 R×c8 R×c8 21 Qe5!

After 21 Qe5

Excellent centralization that gains time with the pin threat (22 e4) to trade queens and prevent the Black rook from reaching the seventh rank in the endgame.

21 ... Qe5 22 e4 Be6 23 Q×c5 R×c5 24 Nd4 a5 25 f4 b5 26 Rdl Kf8 27 Kf2 Ke7 28 Rd2 h5 29 Ke3 a4 30 Rc2! Bc4 31 Nf3 Rc8 32 Ne5
Black can’t avoid an unfavorable trade of rooks now and Rubinstein is on the verge of desperation within a few moves.

32 ... Bc6 33 Rxc8 Bxc8 34 Kd4 Bb7 35 h3 f5!? 36 N×g6+ Kf6 37 Ne5

Now 36 ... B×c4 37 g4! and 38 g5+ allows White a connected, passed g-pawn, while 36 ... f×e4 gives him two passers.

37 ... f×e4 38 g×f4 h×g4 39 N×d7+ Kc7 40 Ne5 Ke6 41 Ke3! Ke6 42 Ng6 Kd5 43 f5 Kc4 44 Ne7† Resigns

The pawn cannot be stopped from queening. Rubinstein rebounded to win the third and fourth games, and the match appeared headed for a rout. However, Marshall regained control of his game and his skill in the sixth game and drawing the rest. He thus lost the match by the narrowest of margins.

86. Queen’s Gambit Accepted

*Marshall–Rubinstein, sixth match game, 1908*

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 d×c4 4 e×c4 a6 5 a4

The opening now heads into what has been called the Rubinstein Variation, characterized by ... a2–a4 by White to avert Black’s intended ... b7–b5. But why “Rubinstein Variation” when Marshall had been playing the move for years! International Master Nikolai Minev, who collected the games of this “Lost Match” in a 1988 article in *Inside Chess* magazine, suggests it should at least be the “Marshall-Rubinstein Variation.” It is hard to disagree with him.

5 ... Nf6 6 B×c4 c5 7 Nf3 Nc6 8 0–0 Qc7 9 b3 c×d4 10 e×d4 Na5??

Preferable is a developing move such as 10 ... Bd6. By setting up the hanging pawns at c4 and d4, Black creates a Frankenstein monster.

11 Qe2 N×c4 12 b×c4 Be7 13 Ne5 0–0 14 Bf4 Rd8 15 Rfd1 Bd7 16 Qf3 Bd6 17 c5!

This leads to a bishops-of-opposite-color middlegame in which one side or the other stands a high risk of being overwhelmed on its vulnerable color complex.

17 ... B×c5 18 B×e5 Qc6 19 Qg3 Ne8 20 d5!

(see diagram)

White has been attacking on dark squares and now would win after 20 e×d5 21 N×d5 Q×e5 22 Nf6+ N×f6 23 B×f6. He is sacrificing a pawn to create a dominant passed d-pawn.

20 ... Q×c5 21 Ne4 Qf6 22 Nf6+ N×f6 23 B×f6 Re8 24 d6 Rac8 25 Rab1 b5 26 a×b5 a×b5

Of course, White can win the Exchange now, as he could have for the last few moves, with 27 Bc7. But his chances of winning an endgame with no queenside pawns would be slim. Considering the match situation—trailing by two points with three games to go—all of White’s ingenuity is required.

27 Ra1 Ra8 28 Be7 R×a1 29 R×a1 Ra8 30 Re1 Re8 31 Rff1 Qe8 32 Bf6 Qf8 33 Be7 Qe8 34 Bf6 Qf8 35 h3 Kh8 36 Be7 Qe8 37 Qf5†!

Objectively a bad move, which allows his bishop to be trapped. But it gives Black thoughts of winning:

37 ... b6 38 Re3 f6 39 B×f6 g×f6 40 Q×f6+ Kh7 41 Rf3 Rd8 42 h4 Bd6 43 Rg3 Rd7 44 h5!

White has little material to work with but now threatens 45 Rg6. On 44 ... Qf7 45 Qe3 Bc5 46 Rg6 Black is far from out of the woods (46 ... Rx×d6 47 Qf2 Qf5 48 Qc7+ or 46 ... Rb7 47 Qc2 Qf5 48 Qe8).

44 ... Q×h5 45 Q×e6 Qd1+? 46 Kh2

Now with 46 ... Qd5+ 47 Rh3 Qg6 or 47 Kg1 Qf7 Black is secure and winning. But...

46 ... Q×d6?? 47 Qg8 mate

As it turned out, Marshall had a chance to draw the match, after winning a pawn in a queen-and-opposite-colored bishops endgame in the final game. But he couldn’t break through, and conceded a draw in 94 moves. The match ended 4½–3½ in young Rubinstein’s favor.

The Marshalls were long overdue to return to New York and, in fact, the *American Chess Bulletin* had been announcing Frank’s imminent
return since the end of the Prague tournament. However, they moved on to Berlin where, shortly after the Rubinstein match ended, Frank began yet another match. This time his opponent was Jacques Mieses, at the renowned gathering place for chess fans, the Café Kerkau. The match turned out to be a test of openings—Marshall's Queen's Gambit versus Mieses' beloved Vienna Game. Mieses could play the most inspired chess of his generation but this generally failed him in match play: he only won 6 of the 25 matches of his career. His fight with Marshall turned out to be closer than might be expected:

87. **Queen's Gambit Declined, Tarrasch Defense**

**Marshall–Mieses, third match game, 1908**

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 c5 4 c×d5 e×d5 5 Nf3 Nc6

In the first match game Mieses experimented with 5 . . . c×d4 6 N×d4 Nc6 but surrendered the initiative after 7 Bf4 Bb4 8 e3 Nge7 9 Rcl 0-0 10 Be2 Bd6 11 Bg3 N×d4? 12 Q×d4. Marshall's treatment of the rest of the game earned the comment from Hoffer—"It is just the kind of position in the handling of which he has no equal."

It ended with 12 . . . b6 13 Bd3 Bb7 14 B×d6 Q×d6 15 0-0 Rfc8 16 Nb5 Qd7 17 R×c8+ B×c8 18 Rcl Nc6 19 Qh4 g6 20 Qf6 Nf4 21 Be7 Qe6 22 Qd8+ Kg7 23 Nd6 Bb7 24 N×f7! Resigns.

Black's next move is dubious since there is no direct attack on the d-pawn and Black can delay . . . Be6 at least until 6 g3 Nf6 7 Bg2 Be7 8 0-0 0-0 9 Bg5 Be6.

6 g3 Be6?! 7Bg2 Nf6 8 0-0

Later, in the ninth game, Marshall virtually decided the match by winning with 8 Bg5 Be7 9 d×c5 Qa5?! 10 0-0 Q×c5 11 Rcl Rb8 12 Na4 Qa5 13 Nd4!

Mieses' failure to castle quickly again allowed the American too great a lead and after 13 . . . N×d4 14 Q×d4 0-0 15 Nc5 Q×a2 16 N×e6 f×e6 17 Rcl Rf7 18 B×b3 Qa5 19 Rfe1! he had a clear edge.

It ended with 19 . . . Q×c2 20 Be1 Rd6 21 Qc5 Qa6 22 Be5 Ne7 23 R×d7! R×d7 24 B×e6 Q×e6 25 Be3 Qd6 26 Rc8+ Bdb8 27 B×f7+ K×f7 28 Qf5+ Bf6 29 Be5 g6 30 Qh3! Resigns. In fact, Marshall won four of the five games in which he had White in this match, all of them Tarrasch Defenses—and three in 30 moves or less.

8 . . . Be7 9 Bg5 Ne4 10 B×e7 Q×e7 11 Rcl Rd8 12 d×c5 N×c5 13 b4!

A powerful idea, which connects the d4 square with Black's two vulnerable points, g7 and the queenside. On 13 . . . N×b4 14 Q×d4 the queen invades, and on 13 . . . Nd7 the d-pawn will hang.

13 . . . Ne4 14 b5 Na5? 15 Qd4!

Black would have survived longer with 14 . . . Nb8 15 Qd4 N×c3.

15 . . . N×c3 16 Q×c3 Ne4 17 Q×g7 Kd7 18 Qd4 Ke7 19 Q×a7 Ra8 20 Qd4 Rd8 21 Ne5 R×a2 22 Rf1 R×e2

White concludes with a neat six-move combination that wins a piece.

23 b6+ Kc8 24 N×c4 d×c4 25 R×c4+ B×c4 26 Q×c4+ Kb8 27 Q×e2! Resigns

The match ended 5–4 in Marshall's favor, with only 1 draw, the second game. The Marshalls ended this extraordinary year by heading home, with stops along the way for simultaneous exhibitions. One, on 29 boards at the Hamburg Chess Club in mid-December, produced the following gem:

88. **Marshall–Hartlaub, simultaneous exhibition, Hamburg 1908**

A rook and piece ahead, White nevertheless must produce here since 1 . . . Rh1+, mating, is threatened.

1 Ra8+ Kb7 2 Ra7+ Kb6!

Taking the rook allows 3 b6+ and White mates.

3 Ra6+ Kb7 4 e3!

Sacrificing the queen. In the resulting endgame White will win unless Black can find a way of breaking the queenside vice of heavy pieces.

4 . . . Rhl+ 5 Ke2 Rh2+ 6 Kd3 R×b2 7 R×b2 c5?! 8 b×c6+! K×a6 9 c7 Qf5+
The pawn cannot be stopped from queening. Will the American spot the swindle—11 c8(Q)? stalemate?

10 N×f5 Ka7 11 c8(R): Resigns

Frank and Carrie finally set sail for home at Christmastime. They celebrated their son Frankie's third birthday during the slow 17-day trip from Hamburg and were welcomed home by friends when they arrived in New York harbor January 8, 1909. They had been away for an exhausting 20 months.

Marshall proceeded to give welcome-home simultaneous exhibitions at the Manhattan and Brooklyn chess clubs as well as the New York Athletic Club. He also learned all the latest chess news he had missed. One bit of gossip intrigued him: The Manhattan Chess Club was trying to organize an exhibition match between him and a new talent who had become the toast of New York chess in his absence. Marshall was very interested in playing the newcomer, a young Cuban named José Capablanca.

Marshall at 16 as he appeared in Le Monde Illustré on Nov. 15, 1893, after losing game one to World Champion William Steinitz in a Montreal exhibition. Marshall called the photo "a portrait of a very solemn and self-conscious young man."
Top: Group photo from Lake Hopatcong, 1923. Marshall is seated at right with Edward Lasker at his elbow and David Janowski across the board. Standing in the left foreground with his right hand on Janowski's chair is Anthony Edward Santasiere. At left center behind Janowski's left hand is Alrick Man. Standing directly behind Edward Lasker, cigar in hand, is Horace Ransom Bigelow. Santasiere, Man and Bigelow were Marshall Chess Club members who had played on the 1922 Metropolitan League championship team. Bottom: A postcard sent by Frank to Carrie from Hamburg in 1930. Marshall is at center (with hands over his ears) playing Savielly Tartakower.

Top: Group photo taken at Mannheim in 1924 before World War I halted play. Those seated at the table include Jacques Mieses (second from left), Rudolf Spielmann (far right), and Siegbert Tarrasch (second from right). Marshall is seventh from left in the first standing row, directly behind Mieses; others standing include Oldrich Duras (third from left, with hair parted in center), Milan Vidmar (fourth from left, in front of Duras), Savielly Tartakower (right center, fourth over from Marshall), Alexander Alekhine (fourth from right, first row), Gyula Breyer (third from right, first row), and Yefim Bogolyubov (extreme right). Bottom: Marshall deep in concentration during tournament play circa 1925.
Top: Frank and Carrie showing off mementos from the Marshall Chess Club display case. Bottom: A postcard from Marienbad 1925 showing Marshall playing gifted Mexican star Carlos Torre.

Top: Frank and Carrie relaxing at Atlantic City. Bottom: Frank and Carrie in a family Christmas card photo, circa 1940.
Chapter Eight

A Year at Home

Newscasts had begun appearing in movie houses and in 1909 they told of giants, of various sizes: Teddy Roosevelt, who "retired" and was succeeded in the White House by William Howard Taft; Guglielmo Marconi, who won a Nobel Prize in Physics for development of the wireless; Robert Peary, who reached the North Pole; and Jack Johnson, who successfully defended his heavyweight championship five times in a ten-month period.

* * *

After such a long trip abroad—and with relatively few major tournaments scheduled for 1909—the Marshalls decided to spend the year at home. They were living in a brownstone apartment at 912 Greene Avenue, in the comfortable Brooklyn neighborhood of Bedford-Stuyvesant, and trying to juggle the lifestyle of a professional chess player with that of a married couple with an infant son.

Practicality was not Frank's strong suit and he increasingly began to depend on Carrie. She did all the household chores in an era when that included ironing (with a real iron), sewing, tending the wood-burning oven, shining silver, rolling up and storing rugs, and dusting. Bread did not come sliced, nor coffee ground, and in an age before widespread refrigeration, poultry was often sold live: Someone had to kill it and clean it, before cooking it.

Besides keeping house and raising Frankie, Carrie took on the role of nonpaid business manager. She scheduled Frank's appointments, paid his bills and wrote his letters, even learning to copy his signature so well that it fooled friends. She cajoled him into meeting useful people, and established contacts with out-of-town clubs. She dealt with his bad habits, which included a life-long problem with hard liquor.

Years later, Benjamin Mclester Anderson, a longtime friend of Frank's and nationally known economist, wrote to Carrie:
Frank's principal business was tournament chess and he had played in 15 events, most of them in Europe, since his marriage. But in America tournaments were still few and far between, and Marshall only entered two events, both in New York City, in 1909. The first was the Manhattan Chess Club's annual championship, a premiere event, which he won this year for the third time. The other was the annual summer tournament of the New York State Chess Association, which was often a mixture of a pleasant upstate vacation and a good way to earn rent money.

In between tournaments there were simultaneous exhibitions and lectures. Marshall loved "simuls" and scheduled them whenever possible. He usually charged a minimum of $25, a tidy amount in a time when a one-child family might live comfortably on $100 a month. Marshall was a showman and entertainer, and he didn't care greatly about his final score in simuls. He often allowed himself a few diplomatic losses on occasion to please an audience. He was not a great public speaker but dutifully prepared notes for each lecture that accompanied a simul, often a talk about a famous brilliancy such as Paul Morphy versus the Duke of Brunswick.

Marshall rarely played blindfold but he was quite capable of handling a few games at a time. In a later book entitled Chess Step by Step he mistakenly gives the venue of this game against a team of "Amateurs (Consulting)" as "Scotland 1904."

89. Ruy Lopez, Berlin Defense
Marshall (blindfolded)—J. McKee & F.G. Harris, Glasgow 1903

1 e5 e5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 Bb5 Nf6 4 0-0 Nxe4 5 d4 Be7 6 dxe5 0-0 7 Qd5 Nc5 8 Be3 Ne6 9 Ne3 Qe8 10 Rae1

So far, so good. But now the Black team fails to appreciate what the position needs—... f7-f6!—and allows their position to become horribly constricted.

10 ... b6 11 Qe4! Bb7 12 Nd5 Rb8 13 Bd3 g6 14 Nf6+ Bxf6 15 exf6 Ncxd4 16 Qh4 Nxf3+ 17 gxf3 Qd8 18 Bg5 Kh8 19 f4 Rg8 (see diagram)

Now begin a lovely series of rook lifts targeting h7. His next move threatens 21 Q×h7+! and he finishes by announcing a mate in three.

20 Re3! Nf8 21 Re1 c5 22 Rh3 c4 23 Re3 c×d3 24 Q×h7+! N×h7 25 R×h7+ K×h7 26 Rh3 mate

But his greatest forte was speed. Marshall could finish off a large field of opponents in breakneck time. One display in Berlin, in December 1925, was celebrated in an Associated Press account for having set "a new time record for simultaneous chess play." Marshall finished 30 games in 2 hours and 20 minutes, winning 24, losing 3 and drawing 3. If each game took an average of 30 moves—and few amateurs resign that early—that meant he made 900 moves in 140 minutes, or less than ten seconds a move. Actually José Capablanca, and Marshall himself, could play faster, as quickly as under five seconds a move.

Marshall's big simultaneous tour in 1909 began on March 15 and led him to upstate New York and Canada, including a return to Montreal and visits to Ottawa and Quebec City, followed by Ohio, Illinois and Wisconsin. This was in lieu of the year's one great international tournament, held at St. Petersburg, where Rubinstein managed to beat Lasker and tie with him for first prize. In fact, Marshall's only international event on his 1909 schedule was a mid-trip return to the Brooklyn Chess Club at 4 Court Square for the annual Anglo-American Cable Match. This time, he beat Blackburne but the United States went down to defeat, 6-4.

Aside from the simuls, Marshall tried to earn money by offering to play correspondence games at $5 each with amateurs, and occasionally tried his hand at writing, although his results were mostly pedestrian. The only other source of revenue to a 31-year-old professional chessplayer was stakes from match play, and in 1909 he engaged in a series of one-on-one matches which, interestingly, revealed some flaws in Marshall's style.

Upon arrival in New York on his return from Europe he said he had
the backing of $600 in stakes towards a match with anyone in the United States, "J.R. Capablanca preferred." Capablanca, however, spent January and February 1909 conducting his own extensive simul tour of New York and Midwest, so Marshall's first match opponent of the year turned out to be Charles Jaffe.

Jaffe was one of the strongest of a new group of American masters who were most easily distinguished from the Establishment—the masters invited to Cambridge Springs and the cable matches—in that the new group were recent émigrés. Back in the 1870s and 80s American chess had been led by foreign-born players, such as the Scottish soldier George Henry MacKenzie and the Irishman James Mason. Another wave of emigration brought masters such as Max Judd from Poland and Solomon Lipschitz from Hungary. But by the turn of the century they had given way to Marshall's generation, which with a few exceptions, had been born in the United States, and usually from third- or fourth-generation families of English, Scottish or Irish descent.

Yet over the next ten years the generation of Showalter, Hodges, Barry and Fox would be supplanted by newcomers from Central and Eastern Europe, including Oscar Chajes of Austrian upbringing, Edward Lasker of Germany, and Abraham Kupchik of Russia. The strongest of them, in 1909, was Jaffe.

Jaffe was born of Russian Jewish parents in a Dnieper river town in 1879 and emigrated to the United States at age 17. He developed chess talent slowly, eventually becoming a star at the Cafe Commercial, one of many Lower East Side establishments devoted to chess. Jaffe's first attempt at serious chess ended in a humble seventh place out of ten at St. Louis 1904. But by early 1909 he was strong enough to beat Jacques Mieses in an informal match when the German visited the United States.

In January 1909 Marshall and Jaffe agreed to terms of a nine-game match and a $200 stake. It was to begin February 1 at the Rice Chess Club, with Prof. Rice presiding as referee. Marshall had good reason to be confident but he appears to have taken the games lightly, as he so often did with matches. In fact he was lucky to draw the first game as Black. He took the lead by winning the White side of Dutch Defense the next day. And if he had won the third game his opponent might have been psychologically beaten:

90. Queen's Pawn Game  
Jaffe—Marshall, third match game, 1909

1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 Nd7 3 Bg5 Nf6 4 Nbd2 c5 5 c3 c×d4 6 c×d4 Qa5?

Fifteen years later White's system would become known as the sound and solid Torre Attack. At the time, however, many players agreed with Marshall's opinion of White's third move, as expressed in the American Chess Bulletin: "Not good. Bf4 was far better."

7 a3 Nc6 8 b4 Qb6 9 e3 a5! 10 b5 N×g5 11 N×g5 e5!

Having made three good moves to weaken White on the dark squares, Marshall has a clear advantage.

12 d×e5 N×e5 13 Ngf3 Qf6 14 N×e5? Q×e5 15 Nf3 Qc3+ 16 Nd2 Bg4?!  
"Throwing a winning position almost away," wrote Marshall, recommending instead 16...B×a3 and if then 17 Be2 then...Bb4.

17 Be2 B×e2 18 K×e2 B×a3 19 Qb3! Bb4 20 Q×d5 0–0 21 Rfc1 Qf6 22 Nc4 Qb6 23 Rc4 Rad8 24 Qf5 g6!

Now 25...f5 or 25...Q×b5 will all but win the game. A semidesperate Jaffe continued.

25 Nf6+ Kg7 26 Nh5+!

After 26 Nh5+

26...g×h5 27 Rcg1 B×c6?

"Of course 21...Rd2+ 22 Kf1 Qd8 would have won easily," Marshall wrote. "I cannot account for my hallucination except on the score of being tired."

28 Qg5+ Draw

Anatoly Karpov has observed a "famous law" of match play: If you fail to win a 100 percent won game, you're bound to lose the next day. This came to pass in a 45-move Queen's Gambit Declined lost by Marshall that tied the match, 2–2.
The prospect of failing to defeat a minor master such as Jaffe served as a wakeup call for Marshall and he won the next two games, in 54 and 52 moves. But a loss in the seventh placed the outcome of the match in doubt once more. Marshall ended matters by winning the ninth game, thereby achieving a decisive 5½–3½ score. But his speculative play had been badly exposed by Jaffe.

**Capablanca**

Before Marshall left on his simul tour he signed a contract in Helms' lower Manhattan office to play Capablanca, who was eleven years younger and up to now had never played a major match or in an international tournament. It would be a long match, to be decided by the first to score eight victories, and the winner's share would come out of the gate receipts. The right to host each game was offered to different clubs at a rate of $60 per game, or a discounted price of three for $150 and five for $200. As a result, the match began at the Ansonia Hotel on Manhattan's Upper West Side, but soon wandered about the Northeast, to Morristown, N.J., and Scranton and Wilkes-Barre, Pennsylvania.

What followed stunned Marshall no less than his supporters. He seemed incapable in the first two weeks of stopping the Cuban's onslaught. Capa won the second, fifth, and sixth games, allowing draws in the other three. Fans of Marshall often arrived to find Capa, following his habit of pacing with brisk strides in a separate room, while Marshall was buried in thought at the board, trying to retrieve another lost position.

The fans later blamed Marshall's poor showing on his openings: Capa used the Ruy Lopez and repeatedly won against his opponent's Schlieven and Steinitz defenses. As White, Marshall couldn't crack Capa's use of the Tarrasch and Lasker defenses to the Queen's Gambit. Marshall explained that he "took the whole thing very lightly" because he thought Capa was a "pushover."

Marshall did have one bright spot, winning the shortest decisive game of the match.

91. Queen's Gambit Declined, Lasker Defense  
*Mars**h–Capablanca, seventh match game, 1909*

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Be7 5 e3 Nc6 6 B×e7 Q×e7 7 Bd3 N×c3 8 b×c3 N×d7 9 N×f3 0–0 10 c×d5 c×d5 11 Qb3 Nf6 12 a4

This was considered an innovation "and a most excellent one," according to the *American Chess Bulletin*, which recommended a quieter queenside defense by Black such as 12 ... e5.

12 ... c5? 13 Qa3! b6 14 a5t

Exactly the idea behind his twelfth move. Putting the b6-pawn under pressure takes precedence over castling.

14 ... Bb7 15 0–0 Qc7 16 Re1 Nd7? 17 Bf5!

![Diagram](image)

After 17 Bf5

Black overlooked this brutally simple move. Now there is no way to avoid material loss since 17 ... c×d4 18 c×d4 Nf6 would allow the equally unpleasant 19 Re1 Qb8 20 Ne5 Re8 21 a6! Re8 22 Ng6 Qc7 23 R×e8 Ra×e8 and then 24 Ne7+. Nevertheless, 17 ... Nf6, had to be a better way of shedding a pawn.

17 ... Rfe8 18 B×d7 Q×d7 19 a6! Bc6 20 d×c5 b×c5 21 Q×c5 Rab8 22 R×b8 R×b8 23 Ne5 Qf5 24 f4t

This creates luft (24 N×c6?? Rb6+) and wins time to grab a second pawn. Capablanca now sets a little trap: 24 ... Rb6 and if 25 N×c6 Rb1+ 26 R×b1 Q×b1+ 27 Kf2 Qc2+ and perpetual checks at g6, c2 and e4.

24 ... Rb6 25 Q×b6! Resigns

Marshall took only 45 minutes for the entire game. This was played at the beginning of Capablanca's professional career of more than three decades and 600 games. But he would never lose a serious game as short as this one.

If there were any chance of a Marshall comeback they were crushed when he lost the next game and erred on the fifty-sixth move of the one that followed, allowing the Cuban to draw a lost rook-and-pawn ending. That seemed to have a great demoralizing effect on Marshall. Capa won games 11–13, leaving the score 7–1, and Marshall was one loss away from conceding the match. The game that broke his spirit:
92. Queen's Gambit Declined, Lasker Defense
Marshall–Capablanca, eleventh match game, 1909


Marshall's last two moves look better than they actually are. Eventually, Black will attack the queen with ... c6-c5 and prove White's pieces are misplaced to defend the queenside.

12 0-0 0-0 13.a4 c5 14.Qg3 Nc6 15.Nf4 Rce8 16.Ba2 Rfd8 17.Rfe1 Na5 18.Rad1 Bc6 19.Qg4

As Lasker said of Marshall's play in the Capa match, "To 'take chances' in chess is nearly as difficult as to take chances, say, in geometry." After this game Marshall's loss was blamed on his attempt to incur risks in simple positions. But, although this move leads to intense complications, White should have played the even sharper 19.d5, since 19...exd5 20.Nx5 favors him positionally and 19...Bxe4 20.dxe6 favors him tactically (e.g., 20...Bxd1 21.exf7+ Kh8 22.Ng6+ h8 23.f5+ and Black will be mated).

19...c4 20.d5 Bxd4 21.Rd2 e5 22.Nh5 g6 23.d6 Qe6 24.Qg5 Kh8

Of course, not 24...Rx6 25.Rx6 Qx6 26.Qh6 when Black loses his king or queen.


After 29.h4


29...Ne7 30.Nc4 Qc7 31.Qf6+ Kg8 32.Be6!

Another measure of Marshall's ingenuity in desperate situations: Now the simple defense 32...Rf8 allows 33.Ng5 fxe6 34.Qf8+ and White wins the Exchange.

32...fxe6 33.Qxe6+ Kf8 34.Ng5 Ng8 35.f4 Re8 36.fxe5!

Not just setting the knight-fork trap but gaining time for the rook check.

36.Re7 37.Rf1+ Kg7 38.h5 Be8 39.h6+ Kh8

Avoiding two more traps (39...Kxh6 40.Qg4 Kg7 41.Ne6+ and 39...Nxb6 40.Qf6+).

40.Qd6! Qe5!

Another save by the Cuban, who saw that a trade of queens loses, (40...Qxd6 41.exd6 Rxe3 42.d7! Bxd7 43.Nf7 mate).

41.Qd4! Rxe5 42.Qd7!

Marshall misses his best chance, 42.Rf7, after which he would have had some drawing chances in the queen-versus-three-pieces endgame following 42...Nxb6 43.Rxe7+ Kxe7 44.Rg7+ Kg6 45.Kxg7+ Kxg7 46.Ne6+. The move he made offers a cheapo (42...Bxd7?? 43.Nf7 mate) which is easily recognized.

41...Re7 43.Rf7 Bxd7 White resigns

At this point, one loss away from conceding the match, Marshall pulled back. He did something in the latter half of the match that would characterize his play for the next two decades: He began to adjust.

If Capablanca was beating him through efficient but conservative technique, Marshall would imitate him, maneuver for maneuver. He would avoid every significant risk. By late May, as the match turned to the Brooklyn Chess Club, he had transformed his style from one of optimism to one of negation. The result: draws.

Marshall had "deliberately turned his back on all lines of play that have even the slightest taint of unsoundness," said the American Chess Bulletin. "His main objective has been not to lose, thereby placing the burden of winning the final game to decide the match upon Capablanca." If Capablanca made no effort of his own, a draw was inevitable, such as in the speedy nineteenth game which lasted only 15 moves (and 19 minutes on the Cuban's clock) before ending in a perpetual check.

No one had ever executed such a delaying strategy before and seventy-five years would pass until, faced with roughly the same situation, his opponent needing only one more victory, Garry Kasparov adopted the same strategy in his first world championship match.

A Year at Home
The streak ended at 9 drawn games on June 23 when Capablanca scored his eighth and conclusive victory. The match ended 8-1, with 14 draws. Helms, in the American Chess Bulletin, took the predictable route of declaring Marshall a poor match player, “His temperament seems to crave the excitement of tournament play and to rebel against a certain monotony inseparable from an encounter with a single opponent stretching over a period of weeks.”

But there is another school thought, expressed by Viktor Korchnoi: “There is no such thing as match players and tournament players, the theory goes, “there are simply good and bad players.” In a study of match results, Arpad Elo found considerable historical support for this. “The statistical facts,” he wrote, “are that players are likely to perform equally well in either matches or tournament competition.” Marshall, who won 16 of the 25 serious matches he played, was hardly a poor match opponent. He lost some close matches but was beaten badly only by the opponents who clearly outclassed him—the Tarrasch of 1905, Emanuel Lasker and the surprising Capablanca.

A second disappointment for Marshall followed at the end of July when the New York State Chess Association Championship was held in Brooklyn. The tournament site was the elegant Fort Lowry Hotel in Bath Beach, once a hangout for Broadway stars and racehorse owners. Marshall faced only Albert Hodges and a few other masters in competition for the skimpy $75 first prize.

In the fourth and penultimate round, Marshall faced one of those masters, Herbert Rosenfeld, in what appeared to be the key game of the tournament. Marshall played one of his finest. In fact, it must be considered something of a mystery why this game failed to be included in My Fifty Years or Marshall’s Chess Swindles.

93. Two Knights Defense
Rosenfeld–Marshall, Bath Beach 1909

1 e4 c5 2 Nf3 Ne6 3 Bc4 Nf6 4 Ng5 d5

Marshall's choice of 2... Nc6, in place of his familiar Petroff, is an indication of his determination to win. In later years he recommended the Wilkes-Barre (4... Bc5??) Variation.

5 exd5 Nxd5 6 Bb5+ c6 7 dxc6 bxc6 8 Be2 h6 9 Nf3 e4 10 Ne5 Qd4+ 11 Ng4?

A move later discredited and replaced by 11 f4. Marshall finds a way of exploiting the vulnerability of g4.

11... Bxg4 12 Bxg4 Bc5 13 0-0 c3! 14 Bf3 e5 x f2+ 15 Kh1

White's play has been forced (14 dxc3 Qxg4) but now it seems he will unravel his pieces with 16 c3 and followed by 17 d4 or 17 b4.

15... 0-0! 16 e3 Qd3 17 Be2

"If 17 b4 there follows the beautiful continuation 17... Rae8 18 bxa5 Qxf3+ 19 Qxf3 Re1 20 Be2 Re8 etc.,” Marshall wrote in his unpublished notes.

17... Qg6 18 d4

And here he pointed out 18 b4 Ne4 19 bxa5 Ng3+! 20 hxg3 Qxg3 and since 21... Qh4 mate is threatened, White must reply 21 Bg4, after which 21... Rae8 and 22... Re1 can't be stopped.

18... Bxd6 19 Rxf2 Ne4 20 Re3 Qh5! 21 Qg1

An unpleasantly forced move, since 21 h3 (to stop 21... Qxh2 mate) allows 21... Qxf3 and 22... Nf2+.

21... Rae8 22 Nd2 Nxd2

After 22... Nxd2

Who has seen further? Clearly White must have noticed 23 Bxd2 Rxc2 or 23 Re3! Qxh2? 24 Rxh2. Does Black have a better reply to 23 Re3! than the liquidating 23... Qxh2?+

23 Re3! Qxh2! 24 Rxc2 Rxc2 25 Bxd2

On 25 Qd1 Re8 26 Bxd2 Black plays 26... Nc4! and the bishop has no safe move (27 Bc1?? Re1+; 27 Be1 Nxb2! 28 Qb1 Rxe1+ with a won ending).

25... Rxd2 26 b4 Ne4 27 Qf1 Nb2 28 Qa6 Re8 29 Qxe6 Re6 30 Qa6+ Kh7 31 Rf1 Re2!

Another fine stroke that ends all hopes of counterattack (32 Rxf2? Re1+; 32 Rb1 Re2). White now creates a self-mate that shortens the game.
32 Kgl R×f1+ 33 K×f1 B×h2 34 Qd5 Bg3! 35 Q×e6 f×e6 and wins

No better was 34 Kf2 N×f1+ 35 Kf3 R×f3+ 36 Kg3 Ng2+ 37 Kf4 R×f1 followed by 38... g6 mate. For this Marshall won a brilliancy prize donated by the children of Eugene Delmar, who had died in February. His 3½½ score also seemed good enough to secure for him first prize.

On the final day, however, fortune failed him. Marshall tried too hard as White against Jaffee—even avoiding a repetition of position in the middlegame—and lost, thereby costing him first prize. It was reverses like this that led Marshall to tell a London newspaper, the Daily Sketch, later that year that he intended to retire from chess because the game was too exhausting. "No game in the world calls for such deep study and devotion as chess—and while I love it, there are other responsibilities which suffer..."

But 1909 was also the year Marshall earned his greatest and most lasting title, although no one anticipated the way it came about. It began with a controversy that had arisen over the significance of the Capablanca match.

"I am the undisputed champion of Cuba," Capablanca wrote in September, even though he had never won that title. By beating the best known American, "Therefore I consider myself champion of America," he went on. This came in an offer to play a title match with anyone for $1000. "Under these circumstances," Capa added, "the question of whether I am a citizen of the U.S.A. or not has nothing to do with the matter under consideration."

Marshall, however, pointed out that there was no mention of anything but gate receipts being at stake in the conditions they had agreed to in Helms' office six months before. And while he had thought of himself as American champion since Pillsbury's death, he hadn't meant to risk a title when he sat down with Capablanca.

At this point Walter Penn Shipley stepped in. The respected Philadelphia amateur drew attention to something that had eluded both Capa and Marshall. The title of United States champion had been held variously by Hodges, Showalter and Pillsbury during the 1890s, Shipley noted. With Pillsbury's death in 1906 it was assumed that Marshall had replaced him, since both Hodges and Showalter were in virtual retirement. It was that very title that Capa now claimed was his.

But to Shipley's legal mind Marshall couldn't lose something he had never had. The title of U.S. Champion was not his, but had reverted, on Pillsbury's death, back to the last living titleholder—Jackson Whipp Showalter.

"It may be said that this is merely a technicality," wrote Shipley in the Philadelphia Evening Bulletin. "The trouble with this view is that championships are technicalities and cannot be decided virtually." He felt the best way of resolving the matter might be a match-tournament of four players—Hodges, Showalter, Marshall, and Capablanca.

But Frank—or more likely, Frank and Carrie—acted before anyone else. By October 4 Marshall's correspondence with Showalter had progressed far enough for the Kentuckian to offer to play him an eight-victory match for the title and $500 a side. (They eventually agreed on best-of-15.) Capablanca, meanwhile, was apparently committed to spending November and December on a simul tour.

Showalter had not played much since Cambridge Springs but he had on one a formidable match opponent. In the 1890s he had given Pillsbury and Janowsky two difficult matches apiece and Lasker one, and had also beaten Adolf Albin among others. Nevertheless, at 49, he was not able to afford to give an opponent odds of 17 years in a three-week match.

They met at Lexington beginning November 9. Marshall began strongly, winning the first, third and fourth games and led 3½½. Showalter won the fifth, in 24 moves after Marshall blundered in a Schliemann (1e4 e5 2Nf3 Nc6 3 Bb5 f5 4 Nc3 e×c4 5 N×e4 d5 6 Ng3 Bd6 7 d4 Bg4 8 d×e5 B×e5 9 B×c6+ b×c6 10 Q×e2! B×f3 11 Q×e4 Nc7 12 g×f3 and wins).

The score stood 7½-3½ (6 wins, 2 losses, 3 draws), after 11 games with Marshall needing only a game to clinch the title. Showalter missed many good chances, as evidenced by the final game:

94. Albin Countergambit
Marshall—Showalter, Twelfth match game, 1909
1 d4 d5 2 c4 e5 3 d×e5 d×e4 4 Nf3 Nc6 5 Nbd2 Bg4 6 h3! B×f3 7 N×f3 Qe7

White's placid choice at move six should allow Black equality after the more accurate 7... Bb4+ and then 8 B×d2 Qe7.

8 a3! 0-0 0 9 Bg5 f6 10 e×f6 g×f6 11 B×f4 Q×e4 12 Q×d2 d3 13 Q×e3!

Effectively trading center pawns and seriously undermining the enemy initiative.

13 ... Q×c4 14 e×d3 Qf7

"Stronger appears 14... Q×e4 with the threat of... Nb4 or... Nd4," Marshall wrote in his unpublished notes. Now White can castle into relative safety.
15 Bc2 Nge7 16 0–0 Nd5 17 Qd2 Rg8 18 Rc1 Nxf4?

And here Black missed a strong idea in 18 ... Qe6 (threatening to win a piece with 19 ... N×f4 or to grab the h-pawn). Then 19 Bg3 Bxd6.
19 Q×f4 Qe6 20 Qe4! Rd5 21 Nd4!

As Marshall noted, Showalter saw that he could play 21 ... R×g2+
22 K×g2 Rg5+ 23 Bg4 R×g4+, and that this was objectively the best line. But it leads only to a draw (24 h×g4 Q×g4+ 25 Kh1 Qh3+ 26 Kgl Qg4+) and since "that was sufficient for me to win the match he refused to go into it."

The rest is a mercy killing.
21 ... Qf7? 22 N×c6 b×c6 23 Bf3 Bd6 24 Rfe1 Qd7 25 B×d5 c×d5 26 Qa6+ Kd8 27 Q×a7 Qg7 28 Qa8+ Kd7 29 Q×d5 Resigns

The irony of 1909 was that after five years of being recognized as the best player in America, Marshall finally gained official recognition as United States Champion—at the same time that it became clear that he was only number two, to Capablanca, in America. Nevertheless, at the age of 32 Marshall held a glorious title. Few would suspect he would still be holding that title at age 58.

Chapter Nine

Swindle!

In his first ten years of international play Frank Marshall was known for ambitious, sometimes reckless aggression, for sound endgame play—and for what he liked to call his "swindles."

"Beware of his Swindles!" One of his 1905 match opponents, David Janowsky, warned another, Siegbert Tarrasch, in a British Chess Magazine drawing. Readers knew what that meant, even though the term "swindle" was relatively new to chess and had no precise meaning. Ossip Bernstein, who ran headlong into a Marshall trap at St. Petersburg 1914, recalled Marshall's win from Emanuel Lasker at Paris 1900. While most other observers saw a superb tactical, then technical battle, Bernstein called it "one of the greatest 'swindles' of the chess board."

In his early days it was Marshall's swindling that often compensated for his uneven defensive skill. His success at Cambridge Springs 1904 was endangered in midournament by:

95. Scotch Game (by transposition)
Schlechter-Marshall, Cambridge Springs 1904
1 e4 e5 2 Be4 Nf6 3 d4 exd4 4 Nf3 Bc5 5 0–0 d6 6 c3 d×c3 7 N×c3 0–0 8 Bg5 Bc6 9 Qb3 B×c4 10 Q×c4 h6 11 Bh4 Nbd7 12 b4 Bb6 13 e5! d×e5 14 Rad1 Qe7?

This gets Black into trouble and Schlechter thought 14 ... Qe8 best.
15 R×d7? Q×d7 16 B×f6 g×f6 17 Nd5 Qe6 18 Nh4 Rfd8?!
19 Nf5! R×d5? 20 Qg4+ Kf8

Black could have beaten off the attack more efficiently with 18 ... f5!
19 N×f5 Kh8, and later by 19 ... Kh8.

(see diagram)

Now 21 Qh5 forces a draw, e.g., 21 ... Qe6 22 N×h6 and 23 Nf5 wins. or 21 ... Kg8! 22 N×h6+ Kg7 23 Nf5+ with perpetual check. Schlechter, however, misses a great Marshall reply—a "swindle."
21 Qh3? B×f2+! 22 K×f2

Too late White sees 22 R×f2 Rd1+ and 22 Kh1 Bh4#. The game ended with:

22 ... Qb6+ 23 Kc2 Qa6+ 24 Kf2 Qb6+ 25 Kc2 Rad8! 26 Q×h6+ Ke8 27 Ng7+ Ke7 28 Nf5+ Kd7 29 Qh3 Qa6+ 30 Kf2 Rd2+ 31 Kgl Qe6 32 Qg4 Kc8 33 h4 R2d4! 34 Qe2 Rf4! 35 R×f4 e×f4 36 Qg4 Rd5 37 Ne7+ Kd8! White resigns.

And Marshall himself wouldn’t be swindled by 37 ... Kd7 38 N×d5t.

To Marshall, whose third book was entitled Marshall’s Chess Swindles, the term meant a particularly imaginative method of rescuing a difficult, if not lost, position. In later years his prowess at rescuing the irretrievable took on magical proportions:

96. Grünfeld–Marshall, Moscow 1925

Two pawns ahead, Black can consolidate his advantage with 1 ... Qa1+ and 2 ... Qa5+, followed by 3 ... Qe5! Ernst Grünfeld, a celebrated opening expert, continued, however, to grab pawns: 1 ... Qa1+ 2 Kd2 Q×b2? 3 R×g7t.

97. Yates–Marshall, Karlsbad 1929

White cannot stop the b-pawn from queening but he can win fairly easily by giving up his own queen for the two enemy pawns, e.g., 1 Qc2 a3 (1 ... Ka7? 2 Q×a4+) 2 Kc3 Ka3 3 Qb3 bl(Q) 4 Q×a3+ Kc2 5 Q×a2+ and 6 f4.

But the English master saw a simpler method: 1 Kc4? bl(Q) 2 Q×b1+ K×b1 3 Kh4, after which several spectators—and perhaps Yates as well—expected Marshall to resign.

However, Black responded with 3 ... Kb2!, recalling Richard Réti’s elegant king-and-pawn endgame, published only eight years before. To avoid losing f4! White must capture the a-pawn, after which 4 ... Kc3! 5 f4 Kd4 and the Black king is in the square. Draw.

It is also true that Marshall often played out truly hopeless positions.

After beating the American at San Sebastian 1912, Tarrasch had this to say in Die Schachwelt:

In such a position the game should, of course, be given up for the sake of appearances. But there are some masters, unfortunately, notable among them being Marshall, who are quite devoid of any sense of tact, and who make it a matter of principle to continue playing with stupid obstinacy in the most hopeless positions. Such procedures make them themselves look ridiculous, and is degrading to the tourney as a spectacle.
Of course, “hopeless” is in the eyes of the beholder. At Ostende 1907 an overly ambitious Marshall attack backfired and left him with a position some of his contemporaries might consider close to resignable:

98. Queen’s Pawn Game
Marshall–Chigorin, Ostende 1907

1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 e6 3 Bf4 Nf6 4 e3 Bd6 5 Bg3 c6 6 Bd3 B x g3 7 h x g3
Nbd7 8 Nbd2 Qc7 9 Qe2 c5 10 c3 c4 11 Bc2 b5 12 e4 d x e4
13 N x e4 h6 14 Ng5?

Much better here was 14 a4! Now White gets clearly the worst of matters.

14 ... Bb7 15 0-0-0? 0-0! 16 f4 Rab8! 17 a3 a5 18 Nd2 Bd5 19 Ng4
b4 20 a x b4 a x b4 21 N x f6+ N x f6 22 Qe5 Qe5!

After 22 ... Qa5

The threats of ... b x c3 or ... Qa1+ followed by captures on b2 or c3
should be decisive. Marshall, in semidesperation, played 23 N x c4, after
which 23 ... Qa1+ 24 Kd2 b x c3+ 25 b x c3 Qa2 and following a knight-
move, ... Rb2 or ... Ne4+, must win quickly.

Instead, Chigorin retreated 23 ... Qa6?, allowing 24 R x h6!. Then
24 ... Q x h6 25 Q x f6 b x c3 26 Na3! would have set a new trap. On 26 ...
c x b2+ 27 Kd2 Q x a3 White plays 28 Q x h6 and mates. (Had Chigorin
studied the position more thoroughly he surely would have seen that 26 ...
R x b2 27 Q x h6 R x c2+ must win for him, e.g., 28 N x c2 Rb8 29 Rh1 Rh1+!
30 K x b1 Qa2+ etc.)

Nevertheless, as time control approached, Chigorin replied to 24 R x h6
with 24 ... b x c3! 25 Rdh1 g x h6 26 R x h6 c x b2+??. Again he missed an
easy win (26 ... Qa1+ 27 Bb1 c x b2+ 28 Kd2 Q x b1 and the queen
retreats for defense).

Marshall played 27 Kd2! and Black suddenly was lost (27 ... bl[N]+
28 Ke1). The game ended with 27 ... Ne4+ 28 B x e4 B x e4 29 Qh8
mate, but 28 ... f6 would have been just as futile because of 29 Rh8+! Kf7
30 Qc7+ or 29 ... Kg7 30 Qc7+ Rf7 31 Rh7+.

Marshall–Lasker, Fourteenth match game, 1923

1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 Bf5 3 c4 e6 4 Ne3 c6 5 e3 Nd7 6 Bd3 B x d3 7 Q x d3
Ngf6 8 0-0 Bd6 9 e x d5? e x d5 10 e4 d x e4 11 N x e4 Be7 12 Ng3
0-0 13 N f5 N x f5 14 Ne5! N x e5 15 d x e5 Kh8 16 Qg3 Rg8 17 b3
Qd7 18 Qf3 f6 19 e4? Q x e6 20 Rb2 Rg6 21 Re1 Qf7 22 Re4 Bf5
23 Rh4 Rad8 24 Qh3 Qg6 25 Nd4 Re4!

After this Black gradually takes over the board.

26 Ne6 R x h4 27 Q x h4 Re8 28 N x f8 R x f8 29 Bd4 b6 30 Re1 Re8
31 f3 Re2 32 Bf2 R x a2 33 g3 Qd3 34 Qh3 h6 35 Qc8+ Kh7
36 Q x c6 Q x f3 37 Rh1 Q x b3 38 Qc1 Ne3 39 Kg2 Qd5+ 40 Kh3
Ne4 41 Qf4 Ra4!

After 41 ... Ra4

Three pawns down and about to be taken apart by 42 ... Ng5+, any
cold modern grandmaster would resign here. But Marshall belonged to the school
that said you play on if there is any hope whatsoever.
42 Rd1!! Ng5+

After 42 ... Qxd1 or 42 ... Nxf2 43 Qxf2 Qxd1, White hopes for a draw with checks at f5 and e6. (Of course a timely ... g6 stops the perpetual check.) The game now verges on the ridiculous. What hope could possibly exist for saving this game?

43 Kh4 Rxf4+ 44 gxh4 Qxf4 45 hxg6 Qf3 46 Bg3 h5 47 Kh3 Kg6

Here it lies: Marshall had found the only stalemate possibility (47 ... fxg6??). Once that was erased, he resigned.

This is the tawdry, amateurish side of swindling, which Tarrasch regarded as so unbecoming of a gentleman and professional who dealt regularly with other gentleman-professionals. But Marshall believed that a player had a duty to resist as much as possible. The greater the resistance, the greater an opponent becomes vulnerable to turning a win into a draw. It also enabled you to beat a tired opponent in a drawn endgame.

In the first game of his first match with Janowsky, Marshall was badly outplayed in the opening. A few inexactitudes by the Frenchman, however, allowed Marshall to equalize and then build a small advantage into the eighth hour of play.

After 60 Rb4

100. Marshall-Janowsky, first match game, 1905

Janowsky's pawn is further advanced but is not easily freed from the bottleneck on the h-file. He saw that 60 ... Kg7?? loses to 61 Rb5+, 62 Rxb8 and 63 Kf3. But Black can draw with 60 ... Kg2 followed by 61 ... Rh1+.

On 61 Rh2+ Kg1 the threat of 62 ... Ra3 63 Rb4 h3 would force a draw. And on 61 Rg4+, Black's king can go to f3. But ...

60 ... Kg1?? 61 Rg4+! Kh2 62 Kh2!

The Black king is now trapped and it will cost at least three tempi to free him.

62 ... Kh1 63 a5 Rh2+ 64 Kf1 Rh3

A good illustration of the choices in swindling. Had Marshall been sitting on the other side of the table he might have played 64 ... h3 because it sets an ingenious trap (65 a6? Rf1+ 66 Kxf1 h2 and stalemate next move). But, on the other hand, 64 ... h3 would shorten the game if White finds the relatively simple defense 65 Rh4. With 64 ... Rh3, Janowsky plays the only move with a chance of reaching move 70.

65 a6 Rf3+ 66 Ke2 Ra3 67 Rb4+ Kg2 68 Rh6

And Black resigned on the eighty-second move.

This was Marshall's secret weapon throughout his career: He strove to make winning difficult for his opponent. Others may have become deflated by reverses in the opening or middlegame, but rarely did Marshall. At the British Empire Club tournament of 1927 he found himself quite adrift on the White side of a relatively new opening devised by his opponent. That he lost a piece by the fifteenth move was not that shocking. But then the real game began:

101. Bogoiordan Defense

Marshall-Bogolyubov, London 1927

1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 e6 3 c4 Bb4+ 4 Bd2 Bxd2+ 5 Nbxd2 0-0 6 Qc2 d6 7 e3 Nc6 8 a3 e5 9 d5 Ne7 10 Bd3 Bg4 11 h3 Bf3 12 Nf3 Re8 13 0-0 a5 14 b4 h6 15 Nh4?? e4!!

Now 16 Bxe4 allows 16 ... Nxe4 17 Qxe4 Ng6 and the knight on h4 is lost.

16 Be2 g5! 17 Qb2 Kg7! 18 f3! g×h4 19 f×e4 Ng6 20 b×a5 Rxa5?

With natural moves Black is losing control of the game. He should never have set up the pin along the b2-g7 diagonal at move 17, and here he should have undone it with 20 ... Re5! followed by ... Nh7-g5.

21 Rf2 Ne5 22 Ra1 N×c4 23 R×f7+ Kg8 24 R(7)f4 Ng3 25 R(1)f2 Qg5 26 Ba1! R×a8 27 Be6+ Kf8 28 Kh2 h5?

After this (better 28 ... Nh5 and 29 ... Ng7 according to Raymond Keene) White has the better of it, e.g., 28 ... b6 29 Rg4 Q×c3 30 R×h4 Kh7 31 Rf6 or 29 ... Qc7 30 Rf7 Qd8? 31 Rgg7! A remarkable comeback.
29 Rg4 Qe7 30 Re7 Qxf7! 31 Bxf7 Rf8 32 Re4 Kg7 33 Be6 Nf1+ 34 Kg1 Nxe3 35 Qf2 Rx e4 36 Qxe4 Rx a3 37 Qxb4 Kg6 38 Qc7
Ra2 Draw

Marshall's own words may be the best definition: "The title of 'swindle' is one of derision, which has been applied to my victories over certain disappointed gentlemen," he wrote in Marshall's Chess Swindles. "When their theories went smash in actual play with a man not tied to book chess, the explanation was that the unexpected moves was a 'Marshall swindle.'"

Chapter Ten

The Great Tournaments

The world during the years 1910, 1911, 1912 seemed intent on drawing a line of demarcation between the new century and the one past. Woodrow Wilson was elected the first Democratic president in twenty years. The Manchu Dynasty fell in China. King Edward VII died, as did Leo Tolstoy and Mark Twain. Igor Stravinsky infuriated music traditionalists with his suite The Firebird. Americans celebrated the first Father's Day and laughed at the first modern comic strip, Krazy Kat.

* * *

Much of what we associate with modern tournament chess began to evolve in the years just before World War I. Before that time the game was played, even at the highest levels, largely by amateurs who came to the board with an amateur approach. Even basic competitive rules had remained unclear for decades.

At Vienna 1908, for example, a major dispute occurred in the game Maróczy-Tartakower over whether a player was required to move a touched piece even if he had said "j'adoube" (I adjust—i.e., re-center the piece upon the square) beforehand. At the Russian National Tournament of 1908, a key game in the fight for first place between Rubinstein and Alapin was turned from an Alapin loss into a forfeit win when it was discovered that Rubinstein had helped Alapin's opponent analyze an adjourned position. Any analysis of an adjourned game was forbidden, but analysis with an opponent of a rival for first place was considered a gross breach of 1908 ethics.

During the years 1910–14, however, many of the basic elements of international tournament life, including prepared opening innovations, grandmaster draws, hospitality and travel expenses for the players, even the grandmaster title, became part—and soon an entrenched part—of international tournament life. Marshall played in more than a dozen events.
during this period that helped establish traditions which, like it or not, we have lived with ever since.

**Hamburg 1910**

In his book on swindles, Marshall argued against heavy opening preparation.

I believe the player should be prepared for every emergency and should play no favorites. ... Let him not place his reliance ... upon any preconceived notion or advance "frame-up." ... The player who relies upon things he has "cooked up" beforehand to win his game is sure to lose ... that power of self-reliant, ever-ready and active over-the-board thought and command, which is at once both the great value and the chief source of success in the noble game of chess.

But in his notes Marshall well remembered how at Cambridge Springs 1904 Pillsbury "told me he would beat Lasker in a variation he had remembered for eight years." Marshall wrote that he just smiled at the time. Years later he realized, however, that he had to prepare openings—what the masters then called "closet analysis"—well in advance. He knew, for example, that he would be facing Akiba Rubinstein, Karl Schlechter, Siegbert Tarrasch and the others repeatedly over the next several years and would need something new to show them over the board. His most spectacular success with a prepared weapon came at the Seventeenth Congress of the German Chess Union in July 1910.

The Hamburg congress drew more than 130 players to what was later recognized as one of the greatest of pre-World War I tournaments. This was the tournament in which a 17-year-old Russian student, who had broken his leg in an accident, had to be carried into the playing hall by servants each round: Such was the international debut of Alexander Alekhine. Hamburg was also the tournament in which Siegbert Tarrasch objected to permitting Frederick Yates to enter the 17-man top section since the Englishman possessed "no qualification whatsoever that justifies his inclusion." Naturally the only win Yates registered at Hamburg was over Tarrasch.

Marshall had his own revenge against the doctor. During his year's sabbatical in New York he had carefully prepared a new line of assault in the Max Lange Attack. Edward Lasker, then a 24-year-old student, met Marshall at lunch one day and recalled the American's polyglot explanation of what happened in his morning round: "Habe Sie gesehen mein parti mit Tarrasch? Nein Ich habe ihn just defeated! ... My own inven-

**102. Two Knights Defense, Max Lange Attack**

*Marshall-Tarrasch, Hamburg 1910*

1 c4 e5 2 d4 exd4 3 Nf3

Marshall was a shrewd student of opening transposition and often used this sequence to avoid, for example, the Petroff Defense or the position 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 Bc4 Bc5, when 4 d4, hoping for 4 ... exd4 5 0-0 Nf6 6 e5, can be met by 4 ... B x d4 Tarrasch heads right into the infamous—and heavily analysed—variation named after the German master Max Lange, then considered trepdy but innocuous against precise play. "Tarrasch evidently didn't dream that I had an improvement up my sleeve," Marshall wrote in My Fifty Years.

3 ... Nc6 4 Bc4 Bc5 5 0-0 Nf6

The older Paulsen defense of 5 ... d6 6 c3 Bg4 was relatively rare, but Janowsky had used it to great effect in his 1908 match with Marshall. Black's king appeared to be in danger after 7 Qb3 B x f3 8 B x f7+ K x f8 9 B x g8 R x g8 10 x f3 Q d7 11 Kh1 Re8 12 Rgl d x c3 13 Rg5 Ne5 14 Rf4+ Kc7. But after 15 N x c5? c6 16 Rf5 Kg8 17 Bg5+ Kc8 18 Na4 Rg8 the Frenchman consolidated and quickly won.

6 e5 d5 7 exf6 d x c4 8 Re1+ Bb6 9 Ng5 Qd5 10 Ne3 Qf5 11 Nce4 0-0-0 12 N x e6 f x e6 13 g4 Q e5 14 f x g7 Rhg8 15 Bh6!

**After 15 Bh6**

This was Marshall's new idea: He prepares to lock up matters with g4-g5, thereby safeguarding his king and threatening to pillage the kingside with Nh6.

15 ... d3 16 c3 Bd6?

After the game Paul Saladin Leonhardt joined the postmortem to point out the merits of 16 ... d2! Later in the year he and Marshall played a match in
Hamburg and Marshall tried 17 Re2 Bd6 18 Qh1 Rd3 19 Rd1 but only drew after 19 ... Ndb8 20 g5 Nf7 21 Qg2 (21 Ng3!? N×h6 22 g×h6 Q×h5.

17 f4 Qd5 18 Qf3 Be7 19 g5 Qf5 20 Ng3 Qf7 21 Qg4 Rd3

It wasn't too late for 21 ... d2, when 22 R×e6 allows Black to queen, and 22 Re4, as in the game, can be met by 22 ... Bc5+ 23 Kh1 Ne7 (and ... Nf5!).

22 Re4! b5 23 a4 a6 24 a×b5 a×b5 25 Kg2! Ndb8 26 Qf3 Qg6
27 Rd4! e6 28 R×d8+ K×d8 29 Q×e6 Resigns

"The most admirable feature in this important game," wrote Tartakower, "is the manner in which White keeps the whole board under control; consolidation on the right wing (15 Bb6), breakthrough on the left (23 a4) and decisive sacrifice in the center (28 R×d8+)."

The influence of this widely published and studied game was enormous and the Max Lange virtually disappeared from master chess after this game as more and more players with the Black pieces avoided it.

The new United States Champion could not, however, change his repertoire constantly and it was inevitable that opponents would prepare surprises for him. In the following he uses his now-familiar Petroff against Walter John. At Hamburg, John, a relatively obscure master, nearly earned the distinction of killing the tournament leader. During his game with Aaron Nimzovich he became outraged by Nimzovich's supercilious behavior and challenged him to a duel. The duel failed to materialize after Nimzovich insisted on the choice of weapons — fists, rather than pistols. (Two decades later at Bled 1931 Nimzo again back down, this time when challenged to a duel by the 61-year-old Maróczy.)

103. Petroff Defense, Marshall Variation

**John—Marshall, Hamburg 1910**

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 N×e5 d6 4 Nf3 N×e4 5 d4 d5 6 Bd3 Bg4 7 0-0 Bd6 8 c4 0-0

Marshall heads for his gambit line of 9 c×d5 f5 10 Nc3 Nd7?!?, which he used to defeat Spielmann at this tournament. John insists on a choice of weapon, and picks the wrong one.

9 c5? Be7 10 h3 B×f3 11 g×f3?!?

White realizes now that the intended 11 Q×f3 allows 11 ... Ne6 and if 12 Be3, then 12 ... Bf6 is dubious for him, as is 12 B×e4 d×e4 13 Q×e4 Q×c4, which costs a pawn. To make the best of a bad situation he sets this trap: 11 g×f3 Ng5 12 f4 N×h3+? 13 Kg2 Qd7 14 Qh5.

11 ... Ng5 12 f4 Ne6 13 Bf5 Nc6 14 Be3 Bf6 15 B×e6 f×e6
16 Qd3? B×d4! 17 B×d4 R×f4

After 17 ... R×f4

True, such a position shouts out for a sacrifice but Black still had to work out the variations. For example, 18 Be3 Rf3 now leads to a winning attack, e.g., 19 Kg2 Qh4! 20 K×f3 N×e5+ or 20 Rh1 d4 21 Qc4 Q×e4 22 Nd2 R×f2+ and wins.

18 Be3 d4 19 Bd2 Ne5 20 Qg3 Nf3+ 21 Kg2 Rf6 22 Q×f3

Since 22 ... Qd5 and 22 ... Rg5 were on hand, White places his faith in the theoretical superiority of three pieces over a queen.

22 ... R×f3 23 K×f3 Qd5+ 24 Kg3 Rf8 25 f3 Qe5+ 26 Kb2

Or 26 Kg2 Rf6 followed by a rook check.

26 ... Qh2+ 27 Ke1 Q×h3 28 f4 e5 29 Na3 e×f4 30 Kf2

A discouraging move to play but 30 Nc4 Qd3 is just as bad.

30 ... Qh2+ 31 Ke1 d3 White resigns

John managed only a draw in the four games he played against Marshall over the years. Hamburg offered such minor players an opportunity to excel. Alekhine, then among the unknown talents, scored a creditable 8½ points and established a reputation. He finished just behind Marshall, who would have done better had he not lost to a former match opponent, Dus-Chotimirsky from Kiev.

104. Albin Countergambit

**Dus—Chotimirsky—Marshall, Hamburg 1910**

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e5 3 d×e5 d×e4 4 Nf3 Nc6 5 Nbd2 Bg4 6 h3 Bh5 7 a3 a5
8 Qa4 Qd7 9 Qb5!
The queen is powerfully posted here, where it pressures b7 and c6.

9 ... Bg6 10 g3 Nge7 11 Nb3 a4 12 Ne5 Qc8 13 Bd2!

Avoiding the trap 13 Q×b7 Q×b7 14 N×b7 Nc8 and the knight cannot escape.

13 ... b6 14 N×d4 b×c5 15 N×c6 Be4 16 N×e7+ K×e7 17 f3 Ke6? 18 f×e4! c6 19 Qb6 Ra6 20 h4!

Not every Marshall swindle succeeded. Here he tries to trap the queen with c6 but meets a startling refutation.

Marshall, with a handful of local masters such as Oscar Chajes and Charles Jaffe and occasional visitors such as Janowsky and Duras, in the background.

Despite the drubbing he suffered during their match two years before, Marshall did respectfully against the Cuban. The outcome of these North American events was usually decided by their personal duel. In the 1911 tournament they drew with one another, and also got nicked for half- and full points by the minor players. Marshall gave up a draw with Alfred Kreymborg, a noted poet, and to the visiting Paul Johner, while Capablanca was upset by Brooklyn Chess Club champion Roy T. Black. In the end, the difference between first and second prize turned out to be their games with Jaffe. Marshall beat Jaffe, while Capablanca could only draw with him.

105. Staunton Gambit
Marshall-Jaffe, New York National Tournament 1911

1 d4 f5 2 e4 f×e4 3 Ne3 Nf6 4 Bg5 g6 5 f3 e3?

The defense 5 ... d5 6 f×e4 d×e4 7 Bc4 and now 7 ... Nc6 8 Bb5 was discredited in a Vidmar-Spielmann game played this year. White now regains his pawn and pressures the e-file.

6 Qd3 Bg7 7 Q×e3 d5 8 0–0–0 Ne6 9 Bb5 Qd7 10 Nge2 0–0 11 Nf4 e6 12 h4 Ne5 13 h5!

There was no convenient defense to 13 ... h6 anyway, so White sacrifices.

13 ... h6 14 N×g6 h×g5 15 h6! Bh8 16 Q×g5 Qd8i 17 h7+ Kf7 18 Qh6 Nd6 19 g4! Bd7 20 B×c6 b×c6 21 Ne5+ Ke8 22 g5 Nf7

Black must give back a piece to stop g5–g6–g7 (22 ... B×c5 23 d×e5 Nf5 24 Q×f8+ or 22 ... Nh5 23 Qh5+ and 24 g6).

23 N×f7 R×f7 24 g6 Rg7 25 Q×g7! B×g7 26 h8(Q)+ B×h8 27 R×h8+ Ke7 28 R×d8 R×d8 (see diagram)

Even if he loses the advanced g-pawn, White should still win thanks to the good-knight-versus-bad-bishop endgame. But care is required and the rest of the game is a stellar example of Marshall’s tactical technique.

29 Rgl Rg8 30 Ne2 Kf6 31 Nf4 e5 32 Nb5+ Kf5 33 d×c5 Be8 34 f4! B×g6 35 Rg5+ Ke4 36 Nf6+ K×f4 37 Rgl Rf8

Black was out of useful moves (37 ... Rg7 38 Nh5+).
For 28... R×d8

38 R×g6 Kf5 39 Nh7? Rf7 40 R×e6! R×h7 41 Ra6 Ke4 42 Ra4+ Ke5 43 c3 c6 44 Kc2 Rg7 45 Rh4+ Ke6 46 Rh8 d4

Desperation is Marshall's explanation of this move, pointing out 46... Rc7 48 Rd8 and 49 Rd6+ followed by the invasion of the White king. In the game White played 47 c×d4 Kd5 48 Rd8+ Ke4 49 Kc3 and Black conceded on the sixty-first move.

New York 1911 was not as strong as a European international but it was, nevertheless, the strongest American event since Cambridge Springs. Marshall's 10-2 score certified his status as superior to the other Americans— but Capablanca was another matter entirely. Within days of the end of the tournament both men set sail for Europe, for Capa's first tournament abroad and for Marshall's first trip to Spain.

San Sebastian 1911

Once again a gambling casino had decided to promote itself with a chess tournament and this time it was the Gran Casino of San Sebastian in the Spanish Basque country. A resort town in a shell-shaped Bay of Biscay inlet, San Sebastian had grown up from an obscure rustic village to one of Europe's grand getaways. It had come into high fashion after King Alfonso XIII built his summer palace there.

With the Monte Carlo and Ostende tournaments now only a memory, the Gran Casino's annual events briefly assumed the mantle of Europe's super-tournament. The casino hired Jacques Mieses to organize matters during the slow February-March tourist season and decided to provide lavishly for the players: for the first time all entrants in an international tournament had their travel expenses and living costs provided for. A total budget of 50,000 French francs was rumored.

Invitations were extended only to those masters who had won at least two fourth prizes (or better) in major events. Capablanca, with Marshall's backing, became an exception. As at Hamburg, where Tarrasch objected to the presence of Yates, Capa's admission was protested. The protestor was Osip Bernstein, who promptly lost to the Cuban in the first round.

The competition for the casino's generous prizes was exceptionally fierce. In fact, after the 14 rounds and four weeks of play, Durus had finished next to last but was only 5½ points out of first place. Marshall's play at San Sebastian was far from flawless but nonetheless impressive in spots:

**106. Petroff Defense, Kaufman Variation**

**Maroczy-Marshall, San Sebastian 1911**

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 N×e5 d6 4 Nf3 N×e4 5 c4

The chief idea of the then-in-fashion 5 c4 is to exploit ... d7-d5 if Black advances, e.g., 5... d5 6 Nc3 N×c3 7 d×c3 c6 8 Qd4.

5... Be7 6 Nc3 N×c3 7 d×c3 Nc6 8 Bd3 Ne5! 9 N×e5 d×c5 10 Qc2 Bg4 11 0-0 Be6 12 Re1 B×c1 13 Ra×c1 Qg5

Marshall has developed accurately and challenges White to show what he has as compensation for the doubled pawns he accepted at move seven.

14 Re3 0-0-0 15 Rael f6 16 b4 Rd7 17 c5 Rfd8 18 c6!

In view of Black's domination of the open files, White's best chance now lies in this attack (18... b×c6 19 Qa4).

18... Rd6 19 c×b7+ Kh8 20 a×b7 Bd5 21 Rg3 Qf4! 22 B×h7 B×b7 23 h3 Rd2 24 Qf5

**After 24 Qf5**

Now the simple 24... g5 favors Black. But Marshall wants more.

24... Q×g3?? 25 f×g3 R×g2+ 26 Kf1 Rdd2! 27 Re4
The threat was 27... Rh2 and 28... Rh1 mate. Of course, 27 Qg4 with the idea of 28 Be4 allows mate in one.

27... Bxe4  28 Qxe4 Rdf2+  29 Ke1 Ra2  30 Kf1 Ra2+  31 Ke1 Ra2  32 Kf1 Rgf2+??

This is Marshall's familiar refusal to take a certain draw (30... Ra2f2+) even when deep in material debt.

33 Kg1 Rfe2  34 Qb1

Forced but sufficient to require Black to repeat moves now (since 37... Rh1+ 38 Kxg2 Rxb1 39 Bxb1 loses).

34... Rg2+  35 Kh1 Rh2+  36 Kg1 Rag2+  37 Kf1 Rh2  38 Qe4 Draw

Retrospective rating analysis indicates that during the years of 1910 through 1914, Marshall was tied with Alekhine as the sixth best player in the world. The top five were Lasker, Capablanca, Rubinstein, Schlechter and Milner-Vidmar. Marshall had a difficult time against all six throughout his career but at San Sebastian he managed to score one of his easiest victories over Vidmar.

107. Queen's Gambit Declined, Lasker Defense

Marshall-Vidmar, San Sebastian 1911

1 d4 d5  2 c4 c6  3 Nc3 Nf6  4 Bg5 Be7  5 e3 0-0  6 Nf3 Ne4  7 Bxc7 Qxc7  8 cxd5 Nxe3  9 bxc3 e5xd5  10 Qb3!

By now Marshall had lost his earlier fondness for 8 Bd3 and found that White can obtain an edge against the Lasker Defense by putting as much pressure on d5 as the traffic can bear.

10... Rd8  11 c4 c6  12 Bd3 Bc6  13 c5 b6

Offering to free his game for a pawn (14 e5xe6 a6xe6 15 Qxe6 Nd7). This is kind of gambit the young Marshall of 1901-3 would have counted on to save Black.

14 Rcl1 Qe7  15 0-0 bxc5  16 Rxc5 Nd7  17 Re3 Nf8  18 Rfc1 Rd6  19 Ne5 Bd7  20 Qc2 Rh6  21 h3 Rc8  22 Re5!

The natural outgrowth of White's last eight moves. He has Ba6, Rxe5 and Nb5 in mind.

22... Ne6  23 Nxd7 Qxd7  24 Rxc6 Rf6  25 Bf5 Rf6??  26 Bxh7+ Kh8  27 Bf5 g6  28 Bxe6 fxe6  29 Rc7 Qd6  30 f4 Resigns

It was at San Sebastian that Marshall made endgame history, opening a new and mysterious chapter in rook-and-pawn theory. After 57 moves of a Tarrasch Defense Queen's Gambit Declined, Rubinstein (Black) had won two pawns and nursed them to this:

After 57... a4


Almost nothing was known about this exception to the general rule that two extra pawns generally win. (A previous example, Albin-Weiss, Vienna 1890, drew little attention.) With a rook pawn and a bishop pawn the winning task is much more difficult since the defender's king can block both pawns, as Marshall continued to do here with 58 Kh2.

Rubinstein saw that a "pass" move such as 58... Rb8 would allow 59 Rh4+ e4 60 Rh7 and Black cannot make progress. So, he played the natural 58... a3+? 59 Ka2 Ka4, shielding his king (60 Rh4+ Rh4).

But Marshall found an active but effective policy: 60 Rcl! Ra5 61 Rh1l! after which Black was stopped. The Pole tried 61... c4 62 Rb8 Rc5 63 Ra8+ Kb4 64 Bxc3 a3 and conceded the draw after 64... c3 65 Bc3+ Kc4 66 Rh8.

The subsequent analysis—seeking to find the forced win that virtually all fellow masters felt must be there—led to the discovery of an intricate variation that begins (after 58 Kh2) with 58... Ka5+. Then on 59 Ka2 Black can push the c-pawn: 59... c4 60 Rh8 c3 61 Rc8 Kb4 and 62... Rc5, or 61 Ka3 Rc5 62 Rh1 Kh5 63 Rgl Rd5 64 Rh1 Ke4 65 Rgl Rd2 66 Rh1 c2 67 Kh2 a3+ 68 Kc1 Rd1+ 69 Rxcl cxd1(Q)+ 70 Kxcl a2 and wins.

On the other hand, if 59 Ke3, then Black wins with 59... a3 60 Rh8 Ka4 61 Ra8+ Ka5 62 Rh8 Ra5+ 63 Ke2 RB5 64 Ra8+ Kb4 65 Rh8 c3 66 Rg8 Ra5 etc.

The family of rook, BP and RP positions is so notoriously complex that Mikhail Botvinnik, born the year this game was played, decided that he must master it before the 1948 world championship tournament because he didn't believe he would have to perform it.
Marshall's other fine endgame win was so subtle that it wasn't discovered how his opponent could have drawn until more than half a century had passed:

109. Petroff Defense, Kaufman Variation

Tieckmann—Marshall, San Sebastian 1911

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 N×e5 d6 4 Nf3 N×e4 5 c4 Bc7 6 Nc3 N×c3 7 d×c3 Nc6 8 Bf4

Better than Maroczy's 8 B×d3, which allowed the equalizing ... Ne5 maneuver.

8 ... Bg4 9 Be2 Qd7 10 Qd2 0–0–0 11 0–0–0 h6 12 h3 Be6 13 Nd4 N×d4 14 c×d4 Qa4

Black would have no fear after 15 K×h1 (15 ... B×c4? 16 b3) and so White tries to squeeze something out of his apparent advantages in space.

15 b3? Qa6 16 Kbl Bf6 17 a5 Bd7 18 Qc2 Rfe8 19 Be3 Qa5 20 Bd4?

The beginning of a bad plan, in the mistaken belief that by exchanging (as it turns out, exchanging the wrong pair of bishops), White's spatial edge will grow. Actually, it declines since Black now instructively occupies the dark squares.

20 ... B×d4 21 R×d4 Re5 22 Qd2 Qb6 23 Rdl Ra8 24 Bbl a5! 25 Re1 Kb8 26 Rf4 Bf5+ 27 K×b2 g×f5 28 Rf3 Bg6 29 R×c3 R×f1 30 h3 Qc5 31 Rdl R×f5 32 Qd4 Q×d4 33 R×d4 Qe4 34 R×e4 Re1 35 R×e1 R×e1 36 R×d1 R×d1 37 Re1 Re1 38 Be2 Kb6 39 Kc3 Ke5 40 a3 Rcl+ 41 Kb2 Rgl 42 Bdl Rel

After 42 ... Rel

![Diagram]

Black here begins a highly unusual, almost unique device. It's a forcing three-move sequence that he can repeat as often as he wishes. Each time the sequence gains a tempo and Marshall uses each tempo to improve his position slightly, i.e., by advancing his kingside pawns to dark squares and preparing a break on the other wing. White can avoid the sequence only by allowing a losing exchange of pieces (43 Kc3 Re3+ 44 Kg2 Rdl and Black eventually invades with ... Bf1 or ... Kf2, or 43 Be2 B×c2 44 K×c2 a4! 45 Kb2 a×b3 46 K×b3 Re3+).

43 Be2 b5 44 Kc3 Re1+ 45 Kb2 Rgl 46 Bdl Rel+ 47 Be2 h4 48 Kc3 Rel+ 49 Kb2 Rgl 50 Bdl Rel+ 51 Be2 f6 52 Kc3 Rel+ 53 Kb2 Rgl 54 Bdl Rel 55 Be2 c6 56 Kc3 Rel+ 57 Kb2 Rbl+ 58 Kc3 b5!

It's becoming clear now: 59 ... b4+ and mate is threatened and that forces:

59 b4+ a×b4 60 a×b4+ R×b4 61 d×c6 b×c4 62 Rd5+! K×c6!

This move is the key to getting the king to f2 or g3. Now 63 K×b4 K×d5 64 B×c4+ Kd4 and wins.

63 R×d6+ K×d6 64 K×c4 Ke5 65 K×c4 Bf7+?

Subsequent analysis revealed that 65 ... Bbl, sealing off the White king, wins (66 Bb5 Ba4+ 67 Kc5 Kf4 or 66 Bb4 Kf4 67 Kd4 f3). Now Teichmann gets a second chance.

66 Kd3 Kf4 67 Bf1 Kg3

This is the position Marshall had in mind at move 58. He can win now only through an advance of the gpawn that will leave him in a position to promote his final pawn, the b-pawn.

68 Ke3 Bd5 69 Ke2 f5 70 Ke3 Be6 71 Ke2 g4 72 h×g4 f×g4 73 Ke3 Bd7 74 f×g4 B×g4 75 Ke4??

With 75 B×b5 K×g2 76 Kh4! White can draw since his bishop will permanently seize the queening diagonal or prevent the pawns from reaching h3 (76 ... Bf3 77 Bd7 or 77 Bf1+).

75 ... Be8 76 Ke3 Bd7! White resigns

The difference between this situation and what could have occurred at move 75 is revealed in 77 Kd2 Kf2 78 Be4 K×g2 79 Ke1 Kg1! 80 Bf1 Be6 (pass) 81 Be2 h3 and Black regains control of the diagonal with ... h2 and ... Bh3–g2.

San Sebastian 1911 was José Capablanca's first great tournament victory, with a 9½-4½ score. Close behind were Rubinstein and Vidmar at 9. But Marshall, who beat Vidmar and drew with the rest of the prize-winners, scored a quite respectable, 8½-5½, and finished ahead of such greats as Nimzovich, Schlechter, Tarrasch, Teichmann, Janowsky, Maroczy, Bernstein and Spielmann. He lost only one game, to Duran.
Two other, minor events that year stood out on the Marshall family calendar. In April, after a vacation at Biarritz, Frank played in the eleventh annual cable match. Since he found himself on the wrong side of the Atlantic Marshall stopped in London on his way home from San Sebastian and played Amos Burn over the board. Burn won in 36 moves and the 6-4 British victory ended the Newsman competition.

Also, it was during that year that Marshall tied for first, with A.E. van Foreest, in a four-player event at Amsterdam that was best known for the end of his game with J.F.S. Esser.

After ... d3+

White retreated his king to d1 and as Marshall lit his cigar he elbowed his rook off the board. When spectators tried to retrieve it, Marshall said, "Never mind," pushed his c-pawn, adding, "I shan't need the rook."

Esser studied the position and the various threatened pushes of the Black pawns—and resigned before the rook returned to the board.

In June Marshall returned to match play with a seven-game series against Leonhardt in Hamburg. Leonhardt was at the peak of his career, as shown by his crushing defeat of Nimzovich 4½-½ in a match played that same year. But like Erich and Wilfred Cohn, Rudolf Swiderski, Hugo Stüchting, and Paul Lipke, he was one of several strong young German masters at the turn of the century who had great futures that, unfortunately, were never realized. Leonhardt failed to live up to the expectations of 1907, when he took third place at the first great Karlsbad tournament.

The Leonhardt-Marshall match began quietly with two draws and a Marshall win, in which he anticipated Tartakower's Catalan by more than twenty years by playing 1 d4 d5 2 g3?! But Marshall lost the next game in an uncharacteristically defensive Classical Variation of the French. With the match tied and his opening play appearing too cautious, the American adopted an entirely different approach:

110. Muzio Gambit

Marshall—Leonhardt, fifth match game, 1911

1 e4 e5 2 f4 exf4 3 Nf3 g5 4 Be4 g4 5 Ne3 d5 6 B×d5 g×f3 7 Q×f3 Nf6 8 Q×f4 Bc7??

Leonhardt was regarded as one of the opening authorities of the day, his 1909 book on the Ruy Lopez being particularly well received. Nevertheless, theory was still in its infancy in 1911, the year the first edition of Modern Chess Openings appeared, and even the best "book" players had major flaws in their repertoire. Leonhardt’s move above is almost a losing blunder. Marshall felt 8 ... Bg7 was better—and Leonhardt later thought it "necessary."

9 0-0 0-0 10 b4!

Bolder—and better—than 10 b3 because the latter could be met by 10 ... c6 11 Bc4 b5!, driving the bishop off the key diagonal.

10 ... a5 11 Bb2! a×b4 12 Ne2 Ra6 13 Qh6!

After 13 Qh6

"This strong move," wrote the loser, "shows the height of which Marshall's imagination is capable." On 13 ... Ne8 White mates in four with 14 Q×f8+.

13 ... Kh8 14 Nf4 Rg8 15 B×f7 Bf8

On 15 ... Qf8 16 Ng6+ would have been a favorable ending but 17 Q×f8 might be better. Leonhardt said that against Marshall's next move "there is no herb in the pharmacopeia of chess."

16 Qh5 Rg4 17 Ne6! Bg7 18 B×f6 Resigns

Marshall then carefully drew the final two games and won the match 4-3. Considering his tournament score against Leonhardt was an overwhelming 9 wins, 8 draws and only 1 loss, this was something of a disappointment.
The U.S. champion took the summer months quietly and arrived in Karlsbad in August for the second massive event organized by Victor Tietz. This time there were 26 masters invited, making it the largest international since the master section at Ostende 1907. It was here that Marshall for the first time played such up-and-coming masters as C.A. Rotlewi of Poland and Boris Kostić of Serbia.

Marshall’s first win came in the third round when Hans Fahrni, who had achieved a winning position in 15 moves, proceeded to blunder away a piece. The American won the next game against Rabinovich to join the leaders. But this was not Marshall’s tournament, as he returned the Fahrni gift point the following day against the 22-year-old Rotlewi, who would have one great year, 1911, and then abruptly retire because of ill health.

111. Queen’s Gambit Declined, Cambridge Springs Variation
Rotlewi–Marshall, Karlsbad 1911
1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 c4 e6 4 Nc3 Nbd7 5 Bg5 c6 6 e3 Qa5 7 Nd2 Bb4 8 Qc2 0–0 9 B×f6 N×f6 10 Bd3 Re8 11 0–0 e5!

The conservative 7 Nd2 and 9 B×f6 were intended to draw the sting from the Black ... Qa5 pin and also to discourage Black from isolating his e-pawn. But Marshall, despite his many successes against the isolated d-pawn in the Tarrasch Defense, was more willing than most of his rivals to accept the isolani if he received active piece play in return.

12 c×d5 e×d5 13 Nb3 Qd8 14 d×c5 R×e5 15 Ral1 Bg4 16 Be2 Qc7 17 Rd4 B×e2 18 Q×e2 B×c3 19 Rcl Ne4 20 b×c3 Ra×e8 21 e4 d×c4 22 Rd×c4 Qb6 23 Qd3 h6 24 Qd4 Qf6 25 Rc2

After 25 Rc2

25 ... Nd6?

Missing a fine attacking idea in 25 ... Qh4! so that 26 Q×a7 allows 26 ... R×f5 27 h3 Rg5 28 Kf1 Rf5. In the tournament book, Vidmar points out this neat variation in which White forces an exchange of rooks: 26 Re8 Kh7 27 R×e8 R×e8 28 Q×a7 Rd8 29 Nd4 Re8 30 g3 Qh5! 31 R×c8 Qd1+ 32 Kg2 Nd2 with "all sorts of winning chances."

The rest of the game was also instructive—but for Marshall, depressing. It showed how a desperate attack with limited resources can be defeated by a king march:

26 Re5 Nf5 27 R×e5! R×e5 28 Q×a7 Rd5 29 Rcl Nb4 30 Q×b7! Rg5 31 Re8+ Kh7 32 g3 Nf5+ 33 Kg2 Rf5 34 Qe4 g6 35 Qe8 Ne1+? 36 Kf1 R×f2+ 37 K×e1 Rf1+ 38 Kd2 Rf2+

No better is 38 ... Qb2+ 39 Kd3 Rd1+ 40 Ke4 Qe2+ 41 Kd4 Qe1+ 42 Ka5 and wins.

39 Kd3 Qf5+ 40 Kd4 Qf6+ 41 Kd5 Qf5+ 42 Kd6 Qf6+ 43 Kc7 Qc3+ 44 Kd7! Rd2+ 45 N×d2 Q×d2+ 46 Ke7 Q×e3+ 47 Kf8! Resigns

Before the midway point of this exceptionally long tournament Marshall registered two fine victories. One demonstrated his refined winning technique. Marshall once remarked that Karlsbad 1911 produced more fine games than any other and this was certainly one of them.

112. Queen’s Pawn Game
Marshall–Duras, Karlsbad 1911
1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 Nc3 e6 4 c4 c5 5 b3 c×d4 6 e×d4 Bb4 7 Bb2 Qa5 8 e3 Bb6

Black naturally saw 8 ... B×c3 9 B×c3 Q×c3 loses to 10 Rcl. The point of his sixth move was to block White’s b2–d4 diagonal so that Marshall would lack support for Ne5.

9 Bd3 Ne6 10 0–0 Bd7 11 Qc2 a6 12 Ne5

But not for long. Now 13 f4 and Ngf3 or f3 are coming dangerously fast so Black decides to turn attention back to c3.

12 ... Ba3? 13 Nde4!

Marshall now wins material (13 ... d×c4 14 N×c4 Q×c4 moves 15 B×a3). To avoid the clarity of a pawn-down middlegame, Duras seeks a muddier material situation by sacrificing his queen for rook and bishop.

13 ... d×c4 14 N×c4 B×b2 15 N×a5 B×a1 16 N×e6 B×e3 17 Ne5
In the confusion of the last five moves it was easy to overlook that White has just played Ne5-c4-a5-c6 and then back to e5!

17 ... Rfd8 18 Qe3 Nd5 19 Qg3 0–0 20 Rfd1 f6 21 Ng4 Bb5 22 Bc4! Ba5 23 B×d5! R×d5 24 Ne3 Rd7 25 Nc4 Bc7 26 Qe3

Once again excellent technique by the American champion who has turned attention from White's weak pawn (at d4) to Black's (at e6). Now 26 ... Re8 27 d5 makes it easier.

26 ... e5 27 d5 Rfd8 28 Qf3 Bc6 29 Ne3 e4 30 Q×e4 Bb6 31 Re1!

A fine defense to the threatened 31 ... B×e3, which now loses to 32 d×e6. Now 31 ... B×d5 32 N×d5 R×d5 33 Qe6+ costs a piece.

31 ... R×d5! 32 N×d5 R×d5 33 Qc4 Kf8 34 a4 a5 35 Qc2 h6 36 h4 Rc5 37 Qb5 Rc3 38 Qd1 Be5 39 Qd8+ Ke7 40 Q×a5 Rc2 41 Qc7+ Kf8 42 Qc8+ Ke7 43 Qe6+ Kf8 44 Qf5! Re3 45 Rdl Ke7 46 Qf4 Ba7 47 Rc1 Bb8 48 Qd2 R×h3 49 R×c6 b×c6 50 Qa2 Resigns

The other memorable first-half game was Marshall's shortest win ever against Rubinstein. The quiet Pole had already begun his odd descent into schizophrenia. After San Sebastian he told Mieses how he was constantly being followed by a fly that buzzed invisibly above his head—a fly no one else could see. Yet he could still play magnificent chess and 1912 would turn out to be his greatest year. Something just went drastically wrong in this game.

113. Queen's Gambit Declined, Tarrasch Defense

Marshall–Rubinstein, Karlsbad 1911

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 c5 4 c×e6 d×e6 5 Nf3 Nc6 6 g3 Nf6 7 Bg2 Be7 8 0–0 Bc6

Another quick Marshall win in this opening occurred against Juan Cozzo at Havana 1913 when Black tried 8 ... h6 9 Bf4 Be6 10 d×c5 B×c5 11 Rcl a6? and was crushed by 12 Ne5 Bb6 13 Qa4 Re8 14 N×e6 R×e6 15 N×d5 N×d5 16 N×d5 B×f4 17 Re8+. Resigns.

9 d×c5 B×c5 10 Bg5 0–0 11 Rcl Bc7?

A very natural error. By relieving the pin Black weakens control of the all-important d4 square. And that surrenders much of the active piece play he gets from 11 ... Bb6.

12 Nd4 N×d4 13 Q×d4

At Lodz 1908 Rubinstein had tried 13 ... Qa5 14 b4? Qa3 unsuccessfully against Marshall. He now tries an improvement.

13 ... h6

Now 14 Be3 Qa5? 15 Rfd1 Rf8 16 Qd4 favors White, as was shown in a playoff game from the Soviet championship in 1909. Marshall prefers to force an immediate crisis on d5, and it's not clear that his procedure is worse.

14 B×f6 B×f6 15 Qd3 Qa5?! 16 N×d5 B×b2 17 Rbl Rad8 18 Rfd1

Marshall felt 15 ... B×e3 or 17 ... B×d5 were better earlier. Here 18 ... Be5 looks right.

18 ... Q×a2?? 19 Qd2! B×d5 20 B×d5 Resigns

Marshall hovered about third place, behind Schlechter and Teichmann into the final weeks of Karlsbad. After 17 rounds he was two points out of first place, having won this methodical gem:

114. Queen's Gambit Declined, Orthodox Defense

Marshall–Salwe, Karlsbad 1911

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 c5 4 c×e6 d×e6 5 Nf3 Nf6 6 Bg5 Be7 7 Bd3 0–0 8 a3

Another favorite Marshall move in such positions. With 7 Rcl in place of 7 Bd3 and with ... Re8 in place of ... c6 we have the ninth game of the 1908 Marshall-Janowsky match. The American in 1908 played 8 a3, prompting Hoffer to comment, "It is difficult to explain the reason for this move. It is just probably that Marshall worked out some tricky variation, which, however, seems not to have come off" (Janowsky obtained a fine game with 8 ... a6 9 c×d5 e×d5 10 B×d5 N×f3 and won in 52 moves).

8 ... c5 9 b×a6 b×a6 10 c×d5 e×d5 11 Qe2 Bb7 12 Racl Ne4 13 B×d4 N×c3 14 R×c3 c4 15 Bf3 b5 16 h4!
White's plan, including capturing on c3 with a rook and allowing Black's pawn storm, had been a Pillsbury favorite. Now 16...Bxh4 loses the N at d7.

16...g6 17 Bxh7 Qxh7 18 Ne5 Qe6 19 Bh6 Rfe8 20 f4 f5

But here 20...f6! first seems more accurate. As Salwe plays, White builds his attack against g6 without interruption.

21 h5 Bf6 22 Rf3 Re7 23 Rg3 Bxe5 24 fxe5 a5 25 Bg5 Rf7 26 Bf6

Forcing an Exchange sacrifice. After 29 Re1 it looks like it will take White a long time to cash in on his slight material edge but, as in so many of his games from this year, Marshall's play makes it appear much easier than it was.

26...Rxf6 27 cfxe6 Qxe6 28 hgx6 hxg6 29 Re1 b4 30 Rf1 Rf8 31 a3 bxa3 32 Qel Qd6 33 Rh3 g5 34 Rh1! Qg6 35 Rh2! Qd6 36 Rf3 Bc8 37 Rh3 Ke7 38 Rh7+ Ke8 39 Rf1 Bc6 40 Qa1 Rh7 41 Qa8+ Ke7 42 Qa7+ Resigns

Marshall had one great chance at Karlsbad to challenge the leaders. It came in his very next round as he began playing one of his best games in years until...

115. Queen's Pawn Game
Alapin-Marshall, Karlsbad 1911

1 d4 d5 2 Bf4 Nf6 3 c4 e6 4 Nc3 dxc4 5 Bxc4 0-0 6 Bd3 c5 7 e4 Nf6 8 Nf3 Re8 9 0-0 Bxg3 10 hXg3 c5 11 Nf3 Nc6 12 dxc5 Rxe5 13 Nf3 Rh5!

With this last move Black reveals his do-or-die intention. Of course, Black is at least equal but his winning chances are much less than in this kingside attack.

14 Be2 Qb6! 15 Nh2 Rh6 16 Qe2 Bd7 17 Re1 Re8 18 Bf3 Re5! 19 Qb3 Qe7 20 Bxg5 Ba4 21 Qa4 Rfb8 22 Qa7 Rb6 23 Qxh7?

An error which should have lost. White had to play 23 Bf3. Note that on the previous move 22 Bxg7 would have allowed 22...g5! 23 Bf3 Rxh2 24 Kf1 g4 25 Bxg4 Qb8+ 26 Bf3 Qxh2 and wins.

23...Nxf1 24 Qa8+ Kg7 25 Kf1 Nb6! 26 Qe8
(see diagram)

Marshall could now have capped his dynamic middlegame with 26...Re5!, followed by playing on h2, which should win easily.

26...Rxb2? 27 Rxd8+ Rhl+ 28 Ke2 Kf6

The Great Tournaments

After 26 Qe8

There was no other defense to 29 Qh8 mate or 29 Qf8+. Now, however, 29 f4 Rxa1 30 g4 looked most dangerous. But White preferred:

29 Rad1 Rxdl 30 Rxd1 Qc8??

And this loses. With the rook re-entry 30...Rh5! 31 Rg4 Rd5! 32 Qh8+ Ke6 33 Re8+ Kd7 Black's king escapes.

As the game went, White won back his piece after which the rook-and-pawn endgame was quite hopeless (31 Rd6+ Kg7 32 Qf5+ Kg8 33 Rxh6 Bh5 34 Rh8) and Black resigned on move 48.

Marshall proceeded to lose badly the next round to Jolmer and then failed to win a very favorable game with Spielmann, leaving him 4½ points off the pace.

In the end Karlsbad 1911 was Teichmann's greatest event. Why he did so well has several explanations. One, from Edward Lasker, is that for the first time in his life Teichmann wasn't pressed for money, having been given a legacy before the tournament began. Another explanation, from Spielmann, is that tournament organizer Tietz did everything to ensure his success. Whatever the reason, Teichmann was two full points ahead of the massive field with two rounds to go, when he clinched first prize.

Marshall finished strongly, including winning the tournament's shortest game, against Dus-Chotimirsky in the final round. After 12 moves (1 d4 d5 2 e4 c5 3 Nf3 dxc4 4 e5 5 Ne5 Nc6 6 Nxd7 Nxd7 7 Bxg7 Bxg7 8 Bxc4 Ba6 9 Bxc4 Nxc4 10 Qf4 Ne6 11 Bg5 12 h3) the Ukrainian played 12...Qg8 and "quickly jumped up from his chair and went into the next room where most of the players were gathered. In his broken English he said, 'Poor Marshall dead'!"

"The players ran in and clustered around the table" Marshall wrote in My Fifty Years. They saw both 13...Qh2 mate and 13...Qxh2 mate were threatened. But they also the American's reply, 13 Qg4! "Oh, Oh, Marshall not dead,' Black bellowed as he threw over the pieces, 'I dead.'"

195
Playing some of his most memorable games in the three previous years, Marshall finished creditably, in a tie for fifth place with a score of 15½–9½. This earned him and Nimzovich 750 crowns apiece.

**San Sebastian 1912**

Again, under the direction of Mieses, the world’s "grand masters" were bid to San Sebastian but this time only 11 of them, including 9 from the previous year, compiled. It was decided to make the tournament a double-round event.

Once again Marshall began slowly, with ½–2½, being outplayed by Rubinstein in a first-round ending and allowing Nimzovich to consolidate after a Marshall knight sacrifice in the third round. As it turned out, Marshall would learn quite a bit from these games. Up until now his lifetime score against Rubinstein had been 10 losses to 6 wins, with 8 draws. For the rest of their careers, up to their final tournament meeting in 1930, Marshall would succeed in halting the trend and score 3 wins to only 3 losses, with 6 more draws. (Against Nimzo, his score would improve and only fall into the minus column after the disastrous match-tournament of New York 1927.)

Of the two players who entered the 1912 event but had not been there the year before, one was Julius Perlis of Vienna, who proceeded to score his finest result, a fifth place finish. That was a half point ahead of Marshall, whom he beat in the sixth round. The other newcomer was Léon Forgacs, who withdrew from the tournament at the midway point. For both men this was one of their last events. Forgacs gave up competition in 1913. And Perlis had an unfortunate hobby: mountain climbing. "When you ascend to a mountain top on a misty morning," he once said, "you experience a feeling of mysteriousness, as sometimes arises in a chess position." It’s believed that it was a cloudy, misty morning the day in 1913 that Perlis fell off a mountain and was killed.

Before he dropped out, Forgacs had one more try at improving Black’s chances in the Tarrasch against the man who was making a living out of beating the variation:

**116. Queen's Gambit Declined, Tarrasch Defense**

*Marshall–Forgacs, San Sebastian 1912*

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 c5 4 c×d5 e×d5 5 Nf3 Ne6 6 g3 Nf6 7 Bg2 c×d4 8 N×d4 Qb6?

Black’s last two moves were a new, thematic and forcing—but slightly dubious—method of resolving the battle over d4. White now turns Black’s d-pawn from an *isolani* into the head of a more-vulnerable set of hanging pawns. With 8 . . . Be5! 9 N×c6 b×c6 Black stands OK.

9 N×c6 b×c6 10 0–0 Be6 11 e4!

Classic anti-Tarrasch strategy. The exchange of pawns on e4 exposes c6 as a chronic target.

11 . . . N×e4 12 N×e4 d×e4 13 B×e4 Be5 14 Qc2 Rc8 15 Bf4 Bd4 16 Rael!

After 16 Rael

White’s last is a wonderfully subtle move that exploits Black’s failure to castle. Now 16 . . . g6 17 Bd5! or 16 . . . Q×b2 17 B×e6+ and 18 Q×d5 favor White. So Black makes what appears at first to be a sound pawn sacrifice.

16 . . . 0–0 17 B×h7+ Kh8 18 Be5 R×e8 19 B×f7 B×f5 20 Q×f5 B×e5 21 R×e5 Rf8

Black hopes to escape into a pawn-down endgame with drawing chances but...

22 Qh3+ Kg8 23 Rh5 Resigns


Along the way the American put Tarrasch over the time limit in one game. He used the Wing Gambit against Tarrasch unsuccessfully in their other game and experimented in some other openings as well:

**117. Dutch Defense**

*Marshall–Leonhardt, San Sebastian 1912*

1 d4 c5 2 c4 f5 3 Nc3 Bb4 4 Qb3 B×c3+ 5 b×c3!

White’s positionally questionable goal is to occupy the a3-f8 diagonal with a bishop, while assuming he can always undouble his c-pawns with c4-c5.
5 ... Nf6 6 Nf3 0-0 7 Ba3 d6 8 e3 b6 9 c5 bxc5 10 dxc5 Ne4
11 cxd6 cxd6 12 Bc4 Re8

Perhaps 12 ... d5 13 Bb5 Rf7 is an easier way to cut down on the reach of White’s annoying bishops.

13 0-0 Na6 14 Rad1 Nae5 15 Qc2 Qa5 16 Bb4 Qc7 17 Nd4 a5

Now 18 Ba3 Ba6 and Black will have emerged well from the opening. Marshall finds a tactical flaw in Black’s setup.

18 f3! a×b4 19 c×b4 Qb7

The queen knight cannot move because of B×e6+ and Q×c7.

20 b×c5 N×c5 21 N×f5!

Now White wins a second pawn (21 ... d5 22 Nd6) after which the win is straightforward.

21 ... Qa7 22 N×d6 Rf8 23 Ne4 N×e4 24 Q×e4 Kh8 25 Bd3! g6
26 Be4 Ba6 27 B×a6 Q×a6 28 Rd7 Qb5 29 Q×e6 Rae8 30 Qd6 Qb2 31 e4 Resigns

But two losses to Nimzovich doomed Marshall’s chances for a top prize and he had to content with an even score of 9½–9½ and sixth place. Nimzovich failed to capitalize on his good play because in the final round, when he was a half point ahead of Rubinstein, he was handed first prize—and gave it away. Rubinstein, as White, built up a winning position but then allowed Nimz a mate in two. Incredibly, Nimzovich overlooked the mate and lost.

San Sebastian 1912 was a great tournament in a year full of fine events. But the greatest of them all never came to pass. For months there had been rumors that a super-strong invitational was being planned for North America with phenomenally high prizes. It would have been the pre–World War I equivalent of a World Cup of the 1988–92 era. The tournament was supposed to begin in New York with a spectacular, double-round invitational including world champion Lasker and all his potential rivals—Spielmann, Tarrasch, Teichmann, Duras, Maróczy, Schlechter, Vidmar, Bernstein, Nimzovich, Rubinstein, Burn, Janowsky, Capablanca and Marshall. The second half would be held in Havana, where the four top finalists from the first would meet for a match-tournament playoff. “And the winner would be proclaimed world champion,” exclaimed the Wiener Schachzeitung.

While chess players talked about the magical tournament—and the rest of the world was stunned by the April sinking of the Titanic—attention turned to Pistyan in Hungary, and the unwinding story of Rubinstein.

As 1910 had been Schlechter’s year—with his victory at Hamburg and near defeat of Lasker, 1912 was the year of the great Pole. Two months after his success at San Sebastian he won again, a commanding 2¾ points ahead of second-place Spielmann at Pistyan. Marshall was a solid third, at 10½–6½, ahead of a field of veterans plus some talented young masters of the Dual Monarchy. Among the latter was a highly imaginative 18-year-old named Gyula Breyer. Marshall remembered Breyer as a “tall, boyish, slim and happy-looking lad” who played clever openings and “knew more ‘book’ than any master.” Little did anyone know that the next Pistyan international, in 1922, would be a Breyer Memorial, following his death from heart disease.

Marshall would have done much better had he not lost to two of the Hungarian youngsters, Károly Sterk, in a brilliancy prize game, and Zsigmond Barácz. He might have won a brilliancy prize of his own but his win over Leonhardt seemed just too speculative to be sound.

118. Colle System
      Marshall–Leonhardt, Pistyan 1912

1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 c5 3 e3 c6 4 Nbd2 Nf6 5 Bd3 Be7 6 0-0 Ne6 7 b3

This is more flexible than the Stonewall system Marshall had used as his secret weapon of 1908. To combat this setup, with White’s queenside fianchetto, Black does best to exchange on d4 at some point and mine the hole at c3.

7 ... 0-0 8 Bb2 b6 9 Ne5! N×e5

Here 9 ... Bb7, with the idea of meeting 10 f4 with 10 ... Nb4 11 Be2 Ne4, was a good alternative.

10 d×e5 Ne8 11 f4 g6 12 Rf3 Ng7 13 Rh3 f5 14 Qc2!

The attack is over after 14 e×f6 B×f6, whereas now White can probe with both g2-g4 and c2-c4 and perhaps even a well-prepared e3-e4.

14 ... a6 15 c4 Bb7 16 Rd1 Qd7 17 e×d5 c×d5 18 e4! fx e4
19 N×e4
      (see diagram)

White has ideas of Nf6+ or Bc4, followed by winning the d-pawn with Nc3. And since 19 ... d×e4? loses the queen to 20 Be4+, Black accepts the challenge to a tactical duel.
19... Ne6 20 Qg4?! Rxf4 21 Rxh7+

A tremendous shot. Hoffer gives 21... Kxh7 22 Nf6+ wins after either 22... Rxh6 23 e4 f4 Nf4 24 Bxg6+ Kg8 25 f7 mate or "22... Bxf6 23 Qxg6+ Kh8 24 e5 f4 25 Qh6+ Kg8 26 Bxl and wins." Presumably 26... Rg4 is met by 27 Bf5 but this is hardly clear.

21... Rxg4 22 Nf6+ Bxf6 23 Rxg7 Be8 24 Rxd5

The end of the combination. White has only a pawn for a knight but his bishops and rooks are wonderfully active. Now the game is marred by miscues on both sides.

24... Be7 25 h3 Rh4?! 26 Bxg6 Nc7 27 Rd8+! Bxd8 28 Rxd8+ Kg7 29 Bf5?

The idea was apparently to queen the c-pawn—29... Bxf5 30 e6+ Kg6 31 c7—although there is a simple defense in 31... Re4.

29... Bb7? 30 e6+ Kh6 31 e7 Resigns

On 31... Bc6 White has 32 Rd6+. A stunning finish.

In 1912 Marshall had another book printed, Modern Analysis of the Chess Openings. It was published in English, in the Netherlands, and dedicated to "My Dear Friend, LEO NARDUS, The Dutch Artist of Suresnes, S. France." Among the "casual remarks" in one chapter is "A bad plan is better than none at all." This helps illustrate the following, in which Marshall demonstrates what he had learned about winning on the Black side of a Queen's Gambit Declined:

119. Queen's Gambit Declined
Alapin-Marshall, Piatigorsky 1912
1 d4 d5 2 e4 e6 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Be7 5 e5 0-0 6 Bd3 Nbd7 7 Nf3 b6 8 e5xd5 exd5 9 0-0 Bb7 10 Re1 Ne4

Here 10... c5 would reach a position made famous after Pillsbury's defeat of Tarrasch at Hastings 1895, when Black's queenside majority—advanced as Marshall does in this game—proved unequal to White's kingside play.

11 Bf4 c5 12 Nd2?

"What would Pillsbury have said of this tame treatment of his pet variation?" Marshall wrote in My Fifty Years. More active is 12 Qe2. We soon have a middlegame in which White cannot open the position, but Black, with a queenside majority, can.

12... Nd6 13 Be5 Nxc3 14 Rxc3 c4 15 Bb1 b5 16 Re1 Re8 17 Qc2 g6 18 Rfd1 Bc8! 19 Nf1 Bf5 20 Qd2 Bxb1 21 Rxb1 Ne4 22 Qe1 a5 23 f3 Bb4! 24 Qc2 Ng5 25 Bg3 Rc8 26 Bf2 Bd6 27 Qc2 Qd7 28 Bh4 Ne6 29 Bf6 Nf8 30 Bh4 f5! 31 Bf2 b4 32 Re1 a4 33 Re2 b3! 34 a5 x b3 35 Qd1 Ne6

Marshall wrote that White intended Bc1-c3 but here 36 Bf1 f4! 37 e xf4 Nxf4 and... Nd3 would be crushing. Similarly 37 e4 Nxd4! 38 Rd2 dxe4! 39 Rxd4 Be5 40 Bf2 Bxd4 and the e-pawn wins.

36 Ra1 Qb7 37 Kh1 Ra8 38 Rbl Ra2 39 Be1 Bb4 40 Bb4! Qxb4 41 Qe1 Qxb4

The easiest way of cashing the queenside trumps is:

42... Nxd4! 43 e4 dxe4 Rxe4 c2 44 Rxe2 c1 45 Re1 Rxb2 46 h4

Or 46 Ne3 c2 and Black wins with 47... Rb1. "The play of Marshall throughout reminds one strongly of Pillsbury in his palmy days," wrote Hoffer.

46... f4! 47 Kg1 Re2 White resigns

And once every tournament it seemed Marshall would score a point as Black with his Petroff Defense. Two years later, after a particularly ugly
loss to Lasker, Marshall would become frustrated when opponents met his 1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 N×e5 d6 4 Nf3 Ne4 with 5 Qe2 Qe7 6 d3 Nf6 7 Bg5. White then has all the winning chances in the resulting endgame — although Marshall spent years trying to find a way to complicate matters. At Pisky, his opponents hadn't caught on to 5 Qe2 yet.

120. Petroff Defense, Marshall Variation
Johnen-Marshall, Pisky 1912

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 N×e5 d6 4 Nf3 N×e4 5 d4 d5 6 Bd3 Bd6
7 0–0 0–0 8 c4 Bg4 9 c×d5 f5 10 h3 Bb5 11 Ne3 Nd7? 12 N×e4 f×e4
13 B×e4 Nf6 14 Bf5 Kh8 15 Qb3 N×d5

By 1912 all these moves had become familiar to Marshall's opponents (16 Q×d5? Bh2+).

16 Bg5 Be7 17 B×e7 N×e7 18 B×e4 B×f3! 19 B×f3 Nf5

At San Sebastian 1911 Bernstein had tried 20 Q×b7 with the idea of meeting 20 ... N×d4 with 21 Rad1 N×f3+ 22 Q×f3 R×f3 23 R×d8+ R×d8 24 g×f3 Rd2 25 Re1 which favors White.

But Marshall replied to 20 Q×b7 with 20 ... Rb8 21 Q×a7 N×d4 22 Bg4
R×b2 and had enough play to draw after 23 Rad1 Rb6 24 Qa4 Rd6 25 Kh1
c5.

20 B×b7 Rb8 21 Qd5 Qf6

In Leonhardt-Marshall, San Sebastian 1912, White remained a pawn ahead following 22 Rac1 N×d4 23 Qe4 c6 24 Rd1 c5 25 Rde1 Qb6 26 Bb4 Q×b2 but Black had so much counterplay he even won the endgame.

22 Rac1 N×d4 23 Rc4?

The threat was 23 ... Ne2+, but the bishop now becomes trapped. The "game" — having begun with 22 Rac1 — ends in four moves.

23 ... c5! 24 Kh2? Rd8 25 Qe4 Re8! 26 Qd5 Re5 White resigns

Two days after Pisky ended, Marshall began play in a weeklong event at Budapest. It may have been the strongest theme tournament ever held. Each game began with the Schlecther Variation (6 g3) of the Tarrasch Defense, Queen's Gambit Declined. Milan Vidmar, who won the most games — two — finished in a tie for last place. But Marshall, with 3–2, tied for first with Schlechter, each man winning one game and drawing four in an exceptionally balanced event.

A month later Marshall made one more trip to Germany for the annual Congress. This year it was held in Breslau, Tarrasch's birthplace (although the city is now Wroclaw, Poland). The Eighteenth Congress was comparable in strength and composition to Pisky and once again saw a dominant Rubinstein. Marshall was close behind after six rounds but then fell off the pace. He suffered losses to both Duris and Rubinstein, the co-winners, to Schlechter and Spielmann, and even to 63-year-old Anos Burn.

Marshall's sixth place at Breslau 1912 is largely forgotten but his best-known game is not. His opponent in it had earlier been described by Chigorin as "Russian's Chess Hope." A year later Stepan Mikhailovich Levitsky played a match against the up-and-coming Alekhine and lost 3–7, which was nothing to be ashamed of. It was about this game that Napier wrote: "Some of Marshall's most sparkling moves look at first like typographical errors."

121. Franco-Sicilian Defense
Levitsky-Marshall, Breslau 1912

1 d4 e6 2 e4 d5 3 Ne3 c5 4 Nf3 Ne5 5 e×d5 e×d5 6 Be2 Nf6 7 0–0 Be7 8 Bb5 0–0 9 d×c5 Bb6 10 Nd4 B×c5 11 N×e6?!?

A common amateur error. The e6 pawn only appears to be weak, while the exchange of minor pieces leaves Black in control of the center.

11 ... f×e6 12 Bg4 Qd6 13 Bb3 Rac8 14 Qd2? Bb4! 15 B×f6 R×f6
16 Rad1 Qc5 17 Qe2? B×c3 18 b×c3 Q×c3 19 R×d5 Nd4!

White is hanging by a thread. Now 20 Qe5 Nf3+ 22 g×f3 Rg6+ wins.

20 Qh5 Re8 21 Re5 Rh6 22 Qg5 R×h3 23 Re5

A last gasp, since 23 g×h3 Nf3+ would have won the queen. Now 23 ... Qh2 would win rather simply. But Marshall undoubtedly began calculating 23 ... Ne2+ 24 Kh1 Ng3+ instead, only to give up on that variation when he
saw that 25 Kgl! only draws. Therefore he looked for a different way to exploit that idea.

23 ... Qg3!! White resigns

"The most elegant move I have ever played!" is the concluding comment in My Fifty Years. The queen, which threatens mate, can be taken in three ways. But two of those allow mate (23 h×g3 Ne2 mate and 23 fxg3 Ne2+ and 24 ... Rxg1 mate). The third, 23 Q×g3, allows 23 ... Ne2+ 24 Kh1 N×g3+ and 25 ... N×f1. Because of the last variation, we can call 23 ... Qg3!! the most remarkable transposition into the endgame ever.

In his memoirs Marshall adds that the spectators became "so excited" by the finish that they "showered me with gold pieces." And because he often told this story, Marshall wanted to remove all doubt: "I have often been asked whether this really happened. The answer is—yes, that is what happened, literally!"

But in his original handwritten notes, there is no mention of coins being tossed. Marshall’s only comment was, "A purse was presented to me after this game." Yet he often repeated the gold pieces version to friends.

The best explanation of what actually happened comes from Walter Korn, who would later edit editions of Modern Chess Openings. In America’s Chess Heritage, Korn recalled that the version he heard as a young player in Prague from witnesses to the game was that Alekhine and another friend of Levitsky’s P.P. Saburov, had bet on its outcome. When their man resigned, they tossed their wagers onto the board in payment—gold marks and crowns.

By September invitations to the mysterious New York–Havana tournament were going out and were received with suspicion and elation. Marshall may have received his while at Biarritz for the latest round in his recurring matches with Janowsky. In his unpublished notes he referred to it as an “informal match.”

He was trailing \( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \) before playing one of his finest games:

122. Petroff Defense, Marshall Variation

Janowsky–Marshall, third match game, 1912

1 c4 e5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 N×e5 d6 4 Nf3 N×e4 5 d4 d5 6 Bd3 Bd6

Later in the match Marshall would try the 6 ... Bg4 7 0-0 Bd6 8 c×e4 0-0?! gambit. He had demonstrated Black’s prospects previously in games that continued 9 c×d5 f5 10 Nc3 N×d5 11 h3 B×h3 12 Q×e4 f×e4 13 B×e4.

But Janowsky had an improvement in their ninth match game, 11 Be2!, threatening 12 N×e4 and 13 Ng5. After 11 ... h5 12 Be3 N×d6 13 N×e4 f×e4 14 N×d2 B×e2 15 Q×e2 N×d5 16 Q×d5 White was better and he won on the twenty-eighth move.

This was better policy than in the seventh game, which went 6 ... Bd6 7 0-0 Bg4 (and now 8 c×e4 0-0 reaches the same gambit). White continued 8 Re1!! f5 9 c×e4 0-0 10 c×d5 and now 10 ... B×h2+ 11 K×h2 N×f2 12 Qc2 N×d3 13 Q×e4 K×h8 14 B×g5 Q×d6+ and Black won the endgame in 35 moves. On 13 Q×d5 Black plays 13 ... B×f3 and 14 ... Q×b4+.

7 c4? Bb4+!

This was Marshall’s favorite method of equalizing and it proved so effective around 1914 that opponents learned to play 7 0-0 before pushing their c-pawn. Now 8 Nbd2 0-0 9 0-0 B×d2!! and 10 ... Bg4 equals easily, as in Tarrasch–Marshall, St. Petersburg 1914.

8 Kf1!? 0-0 9 c×d5 Q×d5 10 Qc2 Re8 11 Ne3

Now 11 ... N×c3 seems to lose the h-pawn and 11 ... B×c3 surrenders a fine bishop.

11 ... N×c3! 12 b×c3

(see diagram)

12 Q×f3!!

"Before my opponent answered this surprise move I heard him whisper 'Swindle!'" Marshall wrote in his notes and it appears that way in My Fifty Years. White can’t take the queen because of 13 ... Bh3+ and 14 ... Re1+, giving mate.

13 c×b4 Nc6 14 Bb2

And 14 Be3 allows 14 ... Bh3!! 15 Rg1 R×e3. Marshall revives the offer.

14 ... N×b4! 15 B×h7+ K×h8 16 g×f3 B×h3+ 17 K×g1 N×c2

18 B×e2 Re8 19 Re1 Rae8 20 Bc3 R×e3
Chapter Eleven

Farewell to Europe

In the final two years before the Great War, America appeared occupied with entertaining itself: the first Raggedy Ann doll appeared but the big toy hit was the new Erector Set. The New York World began running an odd-looking letter game called a crossword puzzle. The Fox Trot was introduced, and quickly replaced the Grizzly Bear as the dance of the day. Old Rosebud won the first Kentucky Derby. And a toy was added to Cracker Jack boxes.

* * *

To no one’s great surprise, plans for the long-rumored New York-Havana tournament collapsed for lack of financial backing in late 1912. This was particularly galling to professional players because it left them, for the first time in years, without a major tournament on the horizon. After the great year of 1912, with its significant internationals at Abbazia, Breslau (Wroclaw), Budapest, Pistyan, and San Sebastian, there were virtually no major tournaments in Europe in 1913.

So, Europeans continued the trend of visiting America, a trend that would be amplified after World War I broke out. Arguably the strongest event anywhere in 1913 was the National Tournament, held at New York, January 19 to February 5. Besides Capablanca and Marshall it featured the visiting Janowsky, as well as the émigré masters Jaffe, Kupchik (who would set a record for winning the Manhattan Chess Club championship ten times), and Chajes, the 39-year-old secretary of the Rice Chess Club.

There were five prizes and they seemed destined to be shared among the internationally experienced players. The sensation of the tournament was the defeat of Capablanca by Jaffe. Marshall, meanwhile, went undefeated. He seemed particularly ruthless against one of the weaker players:
123. Queen’s Gambit Declined

*Marshall-Kline, New York 1913*

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Nf3 Bf5 5 Bg5 Nbd7 6 e3 0-0 7 Rcl b6
8 c×d5 c×d5 9 Qa4

This last move was a Duras idea, intending to use White’s light-squared bishop to weaken the queenside with B6c, rather than attack the kingside with Bg3 à la Pillsbury. Marshall recommended 9 ... c5 as a gambit—10 Qc6 Rb8
11 N×d5 N×d5 12 Q×d5 Bd7 with compensation—and this was borne out in a 1921 Capablanca–Lasker match game.

9 ... Bb7 10 Ba6 Bxa6 11 Q×a6 c6?

The annotators insisted 11 ... c5 is better although 12 0-0 Qc8 13 Q×c8t favors White because of the vulnerability of the queenside to Nb5 and Ne5-c6.

12 0-0 Ne4 13 B×e7 Q×e7

After 13 ... Q×e7

Shocking as it may seem, Marshall now proves that Black is not merely a bit worse, but quite lost.

14 Qb7t Rfc8 15 N×d5t Qd6

Of course, not 15 ... c×d5 16 R×c8+, a theme on which White now embelishes.

16 R×c6!! Resigns

Because of 16 ... Q×d5 17 R×c8+ or 16 ... R×c6 17 Q×a8+ Nf8
18 Q×c6!

But he wasn’t ruthless enough against the other minor masters. Marshall’s excellent score was marred by 5 draws, including one against the obscure last-place finisher Louis B. Zapolcon of Dayton, Ohio, who lost 10 of his 13 games. As a result, Capablanca’s 11–2 score, despite the loss to Jaffe, was a half point better than Marshall’s. In fact Capa could have pushed even that score; he won his first 10 games before losing interest in the tournament, then losing to Jaffe. Yet within a month Marshall had an opportunity for revenge on the Cuban’s own soil.

A week after it was over, the top six finishers in the New York tournament were to head for Havana on the S.S. Saratoga. There they would be joined by two local players in a double-round international. (As it turned out Kupchik, who placed seventh, replaced one of the New York top six, J.H. Stapfer). The players each received $200 expense money and were entertained fairly lavishly in what was the first Cuban international tournament ever.

The Havana tournament book notes that Marshall himself admitted he was lucky. Capablanca went further saying, “Marshall had luck on a scale that has never been seen before” and insisting that Marshall played so “badly” that he deserved no higher than fourth place.

In truth, Marshall won at least two games, against Jaffe and Chajes, on gross blunders, while he was trying to hold difficult positions. And he won a game from Kupchik through a mixture of great endgame skill and his opponent’s accident-prone nature:

124. Danish Gambit Declined

*Marshall–Kupchik, Havana 1913*

1 e4 e5 2 d4 exd4 3 c3 d5 4 c×d5 Q×d5 5 c×d4 Nc6 6 Nf3 Bg4
7 Bc2 Nf6 8 h3? Bb4+ 9 Ne3 B×f3 10 B×f3 Qc4?

This idea in slightly different form would later be shown by Capablanca to equalize against White’s most aggressive form of the Scotch Gambit. To this day opening books regard the key game to the theory of the Danish (or Scotch) Gambit Declined as Marshall–Capablanca, Lake Hopatcong 1926, which varied from the above with 6 ... Bb4+ 7 Nc3 Bg4 8 B×e5 B×e5
9 B×f3 Qc4! 10 Be3 B×e3+ 11 b×c3 Q×c3+ 12 Kf1 Qc4+ 13 Kg1 Ne7
14 Rcl Q×a2 15 Ral Qc4 16 Rcl Draw.

11 B×c6+ b×c6 12 Qc2+ Q×c2+ 13 K×c2 0-0 14 Be3 Rfc8
15 Ral e5! 16 d×c5 B×c5 17 Nb5 B×e3 18 f×e3 Rab8 19 N×c7
R×b2+ 20 Kf3

(see diagram)

Black has been pressing since move 15 and now with 15 ... Rf8 16 Rfd1
R×d1 17 R×d1 Kf8 would have serious winning chances. But here Kupchik forgot about his first rank.
20 . . . Re5?? 21 Nd5! Rf5+ 22 Kg3 Rg5+ 23 Kf4! h6

White has been threatening Re8+ and mates and Black's last move was necessary, how Marshall exploits Black's new pawn weaknesses now is instructive.

24 Re8+ Kh7 25 N×f6+ g×f6 26 g4! R×a2

It generally takes two serious errors to lose a master game. Here Black, perhaps still convinced he was winning, begins to commit the most common mistake of rook endgames—failing to keep the rooks active (26 . . . Re5 or 26 . . . h5 were better).

27 Rd1 Ra4+ 28 Rd4 Ra5?

He needed to put the other rook here. Now White reveals a mating net (29 Rdc8 Ra4+ 30 e4).

29 Rdd8! Rg7 30 h4! h5 31 Rh8+ Resigns

Marshall in one book said the game ended with the mate in four after 31 . . . Kg6 32 g×h5+.

It may also have exasperated Capablanca to see Marshall squeeze full points out of positions that most everybody else—except Capablanca himself—would give up as drawn. The following is typical of Marshall's ability to win totally equal endgames from minor masters:

125. Four Knight's Game
Blanco Estera—Marshall, Havana 1913

1 e4 c5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 Nc3 Ne6 4 Bb5 Nbd4

This is the variation Marshall had introduced into master chess at Monte Carlo 1902 but which was subsequently named after Rubinstein, when the Pole began to play it in 1907. The chief drawback is that White can force a lifeless, dead-even position with . . .

5 N×d4 exd4 6 e5 d×c3 7 e×f6 Q×f6 8 d×c3 c6

Nowadays one most often sees 8 . . . Qd5+ 9 Qe2 Q×e2+ followed by a handshake. Marshall's bid for more could be met by 9 Qe2+ but White begins to err.

9 Be2 Be5 10 0–0 0–0 11 Qd3 d5 12 Qf3 Q×f3! 13 B×f3 Bf5 14 Bd1 Rfe8 15 Bd2 Rad8 16 Re1 R×e1+ 17 B×e1 Re8 18 Bd2 Bd6 19 f3

Played to avoid 19 . . . Bf4, White didn't like 19 Kf1 because of 19 . . . B×h2 (20 g3?? Bh3 mate). But 19 h3 was perfectly safe.

19 . . . Be5+ 20 Kf1 h5 21 Re1 d4! 22 Be2 d×c3 23 B×c3 Be3!
24 Rd1 B×c2 25 Rd7 h4 26 Rh7 Re6 27 a4!

Black has won a pawn but there are technical problems (27 . . . B×a4? 28 Bc4 or 27 . . . B×a4 28 Bd3, threatening a back-rank mate). Is what follows now the result of luck—or skill?

27 . . . a6 28 Re8+ Kh7 29 Ra8 Rd6 30 R×a6 b×a4 31 Bc4

After 31 Be4


It is rare to have luck run in only one direction—and Marshall also lost in Havana to Janowsky when, in a lost endgame, the American failed to find a wonderful swindle that would have won. In other key games, Janowsky defeated Capablanca, but damaged his own chances by losing to Chajes. The crucial game of the tournament arrived with four rounds to go:

126. Petroff Defense
Capablanca—Marshall, Havana 1913

1 e4 c5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 Nc3 e5 4 Nf3 N×e4 5 d4 d5 6 Bd3 Bg4 7 0–0 Ne6 8 c3
Both players have played the opening exceptionally cautiously. Marshall avoided his favorite $6 \ldots B\overline{d}6$ because he feared a prepared surprise. Capa passes up the active $8 \overline{c}4$, which he knew Marshall liked to meet with $8 \overline{b}7 \overline{g} \times \overline{d}5 \; Q \times \overline{d}5 \; 10 \; N \times \overline{c}3 \; N \times \overline{c}3 \; 11 \; b \times \overline{e}3 \; 0-0-0$ as he had in the Tarrasch match.

$8 \ldots B\overline{e}7 \; 9 \; N \overline{b}2 \; N \times \overline{d}2 \; 10 \; B \times \overline{d}2 \; 0-0 \; 11 \; h3 \; B\overline{h}5 \; 12 \; R\overline{e}1 \; Q\overline{d}7$?

Here Black simply blunders away a pawn—but Capablanca fails to notice $13 \; N \times \overline{e}5! \; \overline{N} \times \overline{e}5 \; 14 \; B \times \overline{h}7+ \; K \times \overline{h}7 \; 15 \; Q \times \overline{h}5+$. White, nevertheless, secures a small edge.

$13 \; B\overline{b}5? \; B\overline{b}6 \; 14 \; N \times \overline{e}5! \; B \times \overline{e}5 \; 15 \; Q \times \overline{h}5 \; B\overline{b}6 \; 16 \; B\overline{f}4 \; R\overline{a}8 \; 17 \; R\overline{e}3 \; R \times \overline{e}3 \; 18 \; f \times \overline{e}3 \; a6 \; 19 \; B\overline{a}4 \; b5 \; 20 \; B\overline{c}2 \; g6 \; 21 \; Q\overline{f}3 \; B\overline{g}7 \; 22 \; B\overline{b}3 \; Ne7 \; 23 \; e4! \; d \times e4 \; 24 \; Q \times e4 \; c6 \; 25 \; R\overline{e}1 \; N \overline{d}5 \; 26 \; B \times d5!$

Despite the slight inferiority of his bishop to Black's, White dominates the files now and comes close to a winning position.

$26 \ldots c \times d5 \; 27 \; Qe7 \; Qe8 \; 28 \; B\overline{d}6 \; h6 \; 29 \; R\overline{f}1! f6$

Ugly, but forced by the threat of $30 \; Qa7 \; (30 \ldots \; R\overline{a}8? \; 31 \; Q \times f7+)$.

$30 \; Re1 \; Rd8 \; 31 \; B\overline{c}5 \; Kh7 \; 32 \; Qf7 \; Qf5$

The game was adjourned after $32 \; Qf7$ and by the time it was resumed two days later Capablanca knew he had to win it to secure first prize. Strangely, he now overlooks $33 \; Re7 \; Rg8 \; 34 \; Ra7$ with its deadly threat of $35 \; B\overline{f}8\#$ $(38 \ldots \; Qf4 \; 36 \; Qe7+7$ averts perpetual check). Worse than that, he allows Marshall to escape into an endgame that could go either way because of White's slightly bad bishop. With his odd sense of candor the Cuban later blamed "mental blindness unbelievable in a master of my strength."

$33 \; B\overline{e}7? \; Qd7! \; 34 \; Kf1 \; Rf8! \; 35 \; Qe6 \; Q \times e6 \; 36 \; R \times e6 \; Re8 \; 37 \; Re2 \; Kg8 \; 38 \; h3 \; Kf7 \; 39 \; B\overline{c}5 \; R \times e6 \; 40 \; K \times e6 \; f5 \; 41 \; Kd3 \; Ke6 \; 42 \; e4 \; b \times e4 \; 43 \; b \times c4 \; g5$

White strives to remove his pawns from dark squares and create a passed pawn. But Black makes his own outside passed pawn $(44 \; Bb4 \; f4 \; 45 \; Bd2 \; Bf8 \; 46 \; Bc1 \; Bb6 \; 47 \; c5 \; Bc7 \; 48 \ldots \; Kf5, \; 49 \ldots \; h5 \; 50 \ldots \; g4)$.

$44 \; g4 \; f4 \; 45 \; Bb4 \; Bf6 \; 46 \; Bf8! \; d \times c4+ \; 47 \; K \times c4 \; f3! \; 48 \; d5?$

Marshall wrote in his notes of the huge crowd, estimated at 600: "The excitement was intense. I defended with Black as well as possible and Capablanca, in trying to force a win, blundered last." He later demonstrated how White could draw with $48 \; Kd3 \; B \times d4! \; 49 \; B \times b6! \; (49 \; K \times d4 \; f2) \; Kf6 \; 50 \; B \times b6 \; Bb6 \; 51 \; B \times d6$ and so on.

$48 \ldots \; e5 \; 49 \; Kd3 \; Kf4! \; 50 \; Bd6+$

Or $50 \; d6 \; Kg3 \; 51 \; B \overline{e}7 \; f2! \; 52 \; Ke2 \; Kg2$ and queens. The problem with the bishop check that Capablanca played is $50 \ldots \; Be5$, since $51 \; B \times e5+ \; K \times e5$ is a lost king-and-pawn ending: $52 \; Ke3 \; K \times d5 \; 53 \; K \times f5 \; Kd4 \; 54 \; Ke2 \; Ke3 \; 55 \; Kd3 \; a5! \; 56 \; Ke2 \; a4 \; 57 \; Ke3 \; Kd2 \; 58 \; Kd2 \; K \times a2 \; 59 \; Ke2 \; a3 \; 60 \; Kc1 \; Kb3 \; 61 \; Kc1 \; a2+ \; 62 \; Kc2 \; Kc3$ and White runs out of moves.

$50 \ldots \; Be5 \; 51 \; Be5 \; Kg3 \; 52 \; Ke4 \; Bf4 \; 53 \; d6 \; f2$ White resigns

Both players queen but Black will then win with $55 \ldots \; f \times e3+ \; 56 \; Kd4 \; Qd1+$ or $56 \; Kf5 \; Be7+$.

Marshall, who so often seemed to be oblivious to drama unfolding on his own stage, misunderstood the crowd: "As he turned over his king I heard a roar go up," Marshall wrote in his notes. "I thought the Cubans were going to kill me." He asked for a security escort and "quickly rushed over to my hotel. Afterward I was told they were cheering for me. I was sorry but I guess I was nervous as I was the only one who ever beat him in his own hometown."

What may escape notice in this account is the absence of any reference to the version told thirty years later by two men close to him, Reuben Fine and Fred Reinfeld. In their version an outraged Capablanca had the mayor of Havana clear the room as he resigned. Without any corroboration in Marshall's own recollection, this version should be laid to rest.

The victory over Capa showed that Marshall had made some progress in adjusting to the Cuban. Since the thirteenth game of their match—when the score stood 7-1 in Capablanca's favor, with 5 draws—Marshall had improved his play in their last 13 games the score was 7-7, with 11 draws. This was the best period Marshall would ever have against the Cuban.

When play was completed March 6, Marshall's final score was $10 \frac{1}{2}-3 \frac{1}{2}$, a half point ahead of Capa and 1½ ahead of Janowsky. He returned home to New York where he had the unexpected opportunity
to play Janowsky once more, this time representing Philadelphia. The annual match between the Franklin and Manhattan chess clubs had been set for Memorial Day and since the Manhattanites wanted to use Janowsky on their team, the Philadelphia club asked to use their own imported star. So Marshall agreed to play fifth board in the expectation of facing his old opponent. But in the end Janowsky proved to be unavailable for the holiday match, and Marshall ended up being only one of two Franklinites to win, against a strong amateur.

127. Sicilian Defense
Jacob Rosenthal–Marshall, Manhattan–Philadelphia match, 1913

1 e4 c5 2 Nf3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 Nxd4 Nf6 5 Bd3 Nc6 6 Nxc6 bxc6 7 0–0 d5 8 Qe2 Be7 9 Nd2 Qc7 10 Re1 Rb8 11 Nf3 Bc5! 12 b3 Ng4 13 Rf1 Bd4 14 Rb1 h5!? After 14 ... h5

Marshall decides he can afford to keep his king in the center. Of course on 15 h3 he had no intention of moving the knight, since 16 h × g4 h × g4 would only help Black.

15 c4 d × c4 16 B × c4 e5 17 Bb2 Bb7 18 B × d4 c × d4 19 Rac1 Qf4! 20 Bb5+ Kf8 21 Bd3 Rh6 22 Qd2 Q × d2 23 N × d2 Ne5 24 Bb1 Ba6!

It is the d-pawn and the target at g2 that decides the game.

25 Rfd1 Be2 26 Rel d3 27 h3 Rg6 28 Kh2 Rf6 29 Kg1 h4! 30 Rc7 Ng6! 31 f3 Nf4 32 Kf2 Rg6 33 Rgl Rb5! 34 Re8+ Ke7 35 Rcf1? R × g2+ 36 Ke3 e5 37 R8c7+ Kf6 38 Rlc6+ Kg5! 39 R × f7 g6 40 R × f4

Otherwise a mate (e.g., 40 ... Bfl and 40 ... Re2) was inevitable.

40 ... e × f4+ 41 Kd4 Rg3 42 c5 B × f3 43 R × g6+! K × g6 44 B × d3+ Kf7 45 B × b5 R × h3 46 Nc4 Rh1 47 Nd6+ Kf8 48 Nf5 Rd1+ 49 Ke3 h3 50 e6 Re1 White resigns

Marshall also made two long exhibition tours in 1913, including one to the West Coast, and gave a simul in Pittsburgh that was regarded as setting a record for the most boards without a loss, 57. He did not wait long to meet Old World competition. About this time Oldrich Duras arrived in search of a match opponent and tournament invitations. In July and August the Czech competed against a solid field, including Capa, Chajes and Kupchik at a Rice Chess Club tournament. Marshall did not enter the field and Capa swept the opposition with a dazzling 13–0 score.

The American champion did, however, agree to enter a double-round quadrangular tournament in late August against Duras, Chajes and Jaffe. Marshall played well, losing but a single game, to Duras, winning the five others and taking first prize by a full point. And in yet another New York tournament that year Marshall and Capablanca dominated the field against the usual local opponents. They both won their games against Kupchik, Duras and two amateurs. Capa's win from Marshall gave him first place and Marshall second.

In September Duras had just finished a match with Kupchik at the Progressive Chess Club. Since Janowsky had already returned to Europe, the Manhattan Chess Club didn't want to lose the other visiting European star, so they arranged a five-game match between Marshall and Duras. Marshall decided matters by winning the first three games, then pulling a stalemate out of a lost position in the fourth.

The first game was a slow positional crush. The second featured a classic version of the minority attack by Duras (White) in a rook endgame:

After 32 a × b5

128. Duras–Marshall, second match game, 1913

Marshall, in dire need of kingside counterplay, captured with 32 ... f × e3, intending 33 f × e3 g4 and 34 ... Rf3. But Duras sacrificed a pawn, assuming
he would regain it favorably: 33 f3 Kg7 34 b×c6 b×c6 35 R5c3 g4 36 f4 Re4 37 Rd1? Rfe6 38 Rdd3 Kf6 39 R×e3.

Marshall’s 39 ... e5! elicited a murmur of “a Marshall swindle” among the spectators, who appreciated the humor of 40 d×c5 d×e4. Duras had to continue 40 Rd3 e4! 41 Ra3 Rx d4 42 Rx×e6+ K×e6 43 Ra6+ Kf5 44 R×h6 to get his pawn back. But he was clearly losing and conceded not long after 44 ... c5 45 h3 Rd2+ 46 Ke1 g×h3 47 R×h3 Kg4 48 Rh8 d4.

At this point, even though comfortably ahead, Marshall made another of his classic readjustments. As in the Capablanca match, he revised his style—but in this case, he went from conservatism to risk-taking. For the rest of the match, Duras was facing the Marshall of the Vienna Gambit Tournament of 1903, who offered the Danish and King’s gambits. Marshall drew the fourth and lost the fifth, but the match had been decided by this:

129. Danish Gambit
Marshall—Duras, third match game, 1913

1 e4 e5 2 d4 exd4 3 c3 d×c3 4 Bc4 c×b2 5 B×b2 Nf6?

Schlechter had not yet introduced the defense (5 ... d5 6 B×d5 Nf6) that would permanently retire the Danish Gambit. There were many at the time who believed Black must not accept the second gambit pawn (4 ... c×b2) and that if he did Black should continue as Chigorin did with 5 ... Qe7 6 Ne3 c6 and 7 ... d5. The natural text move allows Marshall—even though two pawns down—to favorably enter an endgame.

6 e5 d5 7 e×f6! d×c4 8 Q×d8+ K×d8 9 f×g7 Bb4+

Otherwise the pawn fork costs Black a piece. Note that 8 f×g7 would have led to nothing after 8 ... Bb4+ 9 Nc3 Rg8.

10 Nc3 Re8+ 11 Ne2 Bf5 12 0–0–0! Nd7 13 Nd5 Bd6 14 Bf6+!

Black is still a few moves away from consolidating his pawn-up edge, and this move pushes consolidation farther away. Now 14 ... Kc8 15 Be7, intending 16 Bf8!, would cost the Exchange.

Duras may have been counting on the counterattack of 14 ... N×f6 15 N×f6 R×e2+ 16 g×f6 Ke7 17 Q×a8?? Ba3 mate. But White would have refrained that combination with 17 Nd5+ Ke6 18 N×e7+ B×e7 19 Rd6+ and he remains a queen ahead.

14 ... N×f6 15 N×f6 Ke7 16 N×e8 R×e8 17 Rd4 Kf6 18 Ng3 Ba3+ 19 Kd1 Bg6 20 f4!

Tarrasch had argued that two bishops and a rook were no worse than two rooks and a knight, but that is not the case here. Marshall neatly exploits the clumsiness of the bishops (21 f5) and enemy king.

20 ... Bd3 21 Nh5+ Kg6 22 Re1 Rg8 23 Rd5 h6 24 Re3 Bb2

Black had to stop 25 Rg3+ Kh7 26 Nf6 mate. Duras now shortens a lost game with a blunder.

25 g4! B×g7 26 f5+ Kh7 27 Re7 Rf8 28 R×c7 Bc8? 29 R×d3 Be5 30 R×c4 Resigns

Richard Réti (or a ghostwriter) later noted in *Masters of the Chessboard* that Marshall had lost decisively to Tarrasch, Lasker and Capablanca, and that “the inferiority of his style as opposed to that of the modern position players was demonstrated.” Réti went on to suggest that was why Marshall adopted a more solid style after 1909 and as a result he won fewer tournaments—but also had few bad results. Actually, Marshall had changed his style often, to suit the situation, as the above game shows.

It had been a fairly busy professional year for Marshall and a happy year for the Marshall family. Frankie, then eight, was a precocious pupil at Manhattan’s P.S. 95. Marshall didn’t leave him and Carrie again until the following spring, when an opportunity too good to refuse led him once more to cross what his friend Napier called “The Great Dampness.”

**St. Petersburg 1914**

By early 1914 nearly two years had passed since a great European tournament had been held, and more than four since the last world championship match. To help rectify both situations, the St. Petersburg Chess Society organized a spectacular international celebrating its tenth anniversary. It was to be everything that the regretfully cancelled New York–Havana tournament had hoped to be. It was, simply, the greatest chess tournament ever held up to that time.

Entry was restricted to winners of first prizes in major international events over the previous twenty years, plus the first-place finisher of the most recent Russian National Tournament. The winner of “The Grand International Masters Tournament at St. Petersburg 1914” would be recognized as “Candidate for the World Championship,” with the support of the British Chess Federation and German Chess Union. Those two institutions, the two most authoritative chess organizations of the day, would presumably cooperate to see that match arrangements would be speedily worked out between the winner at St. Petersburg and Emanuel Lasker. (Efforts to arrange for a 20-game Rubinstein–Lasker match were still very much alive when play in Russia began but, like so many other such projects, soon fell apart.)

Marshall, on the basis of Cambridge Springs and his two German
triumphs, was a natural invitee, as were Rubinstein, Capablanca, Janowsky, the 51-year-old Tarrasch and Bernstein, as well as newcomers Alekhine and Nimzovich, and two veterans of the Steinitz generation, Cumnberg and Blackburne. Even Lasker was lured out of retirement for his first tournament in five years. Of the few who could not be coaxed were Amos Burn and Richard Teichmann and players from Austria-Hungary (Schlechter, Duras, Maróczy, and the aged Max Weiss) whose empire was beginning a war of nerves with the Romanovs.

St. Petersburg 1914 was only the third international ever held in Russia and was conducted on a lavish scale at the Society’s Foundry Prospct playing site. Tarrasch was shocked to learn that officials took in “800 rubles on the very first day. The committee determined prices for admission tickets as if for a Caruso concert: for entrance to the hall where the grandmasters sit, 5 rubles; for entrance to the demonstration board room, 2 rubles.”

The gate receipts eventually reached 6000 rubles, easily eclipsing all previous tournaments. But the organizers also needed the 1000 rubles personally donated by the Czar, because of the huge expenses. According to one widely reported but almost surely exaggerated report, Lasker was paid 500 rubles for each game he played, a huge sum.

On that first day, April 20, Rubinstein won a pawn from Marshall on the Black side of an Orthodox Queen’s Gambit Declined, but couldn’t do anything with it. Marshall’s next round was also drawn, but at quite a different energy level:

1.e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 N×e5 d6 4 Nf3 N×e4 5 d4 d5 6 Bd3 Bd6 7 c4? Bb4+! 8 Nbd2 0–0

Two rounds later Marshall played 8... N×d2 9 B×d2 Qe7+ 10 Qe2 Q×e2=?? 11 K×e2! and obtained a bad endgame against Alekhine. Later, 10... Bg4 was found to equalize and thereby White’s seventh move from tournament practice.

9 0–0 N×d2 10 B×d2 B×d2 11 Q×d2 Nc6 12 Rfd1 Bg4 13 Ne5 N×e5 14 R×e5 d×c4 15 B×c4 Qf6 16 Rae1 Rd8 17 Re7!
(see diagram)

Black’s pieces have completed their development but each of their opposite numbers stands better. Now 17... Q×d4 18 Q×d4 R×d4 19 R×c7 and 17... R×d4 18 R×f7! make matters worse. It takes accurate calculation to play:

17... Be6! 18 R1×e6 f×e6 19 R×e6 Q×d4! 20 Rd6+!

White has no better discovered check (20 Re4+? allows 20... Q×c4).

20... Q×c4 21 R×d8 R×d8 22 Q×d8+ Kf7

And after another 13 moves the two men agreed to a draw.

Marshall’s escape in the third round against Lasker might have been termed lucky and his loss in the fourth to Alekhine was well-deserved. As a result, the outlook for the American representative was not promising. The rules of the tournament called for two stages: After the initial 11-man round robin was completed, the five highest scorers would engage in a double-round finals. To qualify for the finals, a score of 6–4 would probably be good enough, but 6½–3½ would be safer.

This meant that with a 1½–2½ score, Marshall’s chances of qualifying might have looked poor—except that he had already faced three of the other four ultimate finalists and thus the easier opponents lay ahead.

Marshall’s prospects improved in the fifth round as he set in motion the collapse of a rival for a spot in the finals.

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Ne3 Nf6 4 c×d5 c×d5 5 Nf3 e6 6 Bg5 Qb6

Bernstein who had later upset Lasker, stood 3–1 at this point in the tournament, with excellent chances of qualifying for the finals. He dares Marshall for the next few moves to capture on f6.

7 Qe2 Nc6 8 e3 Bd7 9 a3 Re8 10 Bd3 Bb4+?

A clever method of trying to exploit the queenside (… with B×c3 and ... Na5) that is based tactically on White’s inability to play 11 a×b4 N×b4 12 Qd2 N×d3+ 13 Q×d3 because of 13... Q×h2.
Before play had begun more than two weeks before, there appeared to be three almost-certain qualifiers—Lasker, Capablanca, and Rubinstein. The last two places in the five-man final were presumed to be up for grabs in what Lasker described as a “passionate, nervous struggle.” Well before the tenth and final round, Capablanca had already clinched the first of the finals spots. Lasker joined him with a win over Gunsberg and a 6½–3½ score. But Rubinstein was having a terrible tournament, winning only two games, from tail-enders Janowsky and Gunsberg, while losing to Alekhine and Lasker. Rubinstein’s failure to reach the finals was the scandal of the tournament. He had never finished lower than fourth in the 15 tournaments since his international debut at Barmen 1905—and he wouldn’t finish that low again until 1922.

Rubinstein’s failure was Marshall’s blessing. Frank drew quickly in the final preliminaries round, May 7, with Nimzovich, who had long since lost hopes of qualifying. The draw gave Marshall a 6–4 score, which could be equaled or exceeded by Alekhine and Tarrasch but by no one else. He was certain of reaching the finals.

On May 8th, a grand banquet was held to celebrate the end of the preliminaries. The players were entertained on the piano by Sergei Prokofiev, a devoted chess fan, and given surprise presents, enamel and gold goblets and cups, done in the Russian style by Fabergé.

In the finals each man would face the other four twice. Scores from the preliminaries (Capablanca 8–2, Lasker and Tarrasch, 6½–3½, Marshall and Alekhine 6–4) were carried over, so Marshall was temporarily in sole second place after his first-round win:

132. Queen’s Gambit Declined, Tarrasch Defense
Tarrasch–Marshall, St. Petersburg 1914
1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 c5 4 e3 Nf6 5 Nf3 Nc6 6 Bd3?! dxe4 7 Bx4 a6 8 0–0 b5 9 Bd3 Bb7 10 a4 c4

Tarrasch’s inability to challenge his own pet defense has allowed Marshall to transpose favorably into a Queen’s Gambit Accepted.

11 Be2 b4 12 Ne4 Be7 13 Qc2 Na5 14 Nxe6+ gxe6

Now recognized as thematic in such positions (keeping pawn control of e5 and opening the g-file) this doubling of the f-pawns raised a few eyebrows in 1914. Black’s king will now be safe enough at e7 or h8 (via f8 and g7).

15 e4 Rg8 16 Bf4 b3 17 Bbl Rc8 18 Bd2 Qb6 19 Re1 Bb4 20 Be3 Kf8 21 Qd2 Bxc3 22 Qb6+ Ke7 23 Rxc3 Rg61

(see diagram)
133. French Defense, McCutcheon Variation
Marshall–Alekhine, St. Petersburg 1914, Finals
1 d4 e6 2 c4 d5 3 Ne3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Bb4 5 Bd3

Since 5 e5 was still suspect, Lasker had tried 5 Bd3 in his match with Tarasch but Black was able to equalize with 5 ... dxe4 6 Bxe4 c5. Perhaps Marshall had a new idea against that line.

5 ... e5 6 e5 h6?

But this is dubious. With 6 ... cxd4! Black at least equals (7 exf6 dxe5 8 fxg7 cxb2+ 9 Kf1 Bc3 or 7 a3! Be7 8 Nbd5 a6 9 Nxd4 Nfd7)

7 Bd2 cxd4 8 Nb5 Bxd2+ 9 Qxd2 Nfd7 10 Nfd6+ Kf8 11 Qf4 f6
12 e5 fxe5 13 Nxe5

Now 13 ... Qxe8 18 Qd6+, or 13 ... e5 14 Qf6 Qxe8 15 Qxe5 regains a key pawn, after which Black is vulnerable on the light squares. Therefore he wades into a whirlpool with:

13 ... e5 14 Qf3 e4 15 Bxe4 dxe4 16 Qa3+ Kg7 17 Nd6 Nc6 18 0-0-0 Nde5 19 Ne2 d3 20 f4?

Maintaining the initiative (20 ... dxe3 21 Ng5, 20 ... Ng4 21 Nxe4), but the simple 20 Nxe4 leaves Black a pawn down with a rotten position to boot.

20 ... e3 21 gxf3 Qa5

As Marshall said in My Fifty Years, Tarrasch could have resigned here but played on another 14 moves.

Sadly, this was the only game the American was to win in the finals, although he should have fared much better. For example, in his next game, he faced 21-year-old Alekhine, who he recalled as “A very nervous chess master. When he makes a move he gives his opponent a stare and often twists his hair. Lots of life and endurance.”
24 Rb3?? Rxg1+ White resigns

The difference between 24 Re3 and 24 Rb3 is that now 25 N×g1 allows mate on e1. A tragic turnaround for the American.

In the next to last round, tied with Tarrasch for last place, he had a chance to finish last and to avenge old scores.

134. French Defense, Exchange Variation
Marshall-Capablanca, St. Petersburg 1914, Finals

1 d4 e6 2 c4 d5 3 c×d5+ e×d5 4 Nf3 Bg4 5 h3 Bh5 6 Be2 Nc6 7 0–0 Bd6 8 Ne3 Nge7 9 Be3 f6 10 Qd2 Bf7 11 Rae1 a6 12 a3

This was the tournament in which Lasker caught up with the rampaging Capablanca by beating him with the reputedly unambitious Exchange Variation of the Ruy Lopez. Marshall may have been playing a similar psychological game with his choice of opening here, since Black needed a full point from this game. Therefore White chose a notoriously drawish line and forced Black to take certain risks, such as queenside castling.

12 ... Qd7 13 Nh4 0–0–0 14 f4 Nb8 15 Bg4 Be6 16 f5! Bf7 17 Ne2 Rde8 18 Bf4 Nc6 19 B×d6 Q×d6 20 Nf4 Nbd8 21 c3 Nbc6 22 g3 Na5 23 R×e8 R×e8 24 N×g2 Nc4 25 Qf2 Qb6 26 Nd3 Qb5 27 Re1! N×a3? 28 R×e8 B×e8

Black has won a pawn but underestimates the brisk manner in which White's minor pieces target d5 now.

29 Ng4 Nc4 30 Bf3 Bf7 31 Qe2 Qd7 32 Ne5! Qd6 33 Nc6 g5 34 N×d5! N×e6 35 f×e6 B×e6 36 Bg4!

After 36 Bg4

This should have won since Black must concede a piece (36 ... B×g4? 37 Qe8+ Q×g8 38 Ne7+; 36 ... f5 37 B×f5).
Belgium and France. Five Aprils later at Cambridge Springs no one seemed to pay much attention when it was announced during the tournament that the French-English alliance, the Entente Cordiale, was solidified in writing. And few players took much notice at Prague 1908 when the alliance became the Triple Entente with the meeting of Czar Nicholas II and King Edward VII. The Agadir crisis, which nearly brought Europe to war in July and August, was largely overlooked by the masters who gathered for the great Karlsbad tournament of 1911. But when the Austrian Archduke Francis Ferdinand was assassinated in late June 1914, the pace towards crisis speeded up, and no one could ignore it.

Marshall began the Mannheim tournament uneventfully with four draws, while Rudolf Spielmann was seizing first place with four wins. The American then broke into the plus column with:

135. Queen's Gambit Declined, Semi-Slav Defense

Marshall–Fahmi, Mannheim 1914

1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 e6 3 c4 c6 4 Nc3 Nf6 5 e×d5 e×d5 6 Qb3!? Ng6?
7 e4!

Spraying a little trap: Capturing on e4 exposes f7 to Ng5 and Bc4.

7 ... Nb6 8 e5 Ng8?

Now Black gets a horrible game. Perhaps he overlooked that 8 ... Ne4 9 N×e4 d×e4 10 Ng5 is harmless because of 10 ... Qd5.

9 Bd3 Be6 10 Ng5 Qd7 11 N×e6 f×e6 12 0–0 g6 13 Bg5 Be7 14 Bd2! Bf8 15 Rac1 Ne7 16 a4 Nf5 17 Nc2 Nc8 18 B×f5!

Well-timed. Now 18 ... e×f5 19 Nf4 and 20 e6 leaves Black in a mess. He prefers to concede h5 to the White knight.

18 ... g×f5 19 Nf4 Ne7 20 Nh5 Ng8 21 Re3 0–0–0 22 Rfc1 a6

Black had to do something about the threat of a5×a6 and possible sacrifices on c6 (22 ... Q×f7 23 R×c6+ b×c6 24 R×c6+ Kd7 25 Qb5!, with a key variation being 25 ... Q×h5 26 Re7+!! K×c7 27 Ba5+ Ke8 28 Qc6+ and mates).

23 Qb6 Ne7 24 Rh3

Threatening 25 Ba5 Bh6 26 Qa7! and a crushing check at a8. The rest is predictable mayhem.

24 ... Kb8 25 Ba5 Bh6 26 Nf6 Qe8 27 Re2 Ka8 28 Qb4 c5 29 R×e5 Nc6 30 B×d8 R×d8 31 Qb6 Bf8 32 Re2 Be7 33 Rbc3 Rh8

Farewell to Europe

34 R×c6 b×c6 35 R×c6 Qb7 36 Q×a6+ Q×a6 37 R×a6+ Kb7 38 R×c6 Resigns

It was on the day of this game that word arrived of Serbia's rejection of an Austrian ultimatum. Marshall, who cared little for international politics, followed his first win with a fighting draw with Milan Vidmar, an uneventful one with Savielly Tartakower and a fine endgame win over Walter John. This last game was the only one from Mannheim that Marshall included in My Fifty Years—and it was not as impressive as this middlegame crush from the seventh round:

136. Queen's Gambit Declined, Lasker Defense

Marshall–Ritc, Mannheim 1914

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Be7 5 e×d5 Q×e7 6 c×d5 N×d5 7 B×e7 Q×c5 8 e×d5 N×c3 9 R×e3 e×d5 10 Qc2 e6 11 Nf3 Nd7 12 Bd3 Nf6 13 0–0 Bg4 14 Ne5 Bb5?

A perfectly natural idea—to exchange off the bishop from g6 that gets Black into hot water.

15 f4! Ne4

Now 15 ... Bg6 would have been met by 16 f5 and other moves would have invited the preparatory 16 h3 (or the immediate 16 g4). Now White cannot capture twice on e4 because of 17 ... f6. But he can play:

16 B×e4 d×c4 17 g4 Bg6 18 f5 f6 19 N×g6 h×g6 20 f×g6 f5 21 g×f5 Qg5+ 22 Qg2 R×f5 23 R×f5 Q×f5

After 23 ... Q×f5

24 Re5 Qf6 25 Rh5!

Anticipating 25 ... Rf8, which would now allow 26 Rh8+ and 27 Qh3+, mating. Note that the immediate 25 Q×e4 would allow 25 ... Rf8 26 Qg2
Qe6: 27 e4 Rf6 28 Rg5 Qc4 with plenty of counterplay. Marshall never gives Black a chance now.

25 ... Re8 26 Qg4! Re6 27 Rg5 Rd6 28 h4! Re6 29 h5 Re8 30 Rf5 Qe6 31 Rf4 Qd5 32 Qf5 Resigns

After nine rounds, Marshall had fought his way to a tie for fourth place, behind Alekhine, Vidmar and Spielmann, but with a relatively easy field left to play. But he lost horribly on Friday, July 31, and, as it turns out, thereby lost all chance of finishing among the top three.

137. Falkbeer Countergambit

*Spielmann-Marshall, Mannheim 1914*

1 e4 e5 2 f4 d5 3 cxd5 c4 4 d3 Nf6 5 dx4 Nxc4 6 Nf3 Bg4?

An unfortunate innovation. Marshall, who had that terrible game with Alapin to recall from Ostende 1909, avoids the key 6 ... Bc5 line.

7 Bd3 f5 8 Qe2! Qxd5 9 Nc3

Even better is 9 Nbd2 when Black has no compensation at all for his lost pawn.

9... Bb4 10 Bd2 Bxc3 11 Bxc3 Nc6?*

Desperation comes early. Clearly 11 ... 0-0? 12 Bc4 wasn’t the answer.

12 Bxg7 0-0-0 13 Bxh8 Rxh8 14 Qe3! Bxf3 15 Qxf3 Nd4 16 Qe3 Qc5

After 16 ... Qc5

Setting up a dangerous threat of 17 ... Nxc2+ and 18 ... Qxe3+. White cannot castle because of knight checks at e2 or b3 but ...

17 Kf1! Qb4 18 Rd1 Re8 19 c3 Qa4 20 b3 Nxc3 21 Qd4! Qa5 22 b4 Resigns

The same day Austria called for general military mobilization. War was virtually certain now and the players had to be concerned. During the first international tournament ever held in Germany, at Baden-Baden in 1870, a war broke out between France and Prussia. The French players at the German spa quickly departed, fearing they would be arrested. Much the same fear now swept over Mannheim. If French troops, coming to the defense of ally Serbia, invaded, would they seize Spielmann, Tartakower, and Réti? Or if German troops arrived first, would they arrest the Russians, now that the Czar had declared support for the allies against Germany and Austria?

On Friday, July 31, Marshall played what proved to be his last game in Europe for more than a decade. Fittingly, it was a victory against Janowsky, a 62-move Slav Defense. The game enabled the U.S. Champion to join the two young hypermoderns, Breyer and Réti, in fourth place, at 7-4, behind Alekhine’s 9½-1½, Vidmar’s 8½-2½ and Spielmann’s 8-3, when the weekend free days arrived.

That Sunday, gunshots were heard while the players were relaxing at their hotel. A terrified Marshall turned pale and shouted, “Are the French here already?” He then ran to the cellar, according to *La Stratégie*, and could be coaxed out only by three stiff brandies and assurances that what he heard was only target practice.

Nevertheless, the tournament was doomed. The organizers canceled the final six rounds and paid the players off at a prorated prize schedule. Marshall received 375 marks, or less than $100, for his troubles. Had the tournament continued, he would have had good chances since he had yet to play Alekhine, and three of his other four games left were against weak masters (Erhard Fost, Carl Cars and Paul Kruger). Alekhine, on the other hand, had yet to play Vidmar, Spielmann and Réti.

On that Monday, August 3, German soldiers arrived and duly rounded up the Russians, including Alekhine, and an Ukrainian named Yefim Bogolyubov who was playing in his first international. Marshall, as a neutral American, was allowed to leave. He told friends he didn’t even fetch his trunks from his hotel room but rushed to the nearest train station. In *My Fifty Years* he recalled how he “made for the Dutch border and arrived in Amsterdam after many adventures. Usually a seven-hour trip, it took me 39 hours.”

Along the way he was reunited with his baggage but lost it again— including the Fabergé cup from St. Petersburg, but reached London where he boarded the S.S. *Rochambeau* and sailed for home. “Five years later, much to my astonishment, my trunks arrived in New York, with their contents intact!” he wrote.
Chapter Twelve

The War Years

The Great War devastated chess. It forced many of Marshall's rivals out of the game. Ossip Bernstein did not play competitively for eighteen years after St. Petersburg. Aaron Nimzovich was absent from chess until 1920. Géza Maróczy had withdrawn even before the war, playing no public games between 1909 and a simultaneous exhibition in 1917.

And, of course, there were those whose sacrifice went beyond the professional, such as Karl Schlechter. Weakened by starvation, the great Austrian master died of pneumonia on his way home to his mother's to celebrate Christmas 1918. The early casualties even included F.G. Naumann, president of the British Chess Federation, who perished with nearly 1200 others when the S.S. Lusitania, on route from New York to Liverpool, was sunk in May 1915 by a German U-boat. Later that year the S.S. Hesperian was also sunk — along with all the American-bound copies of the September issue of the British Chess Magazine.

Chess fared much better in the neutral United States. Nevertheless, Marshall only entered two major tournaments during the four and a half years of the fighting. The first of these, in April and May 1915, was another of the New York tournament series that had begun in 1911. This time it was an eight-man event featuring Capablanca, the émigré Kupchik, Chajes (a reserve officer in the Austrian army) and the recently arrived German, Edward Lasker, and three of the usual minor New York masters. Although the latter were improving, it was clear they were far from Marshall's class:

138. Four Knights Game
Jacob Bernstein—Marshall, New York 1915
1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 Ne3

In this tournament another local master, the Danish-born Einar Michelsen, accepted the Petroff invitation (3 N×e5 d6 4 Nf3 N×e4 5 d4 d5 6 Bd3 Bd6...)}

5 0–0 0–0 6 d3 d5?

To enliven the Four Knights Marshall had also tried 4... Be5 5 N×e5 Nd4 6 Be4 Qe7 (e.g., tenth 1905 match game versus Janowsky, which led to equality after 7 Nf3 d5 8 N×d5 N×d5 9 B×d5 c6 10 N×d4 c×d5 11 Nb3 d×e4 12 N×e5 Q×e5 13 d4) and 4... Bb4 5 0–0 0–0 6 d3 B×c3 7 b×c3 d5.

Instead of 6... d5 as in this game he later tried 6... Nd4?, against Maróczy at Karlsbad 1929, but got a bad game after 7 N×d4 c×d4 8 Ne2 d5 9 e×d5 Q×d5 10 Be4.

7 e×d5

One of the points of Black's sixth move is that the win of a pawn with 7 B×c6 b×c6 8 N×e5 allows 8... B×c3 9 b×c3 d×e4 with chances for both sides, e.g., 10 Ba3 Re8 11 N×c6 Qd7 12 Nd4 Nd5 13 Qd2 and now 13... Bb7 14 Rael Qe4 15 d×e4 R×e4 as in Colin-Marshall, Karlsbad 1911, which was drawn, and also 13... Ba6 14 Rf1 Rad8 15 Be5 Qg4, as in Tarrasch—Marshall, San Sebastian 1911, ditto.

7... N×d5 8 N×d5

Kupchik had played 8 Bg5 Be7 9 B×e7 Nd×e7 against Marshall at Havana 1913 but achieved nothing, and neither did Tarrasch, who had tried 9 N×d5...
B x g 5 10 N x g 5 Q x g 5 11 c 3 Rd 8 at San Sebastian 1912. The move chosen is best, if White continues 9 B c 4 f.

8 . . . Q x d 5 9 B x c 6 ! b x c 6 10 Q e 2 R c 8 11 B d 2 R b 8 12 B x b 4 R x b 4 13 b 3 R g 4 14 R f d 1 e 5 !

If Black fails to recognize the identity of his foremost target—the g 2 square—the advantage would quickly pass to White.

15 N e 1 R g 6 16 Q e 4 Q d 6 17 c 3 B d 7 18 f 3 B c 6 19 Q e 2 R h 6 ! 20 h 3 R c 6 c 5 21 R d 2 R g 6

Having covered g 2 with whatever force he had, White is ready to untangle his pieces with N c 2 e 3 and R e 1 and assume the initiative. Now the threat of 21 . . . R x h 3 was best met by 22 K f 1 .

22 K h 1 Q e 6 23 Q f 1

Both g 2 and h 3 are targets now and Marshall turns his lumber towards them. Note that 23 N c 2 would allow the immediate 23 . . . R x h 3+ 24 g x h 3 Q x h 3+ 25 Q h 2 Q x f 3+ and wins.

23 . . . R g 3 ! 24 R c 1 B d 7 25 R c 2

Marshall gives this line as illustrative of Black’s threats. 25 K h 2 Q g 6 26 R c 2 f 5 27 R e 2 f 4 28 R x e 5 B x h 3 ! 29 g x h 3 R x h 3+ 30 Q x h 3 R x h 3+ 31 K x h 3 Q g 3 mate.

25 . . . Q g 6 26 R c 2 B x h 3 ! 27 g x h 3 R 3 x g 3+ 28 R h 2 Q g 3 !

Leads to a winning endgame after the text, or 29 Q g 1 R x h 2+ 30 R x h 2 R x h 2+ and 31 . . . Q x e 1+.

29 R x h 3 R x h 3 30 Q x h 3 Q x h 3+ 31 K g 1 f 5 32 R e 2 K f 7 33 K f 2 h 5 34 K g 1 Q g 3+ 35 K f 1 h 4 36 R g 2 Q f 4 37 K e 2 h 3 38 R g 1 Q h 2+ 39 K f 1 Q x a 2 40 R h 1 b 2 41 c 4 Q d 2 White resigns

After 28 . . . Q g 3

The War Years

Marshall drew both games with Capablanca and both men dominated the rest of the field. What ultimately determined first place was that Marshall drew one game each with Chajes and Lasker, whereas Capa swept them.

Marshall could easily have lost to "the other Lasker":

139. Franco-Sicilian Defense, Marshall Variation

1 e 4 c 5 2 N f 3 e 6 3 d 4 d 5

Marshall called this "an aggressive plan with which I have had quite a lot of success" in his unpublished notes.

4 e 5 x d 5 e x d 5 5 N c 3 N f 6 6 d 4 c 5 N c 6 7 B g 5 B e 6 8 B d 3 B x c 5 9 0—0 0—0 10 Q d 2 B e 7 11 K a 1 R c 8 12 N e 2 B g 4 ? !

It's risky to trade off this piece because it's the best defender of the d-pawn.

13 Q f 4 B x f 3 14 Q x f 3 N e 5 15 Q x g 3 N x d 3 16 Q x d 3 h 6 17 B x f 6 ! B x f 6 18 c 3 Q b 6 19 N f 4 Q x b 2 20 N x d 5 R c 6

Lasker must have seen the desperate trick of 21 R b 1 Q x a 2 22 N b 4 R x c 3 !. However, 21 R b 1 followed by 22 N x f 6+ and 23 R x b 7 would leave White with the superior heavy pieces.

21 R d 2? Q a 3 22 Q b 5 Draw


On a more somber note: Two days before the tournament's end word arrived of the Lusitania tragedy and the deaths of the 124 Americans aboard. Within two years the United States had joined the war.

The Amateur's Best Friend

A professional like Marshall needed to find a more stable source of income than tournament prizes and matches against fellow masters. He increasingly relied on wealthy patrons, on opponents who took a board in his simultaneous exhibitions, and in readers of his books. In short, he relied on amateurs.
Later, in his unpublished notes, Marshall would criticize Siegbert Tarrasch: "He could not or would not understand the amateur and made many enemies because of this." Marshall, with Carrie's support, would never make this mistake. From 1914 Marshall seemed destined to make himself the amateur's best friend.

Amateurs, he found, were more willing to spend money on chess while on vacation and Marshall turned to the popular resort Atlantic City. The New Jersey spa had been a summer attraction for chess masters since the turn of the century, when Pillsbury held court, even in his last year of life. Marshall would spend the next several summers at "Young's Old Pier" or at the Chess and Checker Divan on Million Dollar Pier in Atlantic City, usually some June to Labor Day, playing chess and checkers with amateurs. In 1915 he gave several simul and competed in a short tournament of three players, winning one and drawing one each with Sydney T. Sharp, the Pennsylvania champion, and Wilbur T. Moorman of Lynchburg, Virginia. A Philadelphia newspaper account of the time said he had "opened a chess and checker divan in the Exposition Building, where he will be on hand to meet all comers."

Marshall also resumed his simultaneous exhibition tour. It was common at this time for grandmasters to tour the United States two or three months at a time, giving simul at more than two dozen cities. The strength of the opposition varied considerably and a player like Marshall or Capablanca often went days without losing. In 1906 Marshall had scored 86 percent during one tour and this batting average was later beaten by Capablanca. (According to one story, in the 1880s Johannes Zukertort arrived in a Wyoming town for a scheduled exhibition and found virtually no one there could play chess. So Zukertort provided a different performance, a piano concert.)

To raise the level of challenge in a smaller town, Marshall would play one of his rare blindfold games against teams of opponents:

140. Queen's Gambit Declined
1 d4 d5 2 c4 c6 3 Ne3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Be7 5 e3 N6d5? 6 Nf3 0-0 7 Re1
Ng4 8 Bxh7 Nxe7 9 cxd5 exd5 10 Bd3 Bf5 11 h3 Nf6 12 0-0 e6
13 Ne5 Nd7 14 f4 Bxh3 15 Qxd3 Nxe5 16 fxe5 Qd7

After an indifferent opening Marshall has to work hard to prove an advantage.

17 Rh3 Ng6 18 Qh1 Rac8 19 Ne2 Re7 20 Ng3 Re6 21 Nf5 Qd8
22 Rg3 Kh8 23 Qe2! c5 24 Qb5 cxd4 25 exd4 Qh6 26 Rf2 Qb4

The War Years

27 Kh2 Qe1 28 Kg3 f6 29 Nh4! Ne7 30 Qg4 Rc6 31 Qd7! Qb4
32 Rf4 Ng4 33 Nxa6 h x g 6 34 c6 Rd6

After 34 ... Rd6

Here 35 Qe7 doesn't get anywhere because of 35 ... Kg8l and 36 ... Rb6. Marshall finds an improvement.

35 Qf7! Rx f7 36 e x f7 g5

Of course, 37 Rh4 mate had also been threatened. Marshall now finishes off in style.

37 f8(Q)+ Kh7 38 R xf6! Rb6 39 Rh6+! K x h 6 40 Qb8+ Kg7 41 g4!

The threat of mate with Qh5 cannot be averted cheaply. Black played 41 ... Qd6+ 42 Kh1 Qh6 43 R fx f4 x f4 and resigned 14 moves later.

But in the larger cities simul were different. Alexander Alekhine later told a Parisian interviewer that New York was the toughest place in the world to give a simul because even the best players take boards there, whereas in Singapore the local champion wouldn't deign to play a visiting grandmaster. Marshall expected that his opponents in New York might often be masters. But when in 1915 he traveled to distant Portland, Oregon, for an exhibition, he discovered all the best Northwest players came out to face the U.S. Champion. He won 77 games and drew 11 in Oregon, while losing only 4.

That performance, against 92 opponents, broke an 11-day-old North American record set by Capablanca, who had played 84 opponents (but only on 65 boards). The fact that Marshall could conclude an exhibition that large in one evening convinced him he could break the world record—without physically collapsing. The record of 100 games, set by Hans Fahrni in Munich in 1906, was within reach.

On March 21, 1916, Marshall broke Fahrni's record at a highly publicized display at the National Press Club in Washington, D.C. The
Brooklyn Daily Eagle's account was headlined: “Marshall Shatters Records at Chess. Brooklyn Master Engages 105 Opponents Simultaneously, Fixing New World's Figures.” A huge crowd that included Vice President Thomas R. Marshall “followed the champion's maneuvers throughout the evening,” according to the Eagle. As usual, Marshall played speedily, but the exhibition ran from 8 p.m. to after 3 a.m. He registered 82 wins and 15 draws, and conceded 8 losses.

Then on the day after Christmas 1917, the now 40-year-old Marshall broke his own record playing 129 games in Philadelphia, at the Curtis Publishing Company's auditorium. He won 97, drew 23, and lost 9. The Philadelphia Public Ledger account, accompanied by a four-column picture, said he played with a speed “which has been unequalled heretofore in the history of the mental game.” He started making 13 moves a minute, increased to 14, and eventually 15. Marshall began at 2:30 in the afternoon, took a break at 6:30 when some 60 games were left, then continued until 11:30 p.m. for more than 7 hours of play.

"In the course of his travels from board to board, Marshall covered a distance of 18 miles, which is another world’s record," the Ledger said. One of the draws was this:

141. Danish Gambit Declined
Marshall-R.S. Goerlich, Philadelphia 1917

1 e4 e5 2 d4 exd4 3 c3 d5 4 e4xd5 Qxd5 5 cxd4

Marshall used the Danish Gambit as his number one simul weapon and it helped reduce the day's workload by knocking off some weaker opponents in the first 20 moves. In a 1919 team blindfold match against Brooklyn master Alfred Schroeder he won neatly after 5 ... e5 6 Nf3 Qxd4 7 Bb5+ Bd7 8 Qe2+ Be7 9 Nf3 Qe4 10 Nd5 Kd8 11 Bd4 Bxh5 12 Qxh5 Qe6+ 13 Be5! Qxe5 14 Qxh5 and now if 14 ... Nxe5 White wins with Bxg7. That game ended with 14 ... bxc6 15 Ne5 Nf6 16 Nxe8 Nxe8 17 0-0-0 Kxe8 18 Rfe1 Nd5 19 Ne7! Nxe7 20 Bxe7 Kxe7 21 Rxd5 cxd5 22 Rxe7+ resigns.

5 ... Nc6 6 Nf3 Bg4 7 Be2 Bb4+ 8 Ne3 Nge7 9 0-0 Bxc3 10 bxc3 0-0 11 c4 Qe4! 12 Bb2 Nf5

"However, I went to the well too often," Marshall wrote in My Fifty Years about the Danish. "When it was announced that Marshall was coming to give a 'simultaneous,' the boys all studied up the best defense. I finally gave it up!" Now Black uses his knights to force Marshall to concede squares in the center.

13 h3 Bxf3 14 Bxf3 Qf4! 15 d5 Ne5 16 Bxe5 Qxe5 17 Rel Qf6 18 Rbl b6 19 Qd3

The War Years

Not 19 d6 because of 19 ... Rad8. White has to be careful he is not left with a bad bishop endgame.

19 ... Nh4 20 Be4 Ng6 21 Bxg6 fxg6

By exposing f2 to attack, Black creates enough counterplay and soon it is Marshall who seeks peace.

22 f3 Ra8 23 Qd2 Qh4 24 Rx e8 Rx e8 25 Rel Qe7 26 Kh1 g5 27 Rd1 Ke7 28 f4! Draw

Marshall continued to challenge the record for the next few years, playing 144 in Buffalo March 8, 1917, and 145 in New York the following April 4. Despite the war and its shortages, players were readily available. In fact, after a 56-board exhibition at Chicago's Western Electric Chess Club in 1918 Marshall brought home one of the "war sets" used in all the games. Since wood was scarce, all the pieces were made of lead.

One of the few opportunities for an exhibition he did turn down was in 1916 when Newell Banks of Detroit, the checker champion, offered to play 10 games of chess and checkers either over-the-board or blindfolded. Knowing Banks also to be an excellent chessplayer (he drew with Janowsky at the Rice Memorial Tournament), Marshall wisely said no.

Janowsky Again

Isaac Leopold Rice had one final chess goal—to sponsor a truly great tournament in 1916, something approaching St. Petersburg 1914, in celebration of the sixtieth anniversary of his arrival in America. But Rice died in November 1915. That and the general unavailability of European players because of the war quashed all hope of a New York super-tournament. Instead, a Rice Memorial Tournament was organized at the Hotel Ansonia in January-February 1916 in somewhat scaled down form. All of the local masters, except Jaffe, but including Newell Banks and Albert Hodges, were invited. Even Janowsky and Boris Kostić, the Serbian globetrotter, agreed to play. An invitation to Alekhine, who had disappeared after Mannheim, was never answered.

But Marshall asked for a $150 appearance fee and when it was denied, refused his invitation. The Rice Memorial, despite the presence of the Europeans, turned out to be a Capablanca runaway. The Cuban lost only one game. As it turned out, this would be the only loss he would suffer for eight years.

Janowsky remained in America and ended up playing matches against the three strongest Americans who had failed to play in the Rice
After a pair of 60-plus-move draws, Marshall struck again, this time as White. Emanuel Lasker had once analyzed Janowsky's style and concluded—contrary to the prevailing wisdom—that Janowsky was actually an excellent positional player. As a result, the Frenchman often obtained winning positions by the twentieth move. But then, Lasker believed, he often began to regret having to finish off such an enjoyable situation—and would blunder. In a purely tactical battle he might have fared better, despite games like this one:

142. Queen's Gambit Declined, Semi-Tarrasch Defense
Janowsky-Marshall, first match game, 1916
1 d4 d5 2 e4 e6 3 Nf3 c5 4 e3 Nc6 5 Bd3 Nf6 6 0-0 Bd6 7 b3 0-0
8 Bb2 cxd4 9 exd4 b6 10 Ne5 Bx e5!

Making the fianchettoed bishop bad and securing c5 for a knight.
11 dxe5 Nxe5 12 cxd5 exd5 13 Rel1 Ne5 14 Nc3 d4 15 Nb5 Nxd3
16 Qxd3 Ba6 17 a4 Qd5! 18 f4 Nb4 19 Qd2?! Not liking 19 Qe4 Qc4 and 20 Nc2 or 19 Qxd4 Qxd4 20 Nxd4
Nd5 White offers a dubious gambit.
19 ... Bxb5 20 axb5 Qxb5 21 f5 Nfd3 22 Qe2 Rfe8!

After 22 ... Rfe8

Just in time. Now on 23 Rad1 Black eludes the pin with 23 ... Rxe5!
23 Bxd4 Rad8! 24 e6?

Things were getting bad (24 Bc3 Qe5+, 24 Qe3 Nxe1 or 24 Ra4 Qxb3) but this piece sacrifice is easily repulsed.

24 ... Rxd4 25 exf7+ Kxf7 26 Rxa7+ Kf8 27 Qxe8+ Qxe8
28 Rxe8+ Kxe8 29 Rg7 Rd7 and Black won.

After 14 ... Ke7

Of course not 14 ... Kxd7 15 Be3. Now White cannot exploit the enemy king position immediately (15 Bg5?? Nxf3+ or 15 Ba4 Rad8!) but by quickly castling he can take advantage of Black's need to retake eventually on d7.

143. Vienna Gambit
Marshall-Janowsky, fourth match game, 1916
1 e4 e5 2 Nc3 Nc6 3 f4 Bb4 4 Nf3 d6 5 Bb5!

Creating a kind of Schliemann Defense (1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 Bb5 f5) reversed.

5 ... Bg4 6 h3 Bd7 7 Nd5 Bc6 8 c3

As in Marshall's variation against the King's Gambit Declined, White hopes to maintain a massive center once his d-pawn reaches the fourth rank.

8 ... a6 9 Ba4 Nf6 10 fx e5 dxe5 11 d4 cxd4 12 cxd4 Nxd4?!

This deserves a better fate. Now on 13 Bxd7+ Qxd7 14 Nxd4 Black can play 14 ... Nxe4 15 Nc3 0-0-0 16 Nxe4 Rhe8 with strong play for a piece.

13 Nxf6+! Qxf6 14 Bxd7+ Ke7!

After 14 ... Ke7
15 Rf1 Qd6 16 N×d4 B×d4 17 Qb3! K×d7 18 Bf4 Qe6 19 0–0–0!

The simplest. Now 19 ... Q×b3 20 R×d+ costs Black a piece.

19 ... Qc6+ 20 Qe3! Q×c3+ 21 b×c3 e5 22 c×d4 e4 23 e5 Rhe8

24 Bd2 c3 25 Bc1 b5 26 R×f7+ Ke6 27 Rf3 b4 28 d5+ K×e5

29 Bg3+ Kc5 30 Rf4+ Ke6 31 Kc2! Resigns

The match was effectively ended by this, even though Marshall lost the fifth game. The American completed the rout by winning the sixth and seventh games. Considering Janowsky's own impressive match record, Marshall's showing against the Frenchman should have rebutted the oft-repeated judgment that Marshall was a poor match player.

144. Queen's Pawn Game

Janowsky–Marshall, seventh match game, 1916

1 d4 d5 2 Bf4 e5 3 e3 Nc6 4 c3 e6 5 Nd2 Bd6 6 Bg3 f5

An odd but interesting decision. On the natural 6 ... Nf6 it is White who can establish a promising stonewall formation with 7 f4 and a later Bh4.

7 Ngf3 Nf6 8 Ne5 0–0 9 f4 B×e5!

An echo of move 10 from the first match game, which makes sense now that White's bishop has been made so bad by 9 f4. Now 10 d×e5 Ng4 11 Qf3 d4 looked unpleasant, so ...

10 f×e5 Ne4 11 N×e4 f×e4 12 Qg4

Played to avoid 12 Be2 Qg5. But now the roof caves in:

12 ... c×d4 13 exd4 Nx×d4! 14 c×d4 Qa5+ 15 Kd1 Bd7 16 Qe2?! Ba4+ 17 Kc1 Rac8+ 18 Kbl

Now 18 ... Bc2+ 19 Q×c2 R×c2 20 K×c2 Be8+ 21 Kd1 Qb6+ would be convincing. Marshall prefers:

\[ ... 18 R×f1+! 19 R×f1 Bb5 20 Qd1 Bd3+ 21 Q×d3 c×d3 \]

White should resign.

22 a4 Rc2 23 Bf4 Qb4 24 Bc1 R×g2 25 Ra3 d2 White resigns

The match ended 5½–2½.

The following year, after Janowsky had traveled to Lexington, Kentucky, to crush Showalter, the Frenchman once more opened discussions with Marshall. They talked about a summer match in which a player would have to score at least eight victories and also exceed his opponent by two victories in order to win. But nothing was finalized and Janowsky had to be content with beating Jaffe in another match.

Meanwhile, Americans had to wait until October 1918 for another major international. It was held in New York, organized by the Manhattan Chess Club, which had moved once again, this time to the Sherman Square Hotel, at Broadway and 71st Street. The tournament was a double-round event with seven masters headed by Capablanca, Janowsky, Kostić and Marshall.

Once again, Frank was able to demonstrate his superiority over the second-tier masters. In his unpublished notes he described his opponent in the following game as "a very enthusiastic chess master and a gentleman," as if to suggest the two didn't always go hand in hand.

145. Center Counter Defense

Chajes–Marshall, New York 1918

1 e4 d5 2 c×d5 Nf6+? 3 d4 N×d5 4 Nf3 Bg4

For nearly 12 years Marshall had been experimenting with this system, which he called "The Center Gambit," in place of the "orthodox" form of the Center Counter (2 ... Q×d5) that Mieses played so well. At Ostende 1907 Tarrasch responded 4 e4 and obtained a good game after 4 ... Nf6?! 5 Nf3 e6 6 N×c6 b×c6 7 Be3 Be7 8 Be2 Bb7 9 0–0 and 10 Qc2 (but eventually drew). In the same tournament Marshall won a nice endgame from Amos Burn in a similar line. But too often he obtained cramped positions with his queen bishop locked in by a pawn at e6. Later at Karlsbad 1907 he discovered 4 e4 Nb×d4 5 a3 N×c6 6 Be3 e5 against Tartakower. Eventually Marshall worked out a system whereby Black could develop his bishop before playing ... e7–e6.

5 Be2 c6 6 0–0 Ne6 7 c4 Nb6 8 Be3

An unnecessary move, which allows Black to offer a fairly good endgame with 8 ... B×f3 9 B×f3 N×c4! 10 B×c6+ b×c6 11 Qa4 (otherwise he remains a pawn down) Nb×d4 12 Q×c6+ Qd7. Correct was 8 Ne3.
8 ... Bc7 9 Ne3 0-0 10 Qd2? Bxf3!

But now the capture is even better since 11 Bxf3 Nxc4 is a fork.

11 gx{f3} f5!

A fine idea which keeps the enemy knight off e4 and prepares the advance of the pawn (with or without ... g7-g5).

12 Rad1 e5 13 d5?! Na5 14 Bxb6?

A grave error, based on the misapprehension that Black's knight on a5 will be trapped by a subsequent b2-b4. Marshall recommended 14 b3 and if 14 ... f4, then 15 Bxb6 followed by Bd3 to control the weakened light squares. Now Black shows that it's the squares of the other color that matter most.

14 ... a×b6 15 Kh1 Bg5l 16 Qc2 Bf4 17 Rgl Qh4 18 Rg2 Rf6 19 Rag1 Rh6l 20 R×g7+ Kh8 White resigns.

Black captures decisively on h2 next, the pretty line being 21 Rg2 Q×h2#.

New York 1918 became famous for another Marshall opening experiment, one he lost. This was the Marshall Attack in the Ruy Lopez (1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 Bb5 a6 4 Ba4 Nf6 5 0-0 Be7 6 Re1 b5 7 Bb3 0-0 8 c3 d5?!). Marshall had been analyzing the gambit possibilities of 9 exd5 N×d5 10 N×e5 N×e5 11 R×e5 Nf6 for "several years," he later revealed. It may have been inspired by a similar gambit idea of Marshall's frequent skittles opponent, Basil Soldatenkov.

One of Marshall's first successes with the gambit came in a casual 1917 game against Walter Frese, son of Thomas Frese of Brooklyn, a longstanding member of the chess community who had helped organize the First American Chess Congress back in 1857. Marshall varied from his main line (9 ... N×d5) and played 9 ... e4. Frese found what eventually became recognized as the best line, 10 d×c6 e×f3 11 d4f×g2. There followed 12 Bf4 Bg4 13 Qd3 Nh5 and now instead of 14 Be5, White erred with the faulty combination of 14 B×c7? Q×c7 15 Qe4 Nf4! 16 Q×e7 Q×e7 17 R×e7 and after 17 ... Bf5! he resigned before being mated, as Rubinstein had been at Łódź 1908.

Marshall used his new weapon twice in the New York tournament. He beat the Toronto master J.S. Morrison, who declined the gambit with 9 exd5 N×d5 10 d4 e×d4 11 c×d4 and obtained a bad game after 11 ... Bb4 12 Bd2 Bg4. But Marshall's prime target in revealing his new weapon was Capablanca, whom he faced in the first round. The Cuban played much better with 10 N×e5 N×e5 11 R×e5 Nf6 12 d4 Bb6 13 Re1 and won a defensive masterpiece. "It was spectacular chess," Helms' American Chess Bulletin wrote, "but unfortunate." The Brooklyn Daily Eagle captured the drama in its headline: "Marshall Dares, But Cuban Wins."

"The first attempt failed," said Marshall 25 years later in Chess Review:

With admirable courage and skill, Capa accepted my pawn sacrifice and defeated the attack, although playing against a prepared variation he had never seen before.

However the result of one game is not sufficient to judge the true merits of a new variation and I used the attack in many subsequent games, with varying success.

In the late 1930s Marshall found an improvement, 11 ... c6!, setting off a revival of the gambit that continues today.

Marshall might have used the gambit one more time but his opponent, Roy T. Black, informed him of the opportunity.

146. Ruy Lopez

Black–Marshall, New York 1918

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 Bb5 a6 4 Ba4 Nf6 5 0-0 Be7 6 Re1 b5 7 Bb3 0-0 8 Bd7?

Since Black usually played 7 ... d6, White tries to find something wrong with Marshall's choice. His move physically stops Black from occupying d5 and threatens to win the e-pawn.

8 ... N×d5 9 c×d5 Nb4 10 Ne3 Bb7 11 N×e5 d6 12 Ng4

Here 12 Ne3 must favor the player with the two bishops. White's idea is to meet 12 ... N×d5 with 13 Qf3, and if 13 ... c6, then 14 N×d5, capping his pawns.

12 ... f5! 13 Ne3 f4 14 a3!

Or 14 Ng4 f3 15 g×f3 N×d5 after which White's position is a mess. (see diagram)

14 ... f×e3 15 d×e3 Bh4 16 Rf1? B×f2+!

Marshall never surrenders the initiative in this game (although 16 g3 would have slowed him considerably).

17 R×f2 R×f2 18 K×f2 Qf6+ 19 Ke2

The point was that 19 Kgl Rf8 threatens mating checks at f2 and f1 (20 Qe2 N×c2 21 Q×e2 Qf1 mate; 20 h3 Qf2+ 21 Kf1 N×c2 22 Ne4 Qf5 23 Q×c2 B×d5).
19 ... Qg6 20 a×b4 Q×g2+ 21 Kd3 B×d5 22 b3? Bf5 23 Qe1 c5
24 Bb2 Re8!

Both 24 ... c×b4 25 N-moves Q×c2+ and 24 ... c4+ are threatened.

25 e4 c×b4 26 Qg3 R×c3+!! 27 B×c3 Qe2+ White resigns

One move before mate.

But Marshall also lost three other games, including a pawn-up middlegame against Capa in which time trouble proved fatal. After Marshall was crushed with White in 28 moves by Kostić, the British Chess Magazine noted that “Clearly Marshall’s form on this occasion was ‘too bad to be true.’”

He finished third, earning $100, with a plus-two score, behind Capablanca and Kostić, who both went undefeated. The gap between him and Capablanca, which seemed to have narrowed during 1911-1915, was widening and the difference between Marshall and the other Americans was becoming precipitously narrow. Helms’ explanation of his result in the American Chess Bulletin was rustiness: “The probable explanation of his falling off in form unquestionably lies in the fact that he had limited his efforts in the past three years to exhibition chess.” It was time for the 41-year-old U.S. champion to make some career decisions.

Chapter Thirteen
The House That Marshall Built

Although the war was now over, Marshall remained home. He turned down an invitation to Hastings 1919, the British Chess Federation’s summer Victory Congress, allegedly because prizes were too low. Europe had become too expensive for a player who could no longer count on a succession of top prizes.

The Marshalls spent each summer in Atlantic City, where Frank gave lectures, simul and individual lessons. Carrie occasionally joined him on his lengthy, multistate tours. The New Jersey resort, which hosted the first Miss American pageant in 1921, was also the venue for two of the strongest American tournaments of this period. One was the long-delayed Eighth American Chess Congress, which was finally held in 1921 and was a disaster for Marshall. He scored only 6–5 and finished in a tie for fifth, well behind Janowsky and a new face, that of Norman Whitaker. The previous year Marshall had done better in a smaller event which he won 7½–2½ ahead of Jaffe and Sydney Sharp.

147. Budapest Defense
Marshall–Sharp, Atlantic City 1920
1 d4 Nf6 2 c4 e5

In the final months of the War, a small tournament was held in Berlin, where Milan Vidmar surprised Akiba Rubinstein with this novelty and made an instant name for the Budapest Defense. Typically, Marshall sidesteps something his opponent clearly knew better than him and reaches a position reminiscent of a French Defense (1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 e×d5 4 c4??).

3 e3?! e×d4 4 e×d4 d5 5 Nf3 Bb4+ 6 Bb2 B×d2+ 7 Nb×d2 0–0
8 Be2 d×c4 9 N×c4 Nc6 10 0–0
Black has equality if he wants it by way of 10 ... Be6 (and later ... Bd5) or, as the game goes, with 12 ... Nd5.

10 ... Bg4 11 Nce5 Bxf3

Not 11 ... Nxe5 12 dxe5 Nd7 13 Qd5 or 12 ... Qxd1 13 Rfxd1 Nd7 14 Ra1 c6 15 Bxe6 Bxe6 16 Ng5 with advantage.

12 Nxf3 Qd5?! 13 Qa4 Rad8 14 Ra1!

Marshall reveals himself in My Fifty Years by writing: “In such positions my preference is always for an energetic counterstroke, rather than for a laborious defensive move such as Rfd1.” Black now misjudges the result of the coming liquidation. Better is 14 ... Rd6 (not 14 ... Rxe5 15 Bb5).

14 ... Nxd4?! 15 Nxd4 Qxd4 16 Qxd4 Rxd4 17 Rxc7 Rd2

18 Bc4! Ne8!

Not 18 ... Rxb2 19 Bb3 a5 20 Rxb7 a4?? 21 Bxf7+. After the move chosen, White must defer 19 Rxb7 because of the forking 19 ... Nd6.

19 Re7! Nd6 20 Bb3 Rd8 21 Re1! Rxb2 22 h3

After 22 h3

After White makes h君 he cannot be prevented from doubling rooks on the seventh rank and winning the f-pawn or b-pawn (or both) with the Red7. In such positions Black should play 22 ... g6 and ... Kg7 as soon as possible. His king belongs on a dark square.

22 ... h6? 23 Rce7 Rf8 24 Red7 Nf5

Or 24 ... Rd2 25 Bxf7+ Kh8 26 Re6.

25 Rxf7 Rfx7 26 Bxf7+ Kf8 27 Bg6 Nh4 28 Be4! g6

Otherwise 29 g3 traps the stalemated knight. Now 29 g3 Ng5 30 Bxf5 leads to a race of Black's two queenside pawns against White's kingside. But White can improve with:

29 Rxb7! Rxa2 30 g3 Nf5 31 Bxf5 gxf5 32 Rb5 a5 33 Rxf5+ Kg7 34 Kg2 a4 35 Ra5 a3 36 g4 Ra1 37 h4 a2 38 f4!

White's king should not move (38 Kg3?? Rg1+ and Black wins or 38 Kg3? Rh1 39 Rxa2 Rxb4 with drawing chances).

38 ... Kf7 39 g5 hxg5 40 h×g5 Kg7 41 f5 Resigns

White's immobile king need not move. After 41 ... Kf7 42 Ra7+ Kf8 White can advance both pawns to the sixth rank after which the win is obvious.

Marshall was more successful in his simul tours than in these tournaments. During one such tour he visited 24 clubs over an 8-week period, including stops in Detroit, Toronto, Providence, and upstate New York. He faced 589 opponents, scoring 522 wins, 46 draws and 21 losses. A report in the April 5, 1919, Philadelphia North American describes one typical Marshall simul, a 34-board affair at the Mercantile Library: “The champion, who had just returned from Chicago, where he played 30 simultaneous games last Sunday, winning them all, was in good trim and his smile and cigar were equally bright.”

The definitory Marshall exhibition was the one he gave in January 1922 in his old hometown. He was invited by the National Club of Montreal to attempt to break his previous record for most games. He did, playing 155, winning 132, drawing 21 and losing only 8.

Various sources give slightly different figures (e.g., he took 7 hours and 50 minutes, or 7 hours, 20 minutes, or 7 hours, 15 minutes) to finish. Whatever the correct amount, it was astonishingly fast. Capablanca also moved rapidly but rarely took on more than 30 opponents at a time. The Cuban attempted a Marshall-like feat at Cleveland a month after the Montreal display and played 103 games in a fairly leisurely 7 hours. True, Capa's score was much better than Marshall's—102 wins and 1 draw. But adding to the luster of Marshall's feat was that when he returned to New York he was able, according to Chess Pie, Herrmann Helms and other sources, to recall the moves to all but two of the games.

His other project during these years was more ambitious than the Atlantic City pier displays or simul. Urged on by Carrie, Frank had decided to organize his own chess club.

This was a remarkable step inasmuch as New York already had quite a few excellent clubs, not to mention play-for-free coffeehouses, and because masters worldwide had proven so inept in the past at running such an establishment. The city's existing clubs were led by the now-world-famous Manhattan, but included others that often finished ahead of the Manhattan in the annual city-wide team championship, the Metro-
The House That Marshall Built

Frank Marshall. In 1919, for example, the Rice Progressive Chess Club won the Met League, with the Brooklyn Chess Club in second place.

The clubs of those days resembled gentlemen's clubs, often with fireplaces for the cold winters, overhead fans for the summers and spittoons that were used year-round. The members were either wealthy or chess-talented, and almost exclusively men. In 1918 the Manhattan Chess Club decided to experiment by allowing women to use the club facilities—but only on Friday afternoons.

Certain New York restaurants were male bastions too and one of them, Keen's Chop House, had achieved a degree of notoriety in 1905 when Lilly Langtry, actress and mistress of the Prince of Wales, was refused service. She sued the establishment on grounds of discrimination, and won. The restaurant subsequently became a popular hangout for celebrities such as Flo Ziegfeld, John Barrymore, and J.P. Morgan. And in 1915 Frank and Carrie convinced Keen's to allow the members of "Marshall's Chess Divan" to meet regularly in their back room.

"The object was to establish in New York a central meeting place for lovers of chess, much on the same lines as such famous resorts as Simpson's Divan in London and the Cafe de la Regence in Paris," he recalled in My Fifty Years. The central location—in midtown Manhattan at 70 W. 36th Street near Broadway and not far from the new center of the city's playhouses and movie theaters—was stressed. So was the availability of other masters to play and teach. A promotional handout for the Divan advised prospective members that Jaffe of the rival Progressive Chess Club would be regularly on hand to "enable the champion to take short trips occasionally away from home for the purpose of fulfilling nearby engagements."

The handout also stressed the low fees. Chess was still an inexpensive hobby. Schlechter's edition of the German Handbuch was just about the costliest chess book in print, at $8. Most books sold in America for about $1.50, which was the price of Marshall's 1904 opening manual. Most chess sets, even weighted, wooden ones imported from Europe, sold for less than $8, although an authentic Jacques Staunton set would cost $25 to $32. Life memberships in Marshall's club were something of a bargain at only $25. Annual dues were $10. Among the other frequent guests were Mischa Elman the musician, Civil War General Stillman Kneeland, and Hudson Maxim, an inventor who specialized in explosives and had devised a new board game that Marshall soon played better than anyone else.

A specialty of the divan was "Rapid Transit" chess, a precursor to today's popular five-minute games. An arbiter would ring a bell or sound a buzzer every 10 or 20 seconds at which point the player whose turn it was to move had to do it immediately. (Up until the 1970s this, rather than speed games with clocks, was the format for the weekly rapid tournaments at the Marshall and Manhattan clubs.)

One example from this era, from the divan's second anniversary party, was this 20-seconds-a-move game from a rapid tournament Marshall won ahead of Janowsky, Oscar Chajes, Jaffe, and Albert Hodges:

148. Queen's Gambit Declined, Tarrasch Defense
J. Bernstein—Marshall, New York 1917

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 c5 4 e×d5 e×d5 5 Nf3 Ne6 6 e3 Nf6 7 Be2
Bd6 8 0-0 0-0-0 9 b3 Bg4 10 Bb2 c×d4

Perhaps intending to scare White away from the positionally desirable 11 N×d4 (because of 11 . . . B×e2 12 Nd×e2 B×h2+! 13 K×h2 Ng4+ or just 12 . . . Qc7). This pays dividends in two moves.

11 exd4?! Re8 12 Rcl? Bf4! 13 Rbl Re8 14 h3 Bb5 15 Nh2 Bg6!
16 Bd3 Qd6 17 Nf3 Ne4!


18 Nb5 Qf6 19 B×e4 B×e4 20 Ra1

After 20 Ra1

20 . . . Bb8! 21 Re1 Qf4 22 Ne5 N×e5 23 d×e5 Qg5!

Now 24 Qf4 Q×g4 and 25 . . . Re2 is even worse than the game.

24 f3 Rc2! 25 Re2 R×b2! 26 f×e4

Concession of defeat. On 26 R×b2 B×e5 27 f×e4 B×b2 28 Rbl White can still fight.
The arrangement with Keen’s didn’t last, and the divan moved on, to 118 W., 49th Street in 1918 and, a year later, to 57 W., 51st St., where it adopted a new name, “Marshall’s Chess Club.” And within two years it had moved again, leaving midtown Manhattan for good. The new home was 146 W. 4th Street, sharing a building with a restaurant called the Pepper Pot. (This site is now a laundromat.) In Greenwich Village it competed with Hodges’ newly founded, and brief-lived, Chess Club International, and promised in its advertisements “Commodious Play Room, Library and Studio with New Equipment.” Its chief selling point was Marshall himself, and the club was billed as “Headquarters of the United States Champion.”

For the $20 it then charged members annually, Marshall’s club ran a wide range of events, including lectures by Marshall, parties, handicap tournaments in which stronger players gave various odds, a series of “social evenings” on Wednesdays, interclub matches, an annual banquet and several amateur tournaments. It published a mimeographed newsletter, “Marshall’s Chess News.” The December 12, 1920, issue, for example, reported on a 20-board simul Marshall had given that fall:

149. Sicilian Defense, Wing Gambit
Marshall–Stodie, Atlantic City 1920

1 e4 e5 2 b4 c6 3 b3 c6 4 d4 Bb6 5 Nf3 d5 6 e5 Nc6 7 e3 Ng7 8 Bd3 0–0

Several years after this, Marshall’s old opponent from Ostende 1906, Eugene Znosko-Borovsky, wrote a book on combinational play that used the B×h7+ sacrifice as a model. Here’s an optimum example:

9 B×h7+ K×h7 10 Ng5+ Kg8 11 Qh5 Re8 12 Qh7+ Kf8 13 Ba3! Resigns

But the highlight of the Marshall club that year was its championship tournament. It began in 1917 with victory going to the obscure amateur Stanley Stanton and in 1918 to Edward B. Edwards, a celebrated book illustrator. By comparison the Manhattan’s championship was won in 1918 by Chajes, who was strong enough that year to defeat Janowsky in a match, and the Brooklyn C.C. championship was won by Roy T. Black, another of the nation’s top ten players. But the Marshall Championship soon began to attract stronger players such as Edward Hynes, Jr., a cable match veteran who was also one of the top U.S. bridge players, and Bruno Forsberg. In the Met League the Marshallites were still behind the pack, and in 1919 Marshall was the only player on his team to win a game in a key 2½–5½ match loss to the Brooklyn C/C.

By 1921 when the Marshall Championship was won by Forsberg, it had become a strong master event, won the next few years by three talented junior stars, Anthony Santasiere, Erling Tholfsen and A.S. Pinkus. They were followed by club champions who would soon be legitimate grandmasters—Arthur Dale in 1930, and then for three straight years, Reuben Fine (1932–34). Marshall himself only won the event twice, once in sole first place, 1937, and a year later in a tie with Dave Polland. To this day only three men have ever won both the Marshall and Manhattan Chess Club Championships—Marshall, Pinkus and Sidney Bernstein.

Another regular feature during the 1920s was the series of thematic open tournaments, sponsored by a wealthy Finnish immigrant, Edwin Dimock of New London, Connecticut. Each Dimock tournament was devoted to a rare king-pawn opening. The first was a six-man event organized in 1921 in which all games began with the Greco Countergambit. Marshall did not always take these events seriously. In the first one he only tied for first place with four wins and two losses. It could have been an even score:

150. Greco Countergambit
Marshall–Forsberg, Dimock Tournament, New York 1921

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 f5 3 Bc4!? f×e4 4 N×e5 d5

With his third move, in place of 3 N×e5, White offers the extraordinary complications of 4 ... Qg5 5 d4 Q×g2 6 Qh5+ g6 7 Bf7+ Kd8 8 B×g6 5 Qh5+ g6 6 N×g6 Nf6?

But here 6 ... h×g6 7 Q×h8 Kf7 is the more dangerous line. The Exchange sacrifice in the text line should be quickly repulsed.

7 Qe5+ Be7 8 Bb5+ Bd7 9 N×h8 B×b5 10 Ne3 Ba6 11 d3! Ne6 12 Qg3 Bb6 13 Qh4 d4?

Here or on the last move 13 ... Nd4 was called for. Now Black is nearly lost.

14 N×e4 Be7 15 N×f6+ B×f6 16 Qh5+ Kd7 17 Qh3+ Ke8 18 Q×h7??

The game suddenly turns favorable to Black. On this or the previous move White could put Black away with a check (17 Qf5+ or 18 Qh5+) followed by casting and Re1+.
18 ... Qe7+ 19 Qxe7+ Nxe7 20 0-0 Bxb8 21 Re1 Kf7 22 Bf4 Ng6 23 Bg3 c5 24 b3 b5! 25 a4 c4 26 a×b5 c×d3 27 Rx a6? d×c2

After 27 ... d×c2

Marshall was reluctant to expose his d-pawn after 27 c×d3 B×b5 but now the passed pair is too strong. He has one chance for salvation now.

28 Rd6! Re8?

Here 28 ... Re8 would advance the d-pawn decisively, e.g., 29 Re6 R×c6 30 b×c6 d3, or 29 Rd7+ Kg8 30 Re1 Rc3.

29 Re1 Rd2 30 Kg1 Rd3 32 R×c2 Re3 33 Ra2 Re7 34 R6a6 Re7+ 35 Kd1 Resigns

151. French Defense, Rubinstein Variation

Marshall (Marshall C.C.)-Grossman (City College), Met League 1922

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Ne3 d×e4 4 N×e4 Nd7 5 Nf3 Be7 6 Bd3 Ng6

Rubinstein had had good results with Black's quiet system, usually in connection with a queenside fianchetto, before the war.

7 N×f6+ N×f6 8 Ne5 0-0 9 0-0 c5 10 d×c5 B×c5!!

A slight error that misplaces at the bishop at the cost of time. With 10 ... Qc7! and ... Q×c5 Black holds White's edge down to a minimum.

11 Bg5 Be7 12 Qf3 Qd5 13 Qe2

White's last two moves were designed to lure Black's queen onto a bad square compared with 12 Qe2 Qc7. Now 13 ... Bd7 is best, but instead Black sets a minor trap (13 ... b6 14 B×f6 B×f6 15 Be7 Q×e5 wins for Black).

13 ... b6 14 Rad1 Qc5

This meets the 15 B×h7+ threat at the cost of the Exchange, e.g., 15 B×f6 and 16 Qe4 is met by 16 ... g6 17 Q×a8 B×e5.

15 B×f6 B×f6 16 Qe4 g6 17 Ng4 Resigns

After 17 Ng4

White wins a full rook.
Chapter Fourteen

Another Lasker

When Marshall was first learning the game he discovered there were two more or less regularly scheduled events that stood out on the American chess calendar. One was the annual cable match with Britain and the other, a match for the United States Championship. Though there had never been any rules governing how often a defending champion had to defend, somehow there were a spate of them in Marshall's youth: Nine championship matches took place in the 1890s. But between 1898 and 1918 there had been only one—Marshall versus Showalter. Marshall had been too far ahead of his peers to encourage challengers.

That began to change after May 1918 when Oscar Chajes, fresh from his match victory over Janowsky, issued a challenge. Marshall replied that rules following those discussed at St. Petersburg 1914 for world title matches should apply to the American title. He expected a purse of $2000, a minimum guarantee deposit from the challenger and rules stipulating that victory would go to the first player to win eight games, draws not counting.

Nothing came of the Chajes challenge, and little further was heard about the title until three years later, on September 16, 1921, when Norman Tweed Whitaker of Washington, D.C., issued another challenge to Marshall. Whitaker, then 31, was a patent attorney with a combative nature. He later achieved notoriety—and several years in a federal prison—after he was convicted of trying to obtain ransom for Charles Lindbergh's kidnapped baby. But in 1921 he was best known as a fine amateur chess player who had finished second in the Eighth American Chess Congress. And since the winner of that tournament was a French citizen (Janowsky), Whitaker felt he had a claim to be regarded as the number one United States player.

Marshall responded to Whitaker nine days later, saying he wanted $300 on signing a contract plus a guaranteed minimum stake of $2000. Of that, the defending champion would receive 60 percent "win, lose or draw."
Lasker threw Marshall on the defensive. As Black in a Vienna Game he offered a stunning knight sacrifice on the eleventh move. It was so stunning that one of the spectators collapsed of a heart attack and had to be carried away.

Marshall managed to reach a rook-and-pawn endgame with equal material by adjournment time. But his pawns were weak and his pieces passive and he had to concede at move 50. To the surprise of virtually everyone but Lasker, the match stood 2-0 in the challenger's favor.

And if it hadn't been for two Lasker blunders in a king-and-pawn ending that was eventually drawn, the score would have been 3–0. However, at this critical moment, Marshall performed one of his classic readjustments. He switched openings as the match moved to the Hamilton Club in Chicago and tied things up with victories of 39 and 33 moves.

152. Queen's Gambit Declined, Tarrasch Defense
1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 c6 3 c4 e5 4 c3 d4 5 Nc3 Nc6 6 g3 Nf6 7 Bg2 Bg4 8 0–0 Be7 9 dxe5 Bx e5 10 Bg5 d4 11 Bx f6 Qx f6 12 Ne4 Qe7 13 Nxc5 Qxc5 14 Re1 Qb6

Later in the match Marshall tried 15 Qe2 here with the idea of Ng5. But 15... h6 16 Nd2 0–0 17 Ne4 Qa6! 18 a3 Rfd8 and 19... Rac8 equalized.

15 Ng5?

An attractive maneuver whose deeper point eludes Lasker. Afterwards he recommended 15... Bxe2 16 Qd5 h6. But Marshall pointed out the favorable liquidation 15... Bxe2 16 Qa4 Bb3 17 Bx c6+ and Lasker himself later found 16 Rx c6 bxc6 17 Qa4.

15... Bf5 16 e4! dxe4 17 Rxc6 bxc6 18 Qd6!

Suddenly the center is very open—and Black's king is revealed to be uncased. Now 18... Rc8 19 Re1 would end the game promptly.
18 ... Bd7 19 Qe5+ Kf8 20 fxe3 f6 21 Rxf6+! gxf6 22 Qxf6+ Ke8 23 Qxh8+ Ke7 24 Qe5+!

Not allowing Black counterchances with 24 Qxa8 Qx3+. With two pawns and a withering attack for the Exchange, Marshall should win one of his best games once his king is safe.

24 ... Kd8 25 h4! Kc8 26 Nf7 a5 27 Nd6+ Kb8 28 Nxb5+?

Time trouble costs Marshall an easy—and pretty—win here with 28 Nc4+! Qc7 29 Nbd6! (29 ... Qxe5 30 Nxe7+).  

28 ... Kb7 29 Nbd6+ Kb8 30 Qe7? Qc7?

Lasker later claimed that 30 ... Rae7 would have forced White to draw with perpetual check. However, Marshall counterclaimed an eventual win from 31 Qf8+ Kc7 32 Qf4 Kd8 33 Qg5+ Kc7 34 Qe5 Kd8 35 Kf2 although it would probably require the promotion of a pawn. But now Marshall can finish off with dispatch.

31 Qf8+ Ka7 32 Nb5+! Kb6 33 Qxa8 Kxb5 34 Bf1+ Kb4 35 Qe8+ c5 36 Qg7+ c4 37 Kh2 Qc6 38 Qe3+ Kb5 39 Qb3+! Resigns

Marshall was lucky in the next game:

After 20 ... Rae8


Here 21 Nxf5, should win (21 ... Rg6+ 22 Qxg6), according to Lasker (but not according to Marshall, who cited 21 ... Qd8, which threatens both 22 ... g5 and 22 ... Rxe1). But Lasker played 21 Rec5 Qb6 22 Rxf5??, overlooking that 22 ... Rg6+ 23 Kh1 Qxh2 threatened 24 ... Qxf2.

White played 24 Ne4, expecting 24 ... Rx e4 25 Rdd8+, but was surprised by 24 ... Qe2! 25 Qh3 Rxe4 and Black won eight moves later.

Lasker retook the lead in game six but lost the seventh. Both men discussed this match at length in their writings, Marshall in a book called "Modern Chess in Championship Play," which had a limited edition of 300 copies and sold for a hefty $5, and Lasker in his autobiographical "Chess Secrets I Learned from the Masters." In Lasker's account he blamed his third loss to a kidney attack before the adjourned seventh game was resumed. He said Marshall refused to allow a health postponement. Marshall cited rules which said such delays did not apply to adjourned games.

The champion then scored a paralyzing technical win that was marked by one slip:

154. Queen's Gambit Declined, Tarrasch Defense

Marshall–Lasker, tenth match game, Cleveland, 1923

1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 e6 3 c4 c5 4 exd5 e×d5 5 Nc3 Nc6 6 g3 Nf6 57 Bg2 Be7 58 Bg5 0–0 59 0–0 6 h5?

A rare move which temporarily sacrifices the c-pawn.

10 Bxf6 Bxf6 11 dxe5 Bxe5 12 bxc3 Bc6 13 Nd4!

This initiates a neat liquidation recommended by Tarrasch.

13 ... Qxa5 14 e4 Qc5 5 15 Nb3!? Qxc3 16 Rcl Qd4 17 e×d5 Rad8 18 Nc5 Bg4 19 a3!

The endgame (unavoidable because of 19 ... Qxa3 20 Q×g4) favors the passed d-pawn unless it can be blocked by the knight.

19 ... Q×c5 20 R×c5 B×d1 21 R×d1 Rd6 22 Rcl Nd8

Lasker wrote in the American Chess Bulletin that 22 ... Nd4 gave Black "the better game, e.g., 23 Rc7 a6 24 R×b7 Nc2." However, 23 Re4! Nf5 24 Rb4 or 23 ... b6 24 Rc7 still favors White.

23 Re7 Kh8 24 Be4+ g6 25 Rfe7 Kg7 26 f4! h5 27 a4 Kf6 28 Kf2 Rb6 29 Red7 Rb2+ 30 Be2?

A blunder that allows 30 ... Ne6, cutting communication on the c-file (31 d×e6 R×c2+). With 30 Ke3 White is ready for 31 Rd6+ Kg7 32 R×g6+.

30 ... Kg7? 31 Ke3 a5 32 Rd6! Kg8 33 Kd2 b6 34 Red7! (see diagram)

A resignable position. Black can play with only one piece.

34 ... Ne6 35 d×e6 f×e6 36 Kc1 Rb4 37 R×e6 Rc8 38 R×g6+ Kf8 39 Rh6 Kg8 40 Kd1 Resigns

In Secrets Lasker called his failure to win the next game, the eleventh, "the tragedy of my chess career" and he blamed that draw for his poor play.
in losing the twelfth game. Marshall then nursed his one-point edge along as the match moved to Cincinnati, Baltimore, Washington, Long Island and, in May, back to the Marshall Chess Club. The champion was in serious trouble in the seventeenth game but managed to draw, a piece down, with typical tactics of confusion. In the final game, the eighteenth, Lasker was lucky to get out of the opening alive but managed to secure safety only at the cost of exchanges. The result was a draw and that was as bad as a loss since it gave Marshall a 9½-8½ winning score. The defending champion had scored 5 wins to 4 losses, with 9 draws.

In retrospect the match result was not that surprising and, in fact, Arpad Elo's rating analysis found that the projected match result—a Marshall score of roughly 10½ out of 18 games—was not far from what really transpired. Nevertheless, the closeness was a surprise. Postmortem analysis was understandably critical of Marshall's play. "The old dash and enterprise are missing," said the British Chess Magazine. There had been too many errors and too few strokes of a champion's genius.

A subdued Marshall headed off on a vacation at Thousand Islands, N.Y., while Lasker called for a rematch. Marshall replied in a letter dated October 18, 1923, that he again wanted 60 percent of the stake "with a minimum guarantee of $3,000." A series of bitter letters ensued and the matter of a rematch was slowly forgotten.

Marshall was able to ignore Lasker in part because he solidified his position as American champion late in the year at the Ninth American Chess Congress. After first indicating he was too busy, Marshall finally accepted an invitation to play in the event, at a New Jersey resort, Hotel Alamac-in-the-Mountains at Lake Hopatcong.

He began with 2 draws, then won 6 straight and led the field for most of the event. His approach was decidedly professional: Keep the draw in hand as Black, but be ruthless as White. In the six games in which he had the first move, he scored 5½-½.
begin with great victories and then dissolve into quick draws, the Marshall-Janowsky competition remained intense. At Lake Hopatcong they played 105 moves until Janowsky, two pawns down but playing for mate, conceded the draw.

On the final day Marshall won a pawn as Black from another old rival, Hodges, but couldn't convert it and played on until a drawn king-and-pawn endgame. The 72-move draw allowed Abe Kupchik, who won his last round game, to equal Marshall's 10½-2½ score. They shared the $800 set aside for first and second place. Their undefeated scores put them ½ point ahead of Janowsky, and 1½ points ahead of Edward Lasker, the recent challenger.

Before Marshall played in his next strong tournament—in fact, the greatest tournament of his era—he took part in two more Dimock theme tournaments, which he took more seriously than he had the 1921 Greco Countergambit event. The first was a six-player double-round tournament devoted to (Emanuel) Lasker's Defense to the Evans Gambit (1.e4 e5 2.Nf3 Nc6 3.Bc4 Bc5 4.b4 Bxb4 5.c3 Bb5 6.d4 d6 7.0-0 Bb6). Marshall took first place with an 8½-1½ score.

This was followed by a Bishop's Opening tournament in which all games began with 1.e4 e5 2.Bc4 Nf6 3.d4!? Marshall started with six points out of seven, including a win over a newcomer to the club, 18-year-old Carlos Torre. The greatest player Mexico ever produced, Torre had spent his teenage years in New Orleans and in 1924 moved to New York to test his rapidly improving skills. He soon won the New York State championship, after a playoff match at the Marshall club, and competed in a variety of the club's events before embarking, with his good friend Marshall, in 1925 on his too-brief international career. Torre was innocent, outgoing and, as Marshall wrote in his unpublished notes, "nearsighted, as [are] Alekhine and Capablanca."

One of Marshall's unusual ideas of this third Dimock tournament was never repeated—a transposition into an offbeat Two Knights with 5.Bg5:

156. Two Knight Defense
Marshall-Smirka, Dimock Bishop's Opening Tournament 1924
1.e4 e5 2.Bc4 Nf6 3.d4 exd4

Former club champion Bruno Forsberg tried 3...c6 in this tournament with the idea of 4.dxe5 Qb6+ 5.Nc3 Nxe4. Marshall responded, rather predictably, with 6.Bxe7+ Kxe7 7.Qf3+ Nxf6 8.exf6 Qe5+ 9.Ne4. Then with 9...d5 Black would stand well. However, Forsberg played the intermediary move, 9...Bb4+ and apparently was surprised by another version of Marshall's favorite move, 10.Kf1!!

There was no longer any pin to exploit with 10...d5, so there followed 10...Re8 11.fxg4+ Kxg7 12.Qg4+ Kh8 13.Bg5 Be7 (forced) 14.Nf5 Qb5+ 15.Kg1 d5 16.Qh5 Bd7 17.Nf6! Resigns. One of Marshall's prettiest miniatures against a master.

4.Nf3 Ne6 5.Bg5?! h6 6.Bh4 g5! 7.Bg3 d6 8.0-0 Bg4 9.e3 d×c3?

This is exactly what White wants. More in the antigambit spirit of Black's last four moves was 9...Qd7 or 9...d3.

10.N×c3 Bg7 11.h4 Qd7 12.Rel 0-0-0 13.Re1 Nh5 14.Bb5!

Exactly what is Black going to do about Nd5, Qa4 and a capture on c6?

14...N×g3 15.f×g3 g×h4 16.Nd5! B×f3

Black loses the queen away from the queenside (17.g×f3 Qh3) and with his next move meets the threat of 18.B×c6 b×c6 19.R×c6.

17.Q×f3 Rde8 18.g×h4 a6 19.Ba4 b5

20.e5! b×a4 21.R×c6

Again 21...Q×c6 loses to the knight check at e7 but now Black cannot defend c7.

21...Kb8 22.N×c7! d5 23.Qc3 Bf8 24.N×e8 Q×e8 25.Rb6+ Resigns

Marshall won the tournament 10½-1½, finishing two points ahead of Torre and well ahead of the young stars of the club, such as Erling Tholfsen. Virtually forgotten today, Tholfsen was a dangerous attacking player in the 1920s. He won the Marshall Club Championship in 1922–23 and 1923–24 and later played on a U.S. Olympic team.
crystallized within weeks. Lederer wrote Marshall on January 28 advising him that all ten Europeans sought for the great tournament, plus Edward Lasker, had accepted their invitations. Less than a month later the Europeans were sailing the Atlantic aboard the S.S. Cleveland en route to New York.

New York 1924 was a truly Olympian event. It occasioned the first and only competitive trips to America for such players as Richard Réti, Yefim Bogolyubov, Savely Tartakower and Frederick Dewhurst Yates. Only two other tournaments, St. Petersburg 1914 and Nottingham 1936, managed to attract the three world champions of this era, Lasker, Capablanca and Alekhine. And because of the presence of Réti and Alekhine (and to a lesser extent Bogolyubov and Tartakower) it was also the definitive test of the radical approaches to the game that had evolved since 1914. Using Tartakower’s term, the new ideas were called Hypermodernism.

The players aboard the Cleveland were welcomed on arrival at Manhattan’s West Side docks March 8 and whisked along, like the invitees of Cambridge Springs twenty years before, to a series of parties and social events culminating in an opening banquet attended by more than 300 at the Hotel Alamac. The older masters not only renewed their acquaintances with New York but also with one another. Some such as Lasker, Maróczy and Marshall had had little contact with their old foes in ten years because of the war and the slow rehabilitation of international chess following the armistice.

Edward Lasker later recalled that it was only during a Central Park walk with him in 1924 that Emanuel Lasker learned of the existence of Marshall’s gambit in the Ruy Lopez, which had been introduced six years before. That a former world champion was unaware of a major new opening weapon was explainable, the younger Lasker said, because Marshall had sprung it “during the war, when of course no chess news crossed the Atlantic.”

And very little had crossed in the other direction since then. This was clear in the early rounds as Marshall was stumped by the new counterattacking weapon, the King’s Indian Defense. In the first round, Réti obtained an excellent position with it against the American, who had to play accurately in a rook-and-pawn ending to draw. Following a drawn Dutch Defense with Tartakower he faced 1 Nf3! for the first time and thereby lost to Bogolyubov in round three.

The American’s next game, against Yates, saw 1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 g6 3 Nbd2 Bg7 4 e4 with transposition into a line that became known fifty years later as the Pirc Defense. Black won a pawn but in the face of Marshall’s defense had to return it. “Under the circumstances, this simplifying process
is the most sensible," AlkHEME wrote in the tournament book. "Otherwise (perish the thought) White soon could start playing for a win."

A dull loss to Moczy with the black side of a Three Knights Game left Marshall in last place—with Lasker, Alekhine and Capablanca yet to play. However, something changed here. In the next round Marshall, for the first time in his career, played a Hypermodern opening: Against Alekhine's 1 d4 he defended the Four Pawns' Attack in the King's Indian and drew a spirited tactical battle.

Premature preparation was, by 1924, a familiar grandmaster practice, but not one that all tournament organizers appreciated. The New York officials, led by Lederer, Helms and Herbert Limburg, Manhattan Chess Club president (and also a legal advisor to William Randolph Hearst), revived the pairing system of Paris 1900 that had the effect of keeping the players in the dark on the eve of each game. Each day a drawing was made to determine which round of the tournament would be held. As a result, it turned out that Marshall's two games with Capablanca were only five rounds apart, in the middle of the schedule, whereas he played Yates in the fifth round and not again until the twenty-first, the next to last.

Marshall's two games with Janowsky were also in the middle rounds. The first was this:

158. King's Indian Defense, London System
Janowsky--Marshall, New York 1924

1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 d6 3 h3 g6 4 Bf4 Bg7 5 Nbd2 c5 6 e3

White's setup had gotten a name at London 1922, although Janowsky had been playing it against other openings for years. Marshall now clarifies the center too early.

6 ... cxd4? 7 e4 dxe4 8 c3 0-0 9 Be2 Re8 10 Nc4 Be6 11 0-0 Nd5 12 Bd2 Re8 13 Ng5 Bd7 14 Qb3

Having stopped Marshall's intended ... e7-e5, Janowsky takes aim at f7—although 14 Bf3 Nb6 15 Nxb6 Qxb6 16 Qb3 is better. Black now seizes the initiative.

14 ... h6 15 Bf3 hxg5 16 Bxg5 e6 17 Bf3 Qc7 18 Ne3 Na5 19 Qd1 b5! 20 Re1 b4! 21 Nf3 Bf6 22 Ng3 Ne4 23 Bc1 d5 24 Nf1 Kg7! 25 Be2 N6d 26 Bd3 Rh8 27 Re3 Rh4! (see diagram)

The doubling of rooks followed by ... g5-g4 threatens to win out of hand.

28 Rg3 Ng7 29 Nd2 e5!
64 ... Qd4! 65 Be4 Qd7+ 66 Kg2 h1(Q)+! 67 N×h1 Qe7!

This wins a piece. White can resign.

68 Rf3 Q×c4 69 Nf2 Qd5 70 a3 b4 71 a×b4 a×b4 72 Nh3+ Kg4 73 Nf2+ Kh4! 74 Nd3 b3 75 Kf2 b2! White resigns

Marshall still had a minus score after the following round when he found himself on the receiving end of a swindle against Lasker. On the verge of scoring his first win against him in 24 years Marshall missed wins at the forty-fourth and fifty-five moves and walked into a stalemate.

The middle rounds of this 22-game event brought Marshall a mixture of success and failure. But he never lost in the last two April weeks, thanks in part to the pairing system which gave him, for example, White in rounds 17 through 20. He also had success with Black, as in this round 15 game, against the leader of the Hypermoderns.

159. Queen’s Gambit Declined, Marshall Variation
Réti-Marshall, New York 1924

1 Nf3 Nf6 2 c4 d5!? 3 c×d5 N×d5 4 d4

This turns the game into a version of the Queen’s Gambit Declined that Marshall began to play in 1925 (1 d4 d5 2 c4 Nf6), and which was discredited after a great defeat at Baden-Baden at the hands of Alekhine.

Now on 4 c4 Black can probably stand OK with 4 ... Nb6 or even 4 ... Nf6—although one suspects Marshall had 4 ... Nb4 5 d4 Bg4 in mind.

4 ... Bf5 5 Ne3

Much better than 5 Nbd2 as in Gilg-Marshall, Karlsbad 1929, which went 5 ... Nf6 6 Qb3 Qe8 7 e3 e6 8 Bd3 B×d3 9 Q×d3 Nbd7 10 0-0 c5! with equality.

5 ... e6 6 Qb3!

And here Johner-Marshall, Karlsbad 1929 went 6 g3 N×c3 7 b×c3 Be4! 8 Bg2 0-0 9 0-0 0-0 10 Qb3 c5 with rapid equality.

6 ... Ne6

The traditional counter to ... Bf5 in a Q.C.D. is Qb3, striking at b7. Marshall’s intention likely was 7 Q×b7 Ndb4 8 Nb5 Rb8 9 N×c7+? Kd7. But Réti had a better idea.

7 e4 N×c3 8 e×f5 1 N×d5 9 Bb5?

Another point of Black’s gambit was 9 f×e6 Bb4+ 10 Bd2 B×d2+ 11 N×d2 0-0 12 e×f7+ R×f7 with excellent play. Alekhine mentioned 9 Q×b7 Ncb4 10 Qb5+ c6 11 Qa4 e×f5 but best is 9 a3!, taking away the crucial checking square as well as one Black’s knights are eyeing. Then 10 Q×b7 is a major threat.

9 ... Bb4+ 10 Bd2 B×d2+ 11 N×d2 e×f5 12 B×c6+ b×c6 13 0-0 0-0 14 Qa4 Rb8 15 Nb3 Rb6!

Now to get his pawn back White has to isolate his queen.

16 Q×a7 Qa5 17 Qa5 c5! 18 Q×c5!

In his preliminary notes Marshall wrote of Réti: “Lame, quiet, high-pitched voice, played the new theory of slow development with White and Black.” But when matters became tactical, Réti could join in. Half of his 12 games with Marshall were drawn but the others were battles to the death. Here Réti defends well, seeing that 18 b×c5 Rg6 19 g3 f4 20 Qd2 h5! would have led to a lethal attack.

18 ... Nf4! 19 g3 Rh6 20 Q×c7 Ne2+ 21 Kg2 Qg4 22 Rh1 f4! 23 f3

No better was 23 h3 f3+ 24 Kf1 because of 24 ... R×h3 25 R×h3 Q×h3+ 26 Ke1 N×d4 (27 Q×d4 Qh1+ and ... Q×a1) 27 Re1 N×b3 28 a×b3 Qg2 and wins.

After 23 f3

23 ... Qh3+ 24 Kf2 Re8! 25 Qa5 N×g3
On the previous move, 24 ... N x g3 would not have been as good because of 25 Q x f4 N x h3+ 25 R x h1 with good defensive chances. Now, however, with the queen deflected, 26 h x g3 Q x g3+ 27 K e2 Q g2+ 28 K d3 R x h1 29 R x h1 Q x f3+ and 30 ... Q x h1 mops up.

26 R h1 Q x h2+ 27 R g2 Q h4 28 R e1 R e8 29 Q b5 N c4+ 30 K f1 Q h1+ White resigns.

Marshall bemoaned his 46 years by gaining energy during the final rounds. He had a great, tactical draw with Alekhine and a quiet one with Capablanca in which he used a new Queen's Gambit Declined invention (1 d4 d5 2 N f3 e6 3 c4 N f6 4 N f3 B b4) that would become known in Russia as “The American Defense”—but in the rest of the world, it was the “Ragozin Defense.” Marshall also defeated Yates with a dynamic positional style, but against Bogolyubov he reverted to his play from the days of Monte Carlo.

160. Queen’s Gambit Declined, Exchange Variation

Marshall—Bogolyubov, New York 1924

1 d4 N f6 2 N f3 e 6 3 B g 5 !?

Played under the influence of Tarrasch, who had worked these moves into a fine attacking system that claimed its greatest victim, Emanuel Lasker, when the Mexican beat him at Moscow the next year. Black’s reply leads the game back into a Queen’s Gambit Declined.

3 ... d 5 4 e 3 N b d 7 5 c 4 e 6 6 c x d 5 e x d 5 7 N c 3 Q a 5 ? 8 B d 3 N e 4 9 Q c 2 N x g 5 10 N x g 5 h 6 11 N f 3 B e 7

Better was 11 ... B d 6 to keep a knight off e 5 as Marshall himself would play in a similar position at Bradley Beach 1929.

12 0-0 0-0 13 a 3 Q d 8 14 R c 1 a 5 15 Q e 2 N f 6 16 N e 5 B d 6 17 f 4 !

Marshall had learned how to handle this kind of attack (B b1, Q e 2 and g 2- g 4- g 5) at Pillsbury’s knee, and preferred it most often to the minority attack (14 b 4 and R b1). Bogolyubov now appreciates how quickly he must act.

17 ... c 5 ! 18 B b 1 B d 7 19 Q c 2 B e 6 20 d x c 5 B c 5 21 K h 1 R e 8 ?

This anticipates the threatened 22 N g 4 because now Black can play 22 N x g 4 23 Q h 4+ K f 8 and walk away. However, he should have prepared ... d 5- d 4 with 21 ... R c 8 !.

Then 22 N f 4 g 5 23 N x h 6+ K g 7 and 24 N x f 7 would be best for White, sacrificing a knight for three pawns and continuing attack.

22 e 4 ! B d 4 23 N x c 6 b x c 6 24 e 5 N g 4

When Bogolyubov “has just made his move, he looks around quickly and always appears to be smiling,” Marshall wrote in his unpublished notes. There was no reason to smile here.

25 Q h 7+ K f 8 26 g 3 Q b 6 27 B f 3 ! N f 2 +

Here Alekhine considered Marshall’s sacrifice “unnecessary” and preferred 28 K g 2 (28 ... Q x b 2 29 R b 1 followed by R b 7 and Q h 8 mate). But White’s choice is more forceful—and certainly prettier.

28 R x f 2 B x f 2 29 Q h 8+ K c 7 30 Q x g 7 K d 8

Not 30 ... B x e 1 because of 31 Q f 6+ K b 8 32 Q x h 6+ K g 8 33 B h 7+ and mates.

31 Q f 6+ R e 7 32 e 6 ! B d 4 33 e x f 7 ! B x f 6 34 f 8 ( Q )+ K c 7 35 R x e 7+ B x e 7 36 Q x a 8 K d 6 37 Q h 8 Q d 8

Here Marshall did something that seemed to have disappeared before the war. He played 38 Q e 5+ and announced mate in five moves. Bogolyubov immediately resigned.

Marshall’s final score was 6 victories, 4 losses and 10 draws—good enough for the $500 fourth prize, behind Emanuel Lasker, Capablanca and Alekhine. He also received the $50 second brilliancy prize for the Bogolyubov victory, which was quite a disappointment: Marshall and his fans had assumed he would get the first brilliancy prize. When rumors circulated, in the closing days of the tournament, that the top prize would go instead to Réti for his methodical crushing of Bogolyubov, Marshall was moved to write a complaint. His note, dated two days after the tournament ended, to “ Tournament Directors, International Chess Master Tournament,” said:

I am not aware at this moment as to what brilliancy prize I am to receive but should the judges decide on any other prize but the highest award ... I wish to enter a protest.
His plea was rejected but the tournament had a salutary effect of renewing Marshall’s hunger for chess. In August Réti, about to sail for South America, asked Helms to help arrange a match with Marshall (Item 367, Russell Collection). But, like so many proposed matches at this time, nothing became of it. If Marshall wanted to continue his revived international career he would have to go abroad. In late 1924 he and Carrie decided to make their first European trip in more than a decade.

Chapter Fifteen

European Comeback

First stop was Baden-Baden, Germany, where a strong 21-man event was scheduled to begin April 15, 1925. The spa, famed for its therapeutic water and baths, was just about the only internationally renowned casino in which Marshall had yet to play chess. Located just over the French border, Baden-Baden took on a decidedly Gallic flavor with a Kursaal and Kasino complex strongly reminiscent of Versailles, and it must have reminded the Marshalls of their honeymoon in Paris twenty years before.

The tournament was arranged at the prompting of Siegbert Tarrasch, then 63, who was trying to bring back the magnificent German internationals that had ended with Mannheim. The competition was to run, conveniently, through May 14, stopping just in time to allow Marshall and several of the other invited guests to make the rail trip to Marienbad, Czechoslovakia, where another major international was to begin May 20.

The Marshalls found that chess had revived slowly in Europe since the War. The first real postwar international, Coteborg 1920, took place nearly two full years after the armistice. Each year after that the number of strong events increased, but only gradually. Baden-Baden 1925 turned out to be one of the finest since 1914 (only Karlsbad 1923 surpassed it in strength). By modern standards, it was a Category 10 tournament, roughly comparable to Hamburg 1910, and a bit weaker than previous Marshall events such as Ostende 1905 and Karlsbad 1907.

There was provision for two American invitees and they turned out to be Marshall and, also representing the Marshall Chess Club, Carlos Torre, who apparently was considered a United States citizen by the organizers. Also invited were a host of veterans from before the War, such as Jacques Mieses, Akiba Rubinstein, Aaron Nimzovich and Rudolf Spielmann, as well as new faces such as 27-year-old Edgar Colle, 28-year-old Fritz Sämisch and a 31-year-old disabled Austrian named Ernst Grünfeld. Marshall recalled Grünfeld in his notes as an opening authority
who "by some means or other was missing a leg, but with a stick and wooden leg got along very well."

Marshall started strongly, winning his best games of the event in the first round (against Samisch), and in the third when he disposed of Abram Rabinovich. Rabinovich had been one of the Russian competitors when Marshall met him at Prague 1908, but was now the first Soviet opponent Marshall ever faced, not counting the about-to-defect Bogolyubov.

161. Queen's Gambit Declined, Semi-Slav Defense
Marshall–Rabinovich, Baden-Baden 1925

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 e3 e5 5 Qc2

It was a month after Baden-Baden that 5 Nf3 Nbd7 6 Bd3 dxc4 7 Bxc4
b5! got its name at the Meran tournament. Marshall prefers an older system, with a typically Marshall device to avoid Chigorin's equalizing plan of ... Bd6/... dxe4/... e6-e5!

5 ... Bd6 6 f4!? 0-0 7 Nf3 c5! 8 Bd3 Nc6 9 a3 a6?

Black prepares to trade two pairs of pawns and liberate his game with 12 ... b5 and 13 ... Bb7, but this extra tempo of preparation permits White to retain pawn control of d5. Most likely he missed White's thirteenth move.

10 b3! b6 11 0-0 dxc4 12 bxc4 cxd4 13 Ne4!

Not 13 ... e5 14 Nxe4 Bxe4, regaining the piece at a pawn profit. Now Marshall threatens to retake favorably on d4, or open up his bishops' diagonals after 13 ... dxe4 14 Nxe4 Qf6 15 Bf4 Kh8 16 Bb2 (16 ... Qf4 17 Bxe4 Be7 18 Ne5! and wins).

13 ... Be5 14 Kh1 h6 15 N×f6+ Qxf6 16 Bb2 Bb7 17 Bc4!

This idea had been in the air for some time. Now 18 e×d4 and 19 d5 are threatened.

17 ... d3 18 B×d3 Qe7 19 Qe3! f6 20 Rac1 Rfd8 21 Bb1 Rd7

This shot has an odd appearance, since it opens up a diagonal leading to his own king. In return for a pawn, White seems to be getting only a check or two.

25 ... Rxf4 26 Qh7+ Kxf8 27 Bg6!

(see diagram)

Decisive, since 27 ... Qd8 28 R×e6 and 27 ... Qd6 28 Qh8+ Ke7 29 Qe8 mate. Black now comes up with a swindle attempt: 27 ... Qf7?? 28 B×f7?

R7×f7 29 Kg2 Na5 and the huge material edge is not so easily converted because of the dangers along the b7-h1 line.

27 ... Qf7?? 28 Qh8+! Qg8 29 R×e6! Resigns

After his brisk start, Marshall sank into a series of draws interrupted only by a nice demonstration of endgame technique against the rapidly improving Bogolyubov. The British Chess Magazine facetiously observed in its report on Baden-Baden that Marshall and Tartakower seemed to be in a race to see who could draw the most games, with Tartakower emerging on top with 13 of 20, to the American's 11.

In the tournament's final ten days, however, Marshall rediscovered how to win. With seven rounds to go he had 9 points, exceeded only by Alkine, who was running away with first prize in what turned out to be one of his greatest triumphs.

A key victory came in the thirteenth round. The previous day, against his friend Torre, Marshall had tried to meet the King's Indian Defense with one of his prewar openings, the Stonewall. The result was a quick draw. The next day, he faced Colle, who had been opening games with the modern equivalent of the Stonewall and had collected numerous master scalps with it during the previous two years.

162. Colle System
Colle-Marshall, Baden-Baden 1925

1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 e3 c5

This leads into what had become the main line of the Colle System. A dozen years before Marshall came up with a new idea — 3 ... Nbd7 4 Bd3 e5! 5 d×e5 Ng4—which was promptly forgotten. His sparkling win against Chajes at New York 1913 has somehow fallen between the cracks in the ensuing years. It went 6 e6?! f×e6 7 h3 Ng6 8 Ng5 Ne5 9 Be2 Bc5 10 f4 Nf7 11 Bd3
This innocuous-looking move creates a panic in Colle's mind. Most likely he wanted to continue to pass, with a move such as 41 Re6, but then saw the complicated winning try 41 ... e4! 42 fx e4 g4 43 h x g4 h3 44 g x h3 f3 threatening 45 ... Rc1 and 46 ... f2.

Seeing such ghosts, Colle places his hopes on tactics, the pinning of the bishop.

41 e5? B x e5 42 B x h5 R f2+ 43 Kg1 B e3

Black has extricated himself from the pin and threatens a devastating discovered check. Worse, after 44 Kh2 R f1 Black threatens mate in three with bishop checks. He must allow his own bishop to be pinned.

44 Kh2 R f1 45 B c5 R f1 46 R b7+ K c6 47 B x b7 R b7 48 B x e3 f x e3 49 R c2 K d5 White resigns.

The following round, May 4, Marshall maintained himself in second place with a fine positional game against his old rival Tarrasch. It had been twenty years since their match and it was now clear that the German was no longer in the class of super-grandmasters.
After 27 Ra7

40 ... Qb3 41 b6 Bf8 42 h3 h5 43 Qa4 Bd6 44 Qa7+ Kh6 45 b7 Bc7 46 Kh2 Qb1 47 Qa8 g5? 48 Qf8+ Kg6 49 Qe8+! Resigns

The bishop falls to a check at c6 or d7.

It was in the final week that Marshall lost to Alekhine in a much-anthologized brilliancy and to Réti in a 59-move ending. As a result, the American representative fell behind Rubinstein and Bogoljubow—and Sämisch, whose third prize proved to be his best result in his fifty-year career. Marshall, with 12½/27½ score, finished in a highly creditable tie with Tartakower for fifth-sixth, winning 400 marks.

On to Marienhald, where Marshall met the new generation of Czech masters and renewed his friendship with the tournament director, the 70-year-old Isidor Gunsberg. He also brought something new with him. Before the war Marshall had tried to revive old, if not ancient openings, like the Max Lange and Stonewall Attack. But in the twenties he began to experiment with the cutting edge of theory. He no longer answered 1 e4 automatically with 1 ... e5 and 1 d4 with 2 ... d5.

Instead, Marshall ventured the Winawer French, the Alekhine's Defense, the Queen's and Bogoljubov, the Manhattan Defense of the Queen's Gambit, even the Dozy Defense (1 d4 Nf6 2 c4 e6 3 Nf3 Nc6??) as Black. As White he used the Torre Attack against various openings. And, since the postwar generation had fallen in love with the Sicilian Defense, he would need his own anti-Sicilian weapon. For this he reached way back.

164. Sicilian Defense, Wing Gambit
Marshall-Haiden, Marienbad 1925
1 e4 c5 2 b4

It's difficult for today's players to differentiate between old and old. The

Wing Gambit was positively ancient. Back in 1908 Leopold Hoffer pronounced it "an obsolete variation." Marshall led its brief revival.

2 ... cxb4 3 a3

At Moscow six months later the minor master Boris Verlinsky played 3 ... e5 4 a × b4 B × b4 5 c3 Be5 6 Nf3 Nc6 against Marshall. But since the d-pawn couldn't be prevented from advancing, White gained a clear edge after 7 Be4 d6 8 d4 e × d4 9 c × d4 Bb6 10 0-0 Bg4 11 Qb3.

And what would have happened on 9 ... Bb4+, instead of the bishop retreat? Why, Marshall's favorite move, king to fl, of course.

3 ... e6

Marshall prepared three ideas against the "book" 3 ... d5 4 e × d5 Q × d5 5 Nf3 e5 6 a × b4 B × b4 7 c3 Bc5 8 Na3 e4 9 Nb5 as well as the immediate 7 Na3 and 7 Ba3.

But remarkably, no one played the book line. Marshall–Sämisch from Baden-Baden went 3 ... b6 4 Nf3 Nf6 5 Bb2 Ne5 6 d4 Nf6 7 Bd3 e6 8 Nf3 Be7 9 0-0 0-0 10 c4 b5 11 Qe2 Bb7 12 Re1 Re8 13 c5 Rd7 14 Nb5 Qb8 15 Qe4, after which Black felt it necessary to return the pawn with 15 ... Nf8 16 e × d6 B × d6 17 N × d6 Q × d6 18 Ba3 and lost in 37 moves.

4 a × b4 B × b4 5 c3 Be7 6 d4 d6 7 f4 f5?! 8 Nd2 Nf6 9 Bd3 0-0 10 Ngf3 Ne6 11 0-0 a6?

Too cautious, wrote Tartakower in L'Échiquier. He recommended 11 ... d5 to stop Marshall's strong pawn sacrifice.

12 e × f5 e × f5 13 d5! N × d5 14 Be4 Qb6+ 15 Kh1 Be6 16 Rb1 Qc7 17 Nb3!

After 17 Nb3

Forcing Black to accept a third pawn as well as a fatal pin on the knight that reaches e6.

17 ... N × f4 18 B × e6+ N × e6 19 Qd5 Nd8?
Tartakower condemned this fatal surrender of d4 and suggests 19 ... Rf6 instead, e.g., 20 Ng5 Qe8 21 Re1 Ne5 22 Nd4 Q×c3 23 Bb2 Qe4. But Marshall intended 20 Bg5 Rg6 21 Re1 and 22 Nd4.

Perhaps Black was banking on 19 ... Nd8 20 Nb4 Qc5.

20 Nfd4! Rf6 21 Re1 Qe8 22 N×e6 N×e6 23 Nd4 Kf7 24 R×b7 Qe5 25 R×e7+1

Based on the intermediary check at move 26.

25 ... K×e7 26 Qb7+ Kf8 27 Q×a8+ Kf7 28 Qb7+ Kg6

Here My Fifty Years gives "29 N×e6 Resigns" and L'échiquier gave "29 Nc6 Resigns." It hardly matters.

Aside from tailender Haida, the field of masters at Marienbad was more or less the same as at Baden-Baden, led by Rubinstein and Nimzovich, who shared first place. Surprisingly, this was the first strong tournament that the 38-year-old Nimzovich had won. Marshall had no real chance for first place as the prize race developed but he did win the top brilliancy prize. His victim was one of his regular customers, Frederick Dewhurst Yates. Over their twenty years of tournament competition together Marshall scored five wins, six draws and no losses with the many-time British champion.

165. Three Knights’ Game
Yates–Marshall, Marienbad 1925

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 Ne3 Bb4 4 Bc4 d6 5 d3 Be6 6 Bb3

This move is a concession that White hasn’t gotten anything out of the opening.

6 ... Nc6 7 0-0 h6 8 Ne2! B×b3 9 a×b3 d5 10 Ng3 d×e4

Recalling the Marshall who had gone into the endgame with such assurance back at Paris 1900. Others, such as Tarrasch, would most likely have tried to maintain Black’s superiority in the center with 10 ... 0-0-0 and 11 ... Qd7.

11 d×e4 Q×d1 12 R×d1 Bc5 13 c3 Ng4 14 Rf1

Opinion was divided afterwards over whether it was White’s thirteenth move (13 h3) or fourteenth (14 Nh1) that cost him the game. Whatever the case, Marshall never lets up from now on.

14 ... 0-0-0 15 b4 Bb6 16 h3 N×f2! 17 R×f2 Rd1+ 18 Nf1 Rdh8

White finds that his five pieces, three are pinned. Worse, Black was threatening 19 ... f5! 20 e×f5 21 Nh2 Ne5 and 22 ... Nd3. In My Fifty

19 b5 Na5 20 R×a5 R×e1

After 20 ... R×e1

Not 20 ... B×a5 21 Be3, when White is still breathing.

21 Ra1 R8d1 22 Nd4 e×d4 23 c×d4 R×d4! White resigns

Carrie kept close to Marshall during their spring in Central Europe. The British Chess Magazine’s correspondent observed: “Marshall, large and looselimbed, with the slow drawl of the New Yorker, can yet reduce his voice to the required low level when he drops down on the lounge seat by his wife to confide to her his hopes and fears during the game.”

His hopes may have been realized in being the only undefeated player at Marienbad—and the only one to defeat the tournament winner. “I can beat him like a child,” Marshall said of Nimzovich at the end of his career, forgetting that Nimzo actually had a plus score against him. But only one great Nimzovich victory is remembered today, whereas Marshall won several nice games from “the Stormy Petrel of Chess.” The American’s mating attacks have been published often but the instances when he positionally outplayed Nimzo have not. Here is one such:

166. English Opening
Nimzovich–Marshall, Marienbad 1925

1 Nf3 Nf6 2 c4 e6 3 b3 d5 4 Bb2 c5 5 c×d5 e×d5 6 d3 Nc6 7 Nbd2 Be7 8 e3 Bf5 9 Be2 Nh4! 10 Ne5 Nd7 11 Nd5 f×e5 12 N×e5 f6!

“Very well played,” says Tartakower, pointing out how badly off White is after 13 Nf5 c×e4! White is forced into the following exchanges which allow Marshall to set up the d-pawn as a target.
13 a3 fxe5 14 a×b4 d4 15 0–0 0–0 16 b×c5 B×c5 17 b4 Bb6
18 Qb3+ Kh8 19 e×d4 B×d4 20 Ra5 Re8

Methodically directing his attention towards d3, which he threatens with
21 ... B×b2 22 Q×b2 B×d3 23 Rd1 Re2.
21 B×d4 Q×d4 22 Qa3 Re3 23 Qal Re2!

24 R×e5 Q×b4 25 Q×a7 R×e2! 26 R×e2 B×d3 27 Qe3 B×e2
28 Q×e2 h6 29 Qd5?

Tartakover recommended 29 Qe2 preparing Rh1 and protecting f2. Now
the b-pawn grows and grows.
29 ... Qe5 30 g3 h5 31 Kg2 b4 32 f4 Qe6+ 33 Qf3 Qb6 34 f5? b3
35 Rh1 b2 36 Qe3 Qb7+ 37 Kg1 Rh8 38 Kh2 Qb6+ 39 Kg2 Qh4
40 Qe5 Qb5 41 Qc3 Qe2+ 42 Kh3 Kh7?

Marshall’s technique is superior and his threat of ... Rb5×f5 provokes a
final mistake.
43 f6? Qe6+ White resigns

Marshall can always be counted on to find a piquant finish to even the
simplest positions, said Tartakover. After 44 Kg2 Qe4+ a rook is lost, while
44 Kh1 g5+ leads to mate.

As usual when a master goes through a tournament undefeated, he
needed a few lucky escapes from bad positions. One was against his "per-
manent opponent," David Janowsky. The Frenchman celebrated his fifty-
seventh birthday during the tournament’s first week and finally appeared
to be losing some of his calculating accuracy.

167. Queen’s Gambit Accepted
Marshall–Janowsky, Marienbad 1925

1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 c4 d×c4 4 Ne3 a6 5 a4 e5 6 e3 e6 7 B×c4 Nc6
8 0–0 Be7 9 b3 0–0 10 Bb2 c×d4 11 e×d4 Nb4!

Another Rubinstein–Marshall Variation has given Black firm control of
the key d5 square and this should equalize despite White’s apparent initiative.
12 Ne5 b6 13 Qf3 Ra7 14 Rad1 Bb7 15 Qh3 Nfd5! 16 N×d5 B×d5
17 B×d5 Q×d5 18 Rc1 Rb7 19 Rfe1 b5 20 a5 Bb6 21 Ba3 Rd8

Faced with minor threats of 22 ... Nc4, 22 ... Nd3 or 22 ... Q×d4, Mar-
shall appreciates he’s in trouble. He tries to solve his problems combinative.
22 Qh4 f6! 23 B×b4 B×b4 24 Nc6 B×e1 25 N×d8 Q×d8 26 R×e1

Black would stand well after 26 ... Qd5 or 26 ... Rd7 but he rushes too
quickly.
26 ... Q×a5? 27 Qe4! Re7? 28 d5l e5 29 d6 Rd7 30 Qd5+ Kf8
31 Rc1

What a difference a few moves have made. Now 31 ... Qb6 32 Rc8+ Rd8
loses to 33 Qe6l R×e8 34 Q×e8+ and 35 Qc7+. Janowsky shortens the game
by destroying his kingside now.
31 ... Qd8 32 Rc6 g6 33 R×a6 Kg7 34 h4 Kh6 35 Qe6 g5 36 g3!
Kg7 37 h×g5 f×g5 38 Q×b5 Kf6 39 Ra5 R×d6 40 Q×e5+ Kg6
41 Ra7! Kh6 42 Qg7+ Kh5 43 Q×h7+ Rh6 44 g4+ Resigns

This was the last game of this great rivalry. Their career-long series
ended with 34 Marshall wins, 28 Janowsky wins, and 18 draws. Aside from
world championship match opponents no two players had faced one
another so often since the days of LaBourdonnais and McDonnell.

When the Czech tournament had ended the crossstable revealed Mar-
shall sharing third prize with Torre, ahead of Reti, Spielmann, Tar-
takower, Grünfeld and others. He had another tournament planned for
1925 but it was at year’s end in the new Soviet capital of Moscow. The years when the Marshalls could spend months at a time traveling about Europe as guests of local clubs were over. They headed West, stopping in Paris briefly to hear Alekhine make a pitch for a possible match with Frank somewhere in America during the 1925-26 winter. From there Frank and Carrie headed home and arrived from Havre aboard the French Line’s S.S. Paris on June 24 to be greeted by a delegation from the Marshall Chess Club.

A New York Times account described how the American champion displayed a silver cigarette case given to him by the Marienbad Chess Club as a brilliancy prize for the Yates game. Marshall was quoted as saying he was looking for American sponsors to raise $5000 for the Alekhine match but otherwise intended to spend summer in Atlantic City “as has been his custom.” He didn’t remain home for long.

Moscow 1925

The third great tournament of the year was the finest. It was the first major tournament in the Soviet Union and consequently the first ever sponsored by a government. With an influx of gold, now that the New Economic Policy had returned a bit of capitalism to the country, the tournament received a contribution of 30,000 rubles from the post-Lenin collective leadership.

Twenty-one players were invited: 10 recognized foreign masters, led by Emanuel Lasker and José Capablanca, 10 Soviet masters—and Yefim Bogolyubov who was nominally Soviet but had become decidedly German in his years since internship at Triberg during the War. The foreigners were put up in the best hotel in town, the Grand Hotel, where now the Moskva Hotel stands.

Clearly not all the foreigners knew what to expect. When Torre got off the train he wore nothing heavier than a shirt, explaining that it was hot in Mexico, even in November, and it never occurred to him there’d be snow in Moscow at that time. “Quickly seating the Mexican in a car, I brought him to a store where we bought him an overcoat and warm hat,” wrote V.E. Eremeyev, of the organizing committee.

After an opening ceremony November 9 in the Blue Hall of the House of Trade Unions, play began the next day in the old Metropole Hotel’s Fountain Hall. The outpouring of public interest in the games stunned even the Russians. At first about 500 people came to the hotel regularly, but soon it grew into the thousands. In various parts of Moscow, something approaching 50,000 people followed the games, mainly on a large outdoor demonstration board. Inside the playing hall it became so humid that Capablanca joked at one point that the players should wear swimming trunks.

With few exceptions, the young Russians were a mystery to Marshall. But they had seen his games and evidently concluded that the way to beat a veteran of the Vienna 1903 Gambit tournament was get him out of open-center tactical middlegames and into unfamiliar, trench-warfare positions.

168. English Opening
1. Rabinovich–Marshall, Moscow 1925

1 Na3 Nf6 2 c4 e5 3 b3 d5 4 Bb2 Be7 5 g3 0–0 6 Bg2 a5 7 0–0 a4!

A different approach from Romanovsky-Marshall, which varied with 5 e3 0–0 6 Be2 c5 7 0–0 Nc6 8 d3 when Black decided to advance in the center: 8 ... Qc7 9 Nbd2 Rd8 10 Re1 b6 11 Re1 d4 12 cxd4 cxd4 13 a3 a5 14 Bf1 Bb7 15 g3 Be5 16 Bg2 Ne7 with equal play.

Rabinovich appears confused by Marshall's wing demonstration and compromises his pawn structure severely.

8 bxa4?! Nbd7 9 cxd5 e5 10 Qc2 Nb6 11 Be5 Nc4! 12 d4 Ne4 13 Nfd2 Nc×d2 14 N×d2 N×d2 15 Q×d2 R×a4

The departure of the knights has left White with a permanent weakness at a2 which Black pressures relentlessly.

16 Ra1 c6 17 Rb3 Qa5 18 Q×a5 R×a5 19 Rb2 Ra4 20 Rd1 Ba3! 21 Rb3 Re8 22 Bf3 b5 23 Rc3 Bd7 24 g4 f6 25 Bc7 Bb2 26 Rcd3 h5!

After 26 ... h5

Stronger than 26 ... R×a2. On 27 g×h5 Bh5 28 R×d2 Bc3 Black wins the Exchange.

27 g×h5? Bh5 28 Re3 R×e3 29 f×e3 R×a2 30 Bd6 Bc3 31 Rc1 Bc2!

This clears a path for the b-pawn, completing a strategy begun by 7 ... a4.
32 e4!? B×d4+ 33 Kf1 d×e4 34 Bg4 Kf7 35 Kg2 c5 36 Kh3 b4
37 h6 g×h6 38 Rf1 b3 39 e3 B×e3 White resigns

Games were played in the afternoon with a compromise between
those who wanted adjournments and those who hated them. The invitees
were obligated to play up to seven hours a day, with a first session of 30
moves in two hours, followed by a short, 30-minute break, then another
evening session. In this way the players felt less time to analyze adjourned positions but did get a chance to grab a bite to eat. Typically,
many games ended by the first time control, and eight of Marshall's were
ended by move 32.

169. Queen's Gambit Declined, Tarrasch Defense
Réti-Marshall, Moscow 1925

1 c4 e5 2 g3 d5 3 Bg2 Nf6 4 Nf3 c5 5 c×d5 e×d5 6 d4 Ne6 7 0–0
Be7 8 d×c5 B×c5 9 Nbd2

"Why not 9 Nb3?" Marshall asks in his notes. The text, designed to occupy
c4 after gaining a tempo with Nb3, had been successfully used in some early
Tarrasch Defense games but soon lost its niche in the steady accretion of new
theory. Ern, Lasker-Tarrasch, St. Petersburg 1914 had gone 9 Nb3 d4?!
10 Nf3 B×b6 11 Qd3 Be6 12 Rd1 with a White edge already.

9 ... 0–0 10 Nb3 Bb6 11 Nbd4 Re8 12 Be3

Questionable, since now 12 ... Ng4, which is a good move against 12 Re1
as well, is more appropriate (13 Bg5 Qd6). More common in 12 b3 followed by
13 Bb2.

12 ... Bd7 13 Rcl Re8 14 Qd3 h6 15 Rfd1 Ng4!

Now 16 Bf4 N×d4 17 N×d4 R×c1 18 R×c1 N×f2 19 K×f2 Qf6 favors Black.

16 N×c6 b×c6 17 Bd4 e5 18 h3 e×d4 19 h×g4 B×g4 20 N×d4 Qf6!

After 20 ... Qf6

Black threatens 21 ... R×c1 winning a piece and offers a pawn sacrifice.
White does best to reject. Réti had an excellent positional sense and good
calculating skills but often took too many risks. He also had an excellent
memory—for some things. In São Paulo the same year he broke the blindfold
record by playing 29 boards five days after Alekhine had set his own record
with 26 in Paris. As the Czech master left the playing hall he forgot his
familiar green briefcase. When it was returned to him Réti said, "Oh, thank
you. I have such bad memory."

21 R×e8 R×e8 22 B×d5? Rd8 23 Qe4 Bh5! 24 Nf3 Q×b2 25 Ne5?

White should get out of the d-file pin with 25 Rgl. Instead, he accepts a
deadly pin.

25 ... Re8! 26 Ne4 R×e4 27 N×b2 R×e2 28 Nd3 R×f2! 29 N×f2
B×d1 30 Kg2 B×f2 White resigns

Moscow 1925 continued to reflect the decade's change in openings
fashion. The most popular opening remained the Queen's Gambit
Declined, which accounted for 50 of the tournament's 210 games. But
there were also 23 Indian defenses and a variety of openings that could
have fit into more than one category:

170. Queen's Gambit Declined, Ragozin Defense
Dus-Chotimirsky-Marshall, Moscow 1925

1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 c4 e6 4 Nc3 Bb4!

Another one of those games that led the Soviets to dub Black's fourth move
the "American Defense." White's reply is studiously abdicated.

5 e3?! 0–0 6 Bd2 c5! 7 Rcl c×d4 8 N×d4 e5 9 Nc2 B×c3 10 B×c3
Nc6 11 N×d4 Bd4!

Rather than the immediate 11 ... Be6 Black hopes to coax White into 12 f3
Be6 (or 12 Be2 B×e2 13 Q×e2 d4). Dus-Chotimirsky's reply leads Marshall
into a pawn sacrifice.

12 Qd3 d4! 13 N×c6 b×c6 14 e×d4 e×d4 15 B×d4 Ne4!

The key to 13 ... d4. Now 16 ... Q×f5+ as well as 16 ... Re8 are planned,
and White cannot afford 16 Q×e4 Re8 17 Be5 Q×f5+.

16 a3? Re8 17 Be3 Qf6!

The threats begin with 18 ... N×f2 and 18 ... Q×b2. On 18 f3 there is a
check at h4 and on 18 Qc2 Rd8 White is hardpressed to avoid a rook invasion
at d2 (19 Be2 N×f2, 19 Bc3 R×d3).
18 Be2 Nxf2! 19 Qe3 Nxh1 20 Qxf6 gxf6 21 Bxg4 Rxg4+ 22 Kf1 Rd8 23 Bf3 Rd2 24 Bxc6 Nf2 25 b4 Rx a3 26 e5 Nd3 27 Rbl Nxb4 28 Be4 Re3 White resigns

Marshall, though speaking not a word of their language, made a big impression on the Russians with his smiles, modesty and self-deprecating honesty. He beat Boris Verlinsky in the first round and, years later, the loser recalled, "I don't remember ever feeling such admiration for any of my opponents as I had for Marshall." Pyotr Romanovsky also met Marshall at the tournament and was struck: "I had never thought that he, terror of all champions, was such a kindly, plain and fine person."

The popularity of chess during Moscow 1925 was captured on film. Marshall, Réti, Bogolyubov and most of all, Capablanca, appeared in a motion picture, Chess Fever, filmed by the talented young director Vsevelod Pudovkin during the tournament. The silent movie spoofed the chess craze, depicting chess-mad Muscovites wearing chess-board-patterned bowties and skirts and even using chess-board soap.

Marshall started a fashion of his own with his win over Akiba Rubinstein, using a bold new plan in the Queen's Gambit Declined that remains dangerous today.

171. Queen's Gambit Declined, Exchange Variation

Marshall–Rubinstein, Moscow 1925

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Nbd7 5 e3 Bc7 6 Nf3 0-0 7 c×d5 c×d5 8 Bd3 Re8 9 0-0 c6 10 Qc2 Nf8 11 Rae1

"The moderns pin their faith to the minority attack with a2-a3 and b2-b4 intending b4-b5 in due course," he wrote in My Fifty Years.

11 ... Ne4

A year later at Chicago, Abraham Kupchik played 11 ... Be6 12 Ne5 Nfd7 13 B×e7 R×e7 against Marshall, who immediately went on the attack with 14 f4 f6 15 N×d7 Q×d7 16 f5. There followed 16 ... Bf7 17 Rf3 Rae8 18 Qf2 h6 19 a3 Nh7 20 h4 Qe6 21 Rg3 Kh8 22 Ne2 b6 23 Nf4 c5? and Marshall exploited this with 24 R×g7! (24 ... K×g7 25 Qg3+ and a knight check wins the queen). Kupchik resigned six moves later.

12 B×e7 Q×e7 13 B×e4 d×e4 14 Nd2 f5 15 f3!

The point of White's play. Black cannot avoid a liquidating of the e- and f-pawns that helps White's rooks.

15 ... exf3 16 N×f3 Be6

Later, at Prague 1931, Yates tried to improve with 16 ... Ng6 17 e4 f4, closing the kingside and e-file. Marshall promptly turned to the queenside: 18 d5 Ne5 19 N×e5 Q×e5 20 Qb3 Kh8 21 Rf2 Rb8 22 Qa4! and then 22 ... b5 23 Q×a7 b4 24 Ne2! c×d5 25 N×f4 with advantage.

17 e4 f×e4 18 R×e4 Rad8

White intends to dominate the e-file with heavy pieces, as in the variation 18 ... Qe6 19 Re5 Qg6 20 Qe2. Here the immediate 18 ... h6 looks best, to avoid such surprises as 18 ... Qd7 19 Ng5! Bf5 20 R×e8l.

19 Re5 h6 20 Ne4 Qb4?

Better is 20 ... h5, according to Marshall, or 20 ... Qc7, according to Bogolyubov. Black mistakenly believes that as long as his pieces are superior to White's on the light squares, he is immune to tactics. He threatens 21 ... R×d4.

21 a3 Qc4 22 Qf2 Bf7?

And here 22 ... Ng6 was essential (23 Re5 Qd3).

After 22 ... Bf7

23 b3! Q×b3

The tournament book recommended 23 ... Qa6 but Marshall claimed a win even then: 24 R×e8 B×e8 25 Ne5 Ne6 26 Nf6+ g×f6 27 Q×f6 or 24 ... R×e8 25 Ne5 Bd5 26 Nd6 Rd8 27 Ne5 and Qg3.

24 N(3)d2! Qa2 25 Ne3 Resigns

Marshall won a lesser-known, but also flashy game, with the same opening against Spielmann, using a more orthodox plan:

172. Queen's Gambit Declined, Exchange Variation

Marshall–Spielmann, Moscow 1925
1 d4 Nf6 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 d5 4 Bg5 Nbd7 5 c3 c6 6 cxd5 exd5 7 Bd3 Be7 8 Qe2

The significance of this move is often unappreciated. After the routine 8 Nf3?! Black can play 8 ... Ne4!, or 8 ... 0-0 9 0-0?! Ne4! as Marshall found at Bad Kissingen 1928 against Réti in a game that resembled the Rubinstein victory but led to equality after 10 Bxe7 Qxe7 11 Bxe4 dxe4 12 Nd2 f5 13 Bxd3 cxd5 14 Bxf3 Nbd6 15 e4 Be6! 16 Qe3 Nc4.

8 ... 0-0 9 Nf3 Re8 10 0-0 h6 11 Bf4!

If Black was going to insert ... h6 it was more appropriate before or after the tenth move. Now 11 ... Nh5 12 Nxd5 is a famous trap that Rubinstein fell into twice in similar positions (12 ... cxd5 13 Bc7).

11 ... Nf8 12 Ne5 Nh5 13 Bg3 N×g3 14 h×g3 Bf6 15 f4! B×e5 16 f×e5

Black's slight error in the timing of ... h6 allowed White to occupy e5 strongly and then open his half of the f-file. Spielmann realizes he must take extreme precautions about f7.

16 ... Bg4 17 Rf4 Qd7 18 Ra1 Re7 19 b4 Bb6 20 Rht4 Bg4 21 Rf4 Be6 22 Qf2 Nh7 23 Qf3! Ng5 24 Qh5 b6 25 Rh4 Qe8

A simple but instructive queen maneuver by White, exploiting Black's inability to protect the apparently well-covered h6. A superb attacker in his own right, Spielmann must have realized after 24 Qh5 what Marshall's intended breakthrough was—but found no remedy except ... Qe8-f8.

26 Ne2! a5 27 Rf6

"A characteristic Marshall coup," wrote the British Chess Magazine. The threat of 28 R×h6 is stopped easily enough, but there is a reason why Marshall didn't play Rf6 at the twenty-sixth move.

27 ... Qf8 28 Nf4! a×b4?
Chapter Sixteen

A Lion in Winter

As Marshall approached 50 he saw his old opponents disappearing. Georg Salwe died in December 1920 and Richard Teichmann in June 1925. Oldrich Duras had retired from the game and David Janowsky's career was coming to a close. And in November 1925, Amos Burn died from a stroke while analyzing a game for his column in The Field.

A few members of that generation were still active, like Emanuel Lasker, whose 1926 simultaneous tour competed with Marshall's. No doubt that Marshall was slowing down a bit, after his busy year in 1925. But during years 1926–29 he managed a relatively ambitious schedule of national and international events, in between simultaneous tours, club events and Atlantic City.

Back on West 12th Street, the club continued to grow in membership and activities. Marshall entered another Dimock tournament, this one to test both the Wing Gambit and 5 0-0 in the Evan Gambit. He went undefeated and shared first prize with A.S. Pinkus, whom he defeated in this key game:

173. Evans Gambit
A.S. Pinkus–Marshall, Dimock Evans Gambit Tournament, New York 1926

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 Bc4 Bc5 4 b4 Bxb4 5 0-0?! Nf6! 6 d4 exd4 7 c3 dx e3 8 e5 d5!

Compared with the high-risk Compromised Defense (5 c3 Ba5 6 d4 cxd4 7 0-0 dx e3) Black is relatively well developed here. Yet on 9 Bb5 Ne4 10 Qa4 White begins to win back pawns.

9 Bb5 Nd7! 10 Qxd5 0–0 11 Bxc6 bxc6 12 Qe4?! Rb8 13 Bg5 Ne5!

(see diagram)

A suffocating defensive shot. White is lost whether he allows 14 ... Qd3 or trades queens.

14 Qh4 Qd3 15 Nxc3? Bxc3 16 Racl Rb4! 17 Bf4 Ne6 18 Rfd1

Since the queen can defend the kingside with 18 ... Qg6, Black need not be fancy. But Marshall found the fastest win:

18 ... Nxf4! 19 Rxd3 Nxd3 20 Qg5 Nxc1 21 Qxc1 Bxe5!
22 Nxe5 Bf5 White resigns

Since 23 ... Rbl wins the queen.

That summer Marshall returned to Lake Hopatcong where another tournament, smaller but much stronger than the 1923 affair, was planned. It was called the Pan-American Tournament, and the original plan called for five players – Capablanca, Marshall, Edward Lasker, Géza Maróczy or Carlos Torre, and one other American, perhaps the up-and-coming Isaac Kashdan – to play two games with one another. Torre preferred to play in the Mexican Championship, so Maróczy, who had been virtually banned from his native Hungary for political reasons, was invited. The fifth invitee was Abraham Kupchik, who had one of his best performances ever. It was, in fact, one of the strongest American events ever held, by modern standards a Category 14 tournament. The only tournament Marshall played in that was stronger was New York 1927, according to retrospective rating analysis.

In the first round Marshall was paired with Maróczy. When young Frank met him at London 1899, Maróczy, seven years his senior, was just becoming one of the world's best. Gradually, Marshall improved and by 1910 he was the better of the two players. But Maróczy aged well and was once again Marshall's superior by the late 1920s.

Their game [174] at Lake Hopatcong was curious: It began 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nc3 after which the Hungarian thought for 45 minutes. He later explained that he was trying to figure out what Marshall, who usually opened 1 d4 against him, had up his sleeve. Eventually satisfied with his
calculations, Maróczy played 3... Nf6 and after Marshall adopted the Glenhill Attack, 4 e5 Nfd7 5 Qg4 c5 6 Nf3, the Hungarian obtained an edge with 6... Nc6 7 Bb5 cxd4 8 Nxd4 Nxd4 9 Qxd4 a6! 10 B×d7+ B×d7 11 0-0 Rc8 12 Qg4 h5 13 Qg3 h4 14 Qd3 h3. Black (Maróczy) won in 41 moves.

Marshall's best game at Lake Hopatcong came in the second round against a formerly troublesome opponent that he now seemed to have overcome.

175. Three Knights Game
Ed. Lasker–Marshall, Lake Hopatcong 1926

1 e4 Nf6!

An indication of how far Marshall had come since being confronted with hypermodern openings two years before at the New York international. In a later round Maróczy accepted the challenge and played 2 e5 Nd5 and now 3 Nc3 Nb6!? 4 Nf3 d6 5 d4 Nc6 6 e×d6 e×d6 7 h3 Bf5 led to equality.

2 Nc3 e5 3 Nf3 Bb4 4 N×e5 0-0 5 Be2 Re8 6 Nd3 B×c3 7 d×c3 N×e4 8 0-0 d5 9 Nf4 c6 10 Be3

With the two bishops, the d4 outpost, and the prospect of opening the center with 11 c4, White appears to be developing a promising middlegame. Marshall liquidates the situation effectively.

10...Nd6! 11 Bd3 Bf5 12 Qf3 Be4 13 Qh3 Qd7! 14 Be5

Keeping queens on with 14 Qh5 Nf5 is no fun either.

14...Q×h3 15 N×h3 Nc4!

A strong move which virtually forces a bishops-of-opposite-color ending in which White's queen rook and knight are spectators.

16 B×c4 d×c4 17 Rae1 Nd7 18 Bd4 h6 19 Rfd1 Bf5 20 Nf4 g5!

(see diagram)

21 Nh5 Bg4 22 Be3 Re7!

Cleaner than 22...B×d1 23 R×d1 Rd8 24 R×d7 R×d7 25 Nf6+. Black must now win at least the Exchange.

23 R×d7 B×d7 24 h4 g×h4 25 B×h6 Bf5 26 Rd1 Re6 27 Bg5 Bg4!

White resigns

But Lake Hopatcong 1926 was the second indication, after Atlantic City 1921, of Marshall's decline vis-à-vis American players. He lost the second game with Lasker and one to Kupchik, who managed to finish in second place, a point behind Capablanca. Marshall had to settle for fourth place with a 3-5 score.

Meanwhile, Torre was winning the Mexican Championship effortlessly, prompting a brigadier general named Manuel Mendoza to announce that he was acting as Torre's manager and was issuing a challenge to Marshall. The Mexican master was willing to play for 'the Pan-American Championship,' the title Capablanca had claimed for himself 17 years before. Mendoza said the Torre–Marshall match would be played for a stake of $5000.

The Torre match never came off. Within a year Torre, distraught after being jilted by his fiancée and losing an expected academic appointment, suffered a mental breakdown. He withdrew from chess and never competed again in a major event.

After Lake Hopatcong ended on July 21, Marshall headed for Chicago to play in his first Western Chess Association Tournament. The Western had been held since 1900 and had become by far the strongest annual event in the United States. It was after the 1926 tournament that the Western Chess Association became the National Chess Federation, claiming to represent the United States in the international chess federation, FIDE, that had been formed two years before. Maurice Kuhns, a Chicago accountant, was named its first president. (Thirteen years later when the N.C.F. became the United States Chess Federation, the tournament was renamed the U.S. Open.)

Aside from the annual tournament, the Chicago organizers prepared a masters tournament at the historic Hotel LaSalle beginning August 21. They attracted a memorable field that included Torre, Maróczy, Lasker, Chajes, Jaffe, Kupchik, and Newell Banks. Rounding out the field were the 66-year-old Showalter and 20-year-old Kashdan, who had first gained attention by winning a problem-solving contest held during the New York 1924 grandmasters tournament.
The highlight of the tournament for Marshall was avenging his Lake Hopatcong game by scoring a rare win over Maróczy. He only managed three other career wins against him (while losing to the Hungarian 11 times). This victory occurred in the next to last round:

176. Queen's Gambit Declined, Orthodox Defense
Marshall–Maróczy, Chicago 1926
1 d4 Nf6 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 d5 4 Bg5 Be7 5 e3 0–0 6 Nf3 Nbd7 7 Re1 c6
8 Bd3 d×e4 9 B×e4 Nd5

Capablanca's freeing maneuver, which had been in use for nearly ten years but not universally understood.

10 B×e7 Q×e7 11 0–0 N5b6?! 12 Bb3 e5 13 d5?!

Capablanca's idea was to exchange off knights before advancing (11 ... N×c5! 12 R×c3 e5). The difference allows White to dominate the c- and d-files now. But 13 Ne4, aiming at d6, is even better.

13 ... c×d5 14 N×d5 N×d5 15 Q×d5 e4 16 Nd4 Nf6 17 Qg5!

Threatening to win immediately with 18 R×c8! R×c8 19 Nf5 Qf8 20 Nh6+. To coordinate his pieces Maróczy incurs a heavy kingside liability now.

17 ... h6 18 Qf4 Ne8 19 Rf1 g5?! 20 Qg3 Bd7 21 h4 a5 22 h×g5 h×g5 23 Bd5! Nd6 24 Rc7 Rac8 25 R×d7! Q×d7 26 Q×g5+

Now 26 ... Kh8 walks into the pretty Zwischenzug 27 Qe5+ f6 28 Qh2+ since then 28 ... Kg7 29 Q×d6 and wins.

26 ... Kh7 27 Qh5+ Kg7 28 Qe5+ Kh7 29 Ne6!

Forcing a won endgame, although a few traps remain.

29 ... f×e6 30 B×e4+ Kg8 31 R×d6 Qc7 32 Qg3+

Not falling for 32 R×e6?! Rel+ and mate next. Note that now on 32 ... Kh8, 33 Qh3+ Kg8 34 R×e6 Rel+ 35 Kh2 and there is no perpetual check for Black. Marshall later avoids a trade of rooks that might have drawn (34 R×e6 Rf6).

32 ... Qg7 33 Q×g7+ K×g7 34 f4! Rfd8 35 Rb6! Rc7 36 R×e6 Rd1+ 37 Kh2 Rd7 38 Rb6 Re7 39 B×b7 R×e3 40 Bf3 Rd2 41 Kg3 a4 42 f5 a3 43 Kf4 R×b2? 44 Rg6+ Resigns

The Chicago tournament was exceptionally well-balanced and each player lost at least two games. Marshall's losses came at the hand of Torre, who had now beaten him twice in a row, and Banks, the checker champ.

pion. But he also scored victories over Kupchik and Kashdan and that left him in good shape going into the final round. Torre led the pack with a score of 8–3, but Marshall, Maróczy and Jaffe were only a half point behind.

On the final day, September 2, disaster struck the leaders: First, Torre was upset by Lasker. It appeared that Maróczy, who drew, would tie him for first prize. Meanwhile, both of the other contenders, Jaffe and Marshall, were in trouble. This time Marshall misplayed an Alekhine's Defense and managed to quash Jackson Showalter's initiative only at the cost of a pawn. But he gradually outplayed him in the endgame until reaching this position:

![Diagram showing the position after 27 Qh5+ Kg7 28 Qe5+ Kh7 29 Ne6!]

Black to play

Marshall played 44 f4+, after which 45 Kf2 R×b2+ 46 Kg1 Bb3 leaves Black with the better chances but far from a win. Instead, Showalter played 45 Kh4?? and, after 45 ... Rb5!, resigned before the rook delivered mate. When the dust cleared Marshall had sneaked into first place at 8½–3½.

Back in New York plans for another great international were taking shape. Remembering their 1924 success, Norbert Lederer and his associates organized an even stronger successor. It was modelled along the lines of Ostende 1907, a match tournament in which six super-grandmasters played one another four times. New York 1927 was, in fact, much stronger than that "Tournament of Champions," and was closer in strength and intensity to St. Petersburg 1895–96 and the Hague–Moscow 1948.

Capablanca was still the king of chess and through his influence the tournament time limit was established as 40 moves in 2½ hours, rather than then standard 30 moves in 2 hours. Capa was also the only one of the invitees who got an appearance fee. The other five--Alexander Alekhine, Alexei Nimzovich, Milan Vidmar, Rudolph Spielmann and Marshall--had to compete with him for the three prizes of $2000, $1500 and $1000.
The tournament ran four and a half weeks beginning in late February in the Trade Banquet Hall of the Hotel Manhattan Square, on 77th Street opposite the Museum of Natural History. Just before the tournament began, word arrived from France that another link with the era before the War was over: David Janowsky had gone to Hyères to play in a tournament there but died. He was only 59.

His old rival, Marshall, showed his age, 49, from the beginning of New York tournament, when he lost the white side of a French Defense to Nimzovich almost without a fight. After six rounds he had also lost badly twice to Capablanca, who was having one of his greatest tournaments. Marshall’s only victory came in the eighth round against Vidmar, when his score was an anemic 2-5.

177. Bogoindian Defense

Vidmar–Marshall, New York 1927

1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 c6 3 c4 Bb4+ 4 Bd2 Bx d2+ 5 Nb x d2 d5 6 e3 0-0 7 Qc2 Nbd7 8 Bb3 h6 9 0-0 c5? 10 c x d5 N x d5 11 d x c5 Nb4

This maneuver enables Black to get his pawn back but the simplification of the center benefits White’s rooks before it does Black’s.

12 Bh7+ Kh8 13 Qc4 Na6 14 Bc2 Nd x c5 15 b4! N7d 16 Rf11 Nb6 17 Qb3 Qd5 18 Qb2 Bd7

Black gets a nice endgame from 19 Be4 Na4 20 B x d5 N x b2 21 B x b7 N x d1 22 B x a8 N c3!

19 Ne4 Qb5 20 a3 Bc6 21 Nd4?! Alekhine, who spared no prisoners in the tournament book, said 21 Ne5 or 21 Bd3 would have preserved an advantage, which this move throws away, and his next move turns toward a disadvantage, despite the disruption of Black’s queenside.

21 ... Qe5 22 f4? Qc7 23 N x c6 b x c6 24 Bd3 Nb8 25 Racl Nd5 26 Qf2 a5! 27 b5 Qb6

This is the counterplay Vidmar evidently underestimated at move 22. He now overvalues his position and decides that since White has an edge he must be able to demonstrate it. And if he can’t demonstrate it on the queenside, then...

28 b x c6 N x c6 29 Nc5 Rd8 30 g4? Nde7 31 h4? Rd5 32 c4 Rd4!

White may have been counting on 32 ... Rdd8 33 Rh1 with advantage. Now however 33 Nd7 Qd8! 34 N x f8 R x d3 wins material because the knight is trapped.

33 f5 e x f5 34 g x f5 Ne5 35 Bc2 R x d4+ 36 R x d1 Rd8 37 R x d8+ Q x d8 38 f6 N7c6 39 f x g7+ K x g7 40 Kg2

The queen and knight(s) endgame favors Black in all its forms, e.g., 40 Nd3 N x d3 41 Qg3+ Kh7 42 B x d3 Qd4+ 43 Kf1 Ne5, as Alekhine pointed out.

40 ... Ng6 41 Kh3 Qd6! 42 Kg2 Nd4 43 Nb7 Qe5 44 Kf1 Nf4 45 Qg3+ Kh7 46 Bd3 Nd6!

Threatening checks at a1 and b2 to win the knight.

47 Ba5 Qa1+ 48 Qc1 Qb2!

After 48 ... Qb2

Now 49 Qf2 Qcl+ 50 Qe1 Qe6! pockets a piece.

49 Qe3 Qg2+ 50 Ke1 Qe2

Again threatening ... Qc6 as well as ... Ng2+. Note that now 51 Qf3 Qe6 52 Qfl holds.

51 Qf3 Ng2+ 52 Kf1 Nf64! 53 Kg1 N x h4 54 Qf1 Q x e4 55 Nc5 Qe3+ 56 Kh1 Q x c5 57 Bd3+

Since 57 Q x f4 Qd5+ allows mate in two, White hesitates before resigning.

57 ... f5! White resigns

Marshall’s opening play was widely—and unfairly—condemned at New York. For example, in the seventeenth round Nimzovich beat him in a brilliancy prize game that began 1 c4 Nf6 2 d4 e6 3 Nf3 c5 4 d5 d6 5 N f3 e x d5 ("Better" said Alekhine, among other critics, is 5 ... e5) 6 c x d5 g6. Nimzovich, who had suffered twenty years before when Tar- rasch excoriated his opening ideas, remarked, "Marshall permitted himself a few extravagances in the openings at New York; an unfortunate affair in a top class tournament."
The criticism wasn’t as sharp when Marshall used the same opening to achieve dynamic equality against Capablanca (and his only half point against the Cuban) earlier in the tournament. A quarter century later Marshall’s discredited system had a new name and a new reputation: the Modern Benoni Defense.

Marshall finished in last place with 6-14, two points behind the nearest competitor, Spielmann. Some of the New York 1927 invitees remained in New York in hopes of arranging other competition but they failed to come off. Nimzovich was particularly interested in playing a ten-game match with Marshall, at what was then a remarkably fast tempo, 40 moves an hour. But according to an April 19, 1927, letter from Lederer to Vidmar (Item 1278, Russell Collection), the idea fell through when no sponsor was found willing to pay for more than three games of the Marshall–Nimzovich match.

Nevertheless, Marshall found he was still in demand in Europe. Invitations were available—if he wasn’t picky about appearance fees and prize money—and in October, Marshall returned to London for his first tournament there in 28 years. It was a 12-man international arranged by the British Empire Chess Club.

English chess had suffered quite a bit since the days of Blackburne, Burn and Gunsberg. The five English invitees to the event, London 1927, finished in seventh, ninth, tenth, eleventh and twelfth places. Marshall had good fortune to find Sir George Thomas as his first-round opponent. Adopting the Nimzoindian Defense, another indication of his changing repertoire, Marshall obtained a fine game [178] after 1 d4 Nf6 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Bb4 4 Qc2 c5 5 dxc5 Bxc5 6 Nf3 Nc6 7 Bf4 0-0 8 e3 d5 9 a3 Re8 10 Rd1 e5. Thomas proceeded to blunder with 11 Bg5 d4 12 Nd5 Be7 13 Nc7+ Qxc7 14 Be2? d3! 15 Q×d3 e4 and resigned when the time control of 30 moves was reached.

Marshall won four games at London without a loss and missed out on first prize largely because he failed to beat the tournament tail-ender, the Scot W.A. Fairhurst, in the next to last round. Marshall did have the pleasure of again beating Nimzovich, who tied with Tartakower for first prize. It was quite a different Nimzovich from the one who scored 3-1 against Marshall six months before in New York.

179. Nimzoindian Defense
Nimzovich–Marshall, London 1927

1 d4 Nf6 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Bb4 4 Qc2 d5 5 c3 0-0 6 a3 B×c3+
7 b×c3

The Nimzoindian was in its infancy in the late 1920s and the principle value of 4 Qc2 was not realized until players began trying 5 a3 B×c3+ 6 Q×c3.

7... b6 8 c×d5 e×d5 9 Nf3 c5 10 d×c5

Sticking Black with the hanging pawns, that “curious mixture of static weakness and dynamic strength,” to which Nimzovich paid great attention in his writings. One of his conclusions was that the pawns are much weaker if only one is permitted to advance. Nevertheless Marshall played:

10... b×c5 11 Be2 Nc6 12 0-0 c4! 13 Rd1 Qa5 14 Nd4 Bd7 15 f3

Despite the concession of d4 Black should stand well if he can avert an advance of the White e-pawn.

15... Rfe8 16 Rbl Rab8 17 Rb×b8 N×b8 18 Qd2 Na6 19 e4! Nc5!
20 e×d5 N×d5

Black tactically resolves the center tension (21 B×c4 Ne3) and the position remains in approximate balance.

21 Bb2 Na4 22 B×a×c3 23 B×c4 Qc5 24 B×c3 Q×c4 25 Bb2 h6
26 Rcl Qa6 27 Nf5?

After 27 Nf5

This appears to whittle down to a drawn ending with opposite color bishops. However, as in so many Marshall—and Nimzovich—games, the bishops are no guarantee.

27... B×f5 28 Q×d5 Qg6! 29 Qd2 Bd3!

To the spectators it may have seemed that the bishops-of-opposite-color made the position fairly even, and, in fact, The Times account said “the position was quite equal until” Nimzovich blundered on his thirtieth move.

Actually, White is just about lost, as Marshall showed in My Fifty Years: 30 Re1 allows 30... Qb6+ 31 Kh1 R×e1+ and... Q×b2, while 30 Q×c3 is a loss after 30... Re2 31 g3 Qb6+ 32 Qd4 (32 Kh1 Q×b2!) Q×b2 33 Rc8+...
Kh7 34 Q×d3+ g6. And afterwards, Marshall was given a best-played game prize for this.

30 Re3? Re2! White resigns

After the tournament, Marshall spent two weeks giving simultaneous exhibitions and visiting North Africa. He returned to New York where there was talk of another super-grandmaster event, but with more foreigners than the 1927 version. However, it never transpired. Neither did a return match with Akiba Rubinstein, who was visiting the United States at the time. The Pole gave a $2-a-board simul at the Marshall Chess Club in February and after a few other appearances, returned home to Antwerp.

Marshall turned his attention towards Europe again and wrote the National Chess Federation's Kuhns asking for passage money. His relations with Norbert Lederer, Kuhns' ally in New York, were sticky since he had refused to play in an N.C.F. event (with what he considered low prize money). Lederer subsequently wrote Kuhns in May objecting to having the N.C.F. sponsor Marshall's 1928 trip (Item 521, Russell Collection).

Kuhns replied to Marshall that the fledgling federation had no money to send players across the Atlantic (Item 523, Russell Collection). "Organized chess is still in its infancy in America, (our Federation is not two years old) and I fear that it will take some time to educate players and patrons to their just responsibilities," he wrote.

A tournament at Bradley Beach, N.J., was set for September but Marshall set his sights on a different event being held a month earlier at Bad Kissingen in Bavaria. It would clearly be the tournament of the year and produced perhaps more interesting games than any other tournament of the 1920s. Alekhine, who had just won the world championship from Capablanca, was on hiatus but the organizers managed to attract quite a field including Rubinstein, Bogoljubow, Capablanca, Nimzovich, Reti (in one of his last tournaments), Tartakower, Spielmann, and Max Euwe of Amsterdam, who, at 27, was twelve years younger than anyone else in this Old Guard tournament.

Marshall's chance of winning one of the six prizes ranging from 1200 to 200 marks were slim. In fact, it seemed fortunate that old timers such as Tarrasch and Mieses were also invited or Marshall might not win a game. (And he only drew with them as it turned out.)

Marshall proceeded cautiously, drawing his first two games without incident before venturing the first of two Alekhine's Defenses he played at Kissingen:

180. Alekhine's Defense
Spielmann-Marshall, Bad Kissingen 1928
1 e4 Nf6 2 c5 Nd5 3 d4 d6 4 c4 Nb6 5 e×d6

Properly speaking, this opening was only seven years old and the formerly feared Four Pawns Attack (5 f4) was losing some of its luster.

5 . . . exd6 6 Nf3

A rare idea that was soon forgotten. In later years White usually played 6 Ne3 and postponed the decision until later of how to deal with the pin of Nf3/.. Bg4 that may pressure his d-pawn. Spielmann, however, retains the possibility of reinforcing his KN with Nbd2.

6 . . . Be7 7 Be3 Nc6 8 Be2 0–0 9 0–0 Bg4 10 Nbd2 Bf6 11 d5 B×f3!

A wise decision. On a knight move White offers a trade of light squared bishops with 12 N×d4! and stands appreciably better.

12 N×f3 Ne5 13 N×e5 B×e5 14 Rbl Re8 15 f4 B×f6 16 Rf3 Nd7!

White's two bishops will turn into a disadvantage if Black exchanges off the dark-squared ones. Spielmann understands the dangers and has launched a kingside attack. Now 17 Bd3 was the way to continue (17 . . . R×e3? 18 R×e3 B×d4 19 B×h7+ or 17 . . . Ne5 18 Bc2 Ne4 19 Bd4, as suggested by Tartakower in the tournament book).

17 b4 a5 18 a3 a×b4 19 a×b4 Ra3! 20 Bf2 R×f3 21 B×f3 Nb6! 22 Qb3

White still refuses to think about seeking a draw, with 22 B×b6 and 23 Qd3 (but not 23 c×e5 b×c5 24 b×c5 d×c5 25 R×b7 B×d4+ 26 Kh1 because of 26 . . . B×f2 27 Be2 Q×d6 28 g3? R×c2). With:

22 . . . Qa8 23 c×e5 Na4 24 Qa3 b5! 25 c×b6 c×b6 26 g3 b5 27 Qd3 Ne5 28 Re1 R×c1+ 29 B×c1 Qa1 30 Kf1 g6 31 h4 Kg7 32 g4 Na2! 33 Qd1 Qb2 34 Qc2 Qb3 35 g5 Be3

(see diagram)

Black has made substantial progress and the b4-pawn is doomed. Now with 36 B×c3+ N×c3 37 Qe7 White would have drawing chances. (But better for Black is 36 . . . Q×c3 37 Kg2 N×b4 38 Q×b5 Nd3!)

36 Bg3 N×b4 37 f5?

Spielmann had convinced himself he couldn't retain material equality with 37 Q×b5 because of various Black threats. However, it was all a mirage, e.g., 37 . . . Bb2+ 38 Kg2 Q×b2+ 39 Kh1 Qb5+ 40 Kh2, Bc3+ 38 Kh2 Qb5+ 39 Kg1 Qh5, and Black was too far advanced.
After 35 ... Be3

37 ... Qb1+ 38 Kg2 Qxf5 39 Bxd6 Nxd5 40 Qe8 Nf4+!

It's all over now (41 Kgl Bd4+ and ... Qh3+ or ... Qd3+).

41 Bxf4 Qxf4 42 Qxb5 Qxb4 43 Qd5 Qf4 White resigns

In the fourth round Marshall lost a difficult rook-ending to Euwe who had surpassed him in playing strength a few years before. The American got the point back the next day against Yates, by now an old "customer," who never succeeded in beating Marshall in their 11 tournament encounters.

181. Petroff Defense, Marshall Variation
Yates–Marshall, Bad Kissingen 1928

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 Nc3 d6 4 Nf3 Nxe4 5 d4 d5 6 Bd3 Bd6 7 c4 0-0

Playing for more than the equality he had demonstrated before the War with 7 ... Bb4+. Theory in 1928 regarded 7 0-0 Bg4 as best, after which 8 Re1 f5 9 Ne3 c6 10 h3, following a Tarrasch analysis, was "book."

8 0-0 Bh3 9 h4 Bb5 10 c x d5 f5 11 Ne3 Nd7 12 Be2

In his splendid tournament book Tartakower noted that 12 N x e4 f x e4
13 B x e4 Nf6 14 Bd3 N x d5 or 14 Qd3 B x e4 15 Q x e4 B x f3 16 g x f3 Kh8! was rated sound for Black. Even though 14 Bf5! had been seen in Marshall games before, its strength wasn't recognized until the 1930s, when his variation began to disappear.

12 ... Qe7 13 Qc2 Rac8 14 N x e4 f x e4 15 Ng5 B x c2 16 Q x c2 Rf5!

(see diagram)

Yates' idea since move 12 was the exchange of light-squared bishops and the knight incursion at e6. Here he sees that 17 Ne6 R x d5 or 17 Qh5 (and

17 Qe3) h6 must favor Black. The last refuge of a mistaken calculator is the endgame.

17 f4 c x f3 18 Qe6+! Q x e6 19 d x e6 N x f6 20 g4 R d 5! 21 Be3 h6 22 N x f3 R x e6 23 Rac1 Bb4 24 B x d 2 R x e 1 25 B x e 1 Bd6!

Put the d-pawn at c2 or e3 and White has no "bad" bishop or appreciable inferiority of any kind. Marshall now ties down White's rook so he can attack the kingside pawns unimpeded.

26 B x f3 R x h5 27 Be1 Nd5! 28 Be1 N f4 29 h4 g5 30 g x h5 R x h5 31 B x h4 B g6 32 Kg5 B g3 33 Rac1 c6 34 Re5 Kf7 35 Kg2 B h4

The first fruit. Now 36 N x h4 N x h4 37 B x h4 R x h4 38 Re7 Ke7 and ... Kg6 is a winning rook-ending.

36 Kh1 B x g5+ 37 Kg1 Rh5+ 38 K x g5 Re4 39 Rc3 Re4 40 Kg5 Rh4+ 41 Kg5 Re4 42 Kg5 Rh4+ 43 Kg5 Rh6! 44 Ra3 a6 45 Rh3 b5 46 Kg4 Ke6 47 Ra3 Kd5! 48 R x a6 Ke4

Pawn sacrifices were a staple of Marshall endgames. The king ties all White's pieces up until the d-pawn falls.

49 Ra3 Ne4 50 Rc3 Ne2 51 Nd2+ K x d4 52 Nb3+ Ke4 53 Nd2+ K d5 54 Re3 Rh4+ 55 Kg5 Rf2 56 Rd3+ Ke5 57 Kg4 c5 58 b3? N c1! 59 Rd8 N x a2

The game went on for another 21 moves but there was little doubt about the outcome.

Despite his cautious start Marshall was only a half point out of first place after this victory. Even though he blundered away a piece the next round in a pawn-up ending with Bogolubov, he recovered the point with a brilliancy prize game:
182. Queen's Indian Defense
Nimzovich–Marshall, Bad Kissingen 1928

1 d4 Nf6 2 c4 b6 3 Nc3 Bb7 4 Bg5

Two rounds later Tartakower demonstrated the proper way to achieve e2–e4 against Black's questionable third move: 4 Qe2! (4 ... e6 5 e4 d5 6 cxd5 exd5 7 e5 Ne4 8 Bd5+ c6 9 Bd3 with an excellent game) against Marshall. Marshall himself showed the deficiencies of the Grünfeld-like 4 ... d5 5 cxd5 Nxd5 at Moscow 1925 (vs. Göttinger; 6 e4 N×c3 7 b×c3 e6 8 Nf3 c5 9 Ne5 a6 10 Rb1 Be7 11 Qa4+ Kb8 with advantage to White).

4 ... e6 5 Qe2 h6 6 Bh4 Be7 7 e4 0–0 8 e5?

Marshall wondered if Nimzovich overlooked his next move (8 ... Nd5! 9 B×e7 N×e7), but White misses a more important one six moves from now. Better was 8 f3 or 8 Bd3.

8 ... Nd5 9 Bg3 Nb4 10 Qb3 d5!

Now 11 a3 d×e4 12 B×c4 B×g2. Nimzovich makes a curious decision here to castle queenside.

11 e×d6 B×d6 12 0–0–0!? N8c6 13 B×d6 Q×d6 14 a3?

After 14 a3

14 ... N×d4! 15 R×d4

The key point is 15 Q×b4+ c5, after which 16 Qa4 Bc6 17 Qa6 Qf4+ 18 Kbl Q×f2 gives Black excellent compensation (19 Nge2 Rfd8).

15 ... Q×d4 16 a×b4 Q×f2 17 Qd1

Tartakower points out the inadequacy of 17 Nf3 B×f3 18 g×f3 Q×f3 19 Rg1 Qc3+ and 17 Nh3 Qc3+ 18 Kbl B×e4+ 19 Ka2 (19 Ka1 Qc1+ 20 Ka2 B×a2 21 Qa3 a5 22 b×a5 a×b5 21 Qa3 Bc2 and ... B×b5+.

17 ... Rfd8 18 Qe2 Qf4+ 19 Kc2 a5! 20 b×a5 R×a5 21 Nf3 Ral 22 Kb3 b5!

18 Q×b4+ Kc7 19 B×f5 g×f6 20 Qg4+ Kb8 21 Bf4+ Kg8!

... Seeing through 21 c×d6 22 Q×f6+ Kg8 23 Ra4+ and the rook-lift of 21 ... B×e6 22 Q×f6+ Kg8 23 d×c6 Q×e6 24 Ra5! Qc1+ 25 Ke2 Qc2+ 26 Kf3!

22 Q×f6+ Kg7 23 0–0 Qd7 24 Ne5! Q×d5 25 f3 Kg8 26 Rd1 Qe5 27 Rd8+ R×d8 28 Q×d8+ Qf8 29 Rd1!

“A new, more powerful stroke,” says the tournament book: 23 c×b5 Bd5+ 24 N×d5 Qa4+ 25 Kc3 R×d5 and mates.

23 Qe5 b×c4+ 24 Kb4 Qc1 25 Nb5 c×d4!

Nimzovich's losses to Marshall usually ended because of his king but rarely in such a humiliating situation (26 K×c5 Rd5+ or 26 Q×c5 Q×b2+ and mates).

After this Marshall's 4–3 score placed him in a tie for third place. But Tartakower, who beat him two days later, summed up Marshall's result with the one word, "Tiredness." In the final two rounds Marshall should have scored two points, and tied Capablanca for second place. But a blunder against Rubinstein and a rare oversight in a rook ending with Mieses left him with only a half point and a final score of 5–6, just short of the prize list. The loss to Rubinstein was particularly galling because it came in what was looking like one of his greatest victories:

183. Slav Defense
Marshall–Rubinstein, Bad Kissingen 1928

1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 c6 3 c4 e6 4 Nc3 d×c4

This would later acquire a name, the Abrahams Variation, and a good reputation with play continuing 5 a4 Bb4 6 e×c3 b×c5 7 Bd2 a5! 8 a×b5 B×c3 9 B×c3 c×b5 10 b×a5 B×b4 followed by ... b4 after White captures on c4.

5 e×d5 6 a4 Qc6 7 a×b5 c×b5 8 Ne5 Bc7 9 b×b4 10 Bd2 Nf6 11 b×c4 b×c4 12 N×c4 Qd8 13 Qa4+ Ne6 14 Ne5! B×c3 15 B×c3 0–0! 16 Ba6!

Marshall won't bite on 16 N×c6 B×c6 17 Q×c6 Rc8 18 Qa6 R×c3 19 Q×a7 Qd5 with excellent play for Black.

16 ... B×a6! 17 N×c6 Qc7 18 d5!

Another fine move, based on 18 ... N×d5 19 Be5 winning a piece. Now Marshall clarifies the situation at the expense of Black's kingside. (Note that 19 Q×a6 Rc8 is nothing.)

18 Be7 19 B×f6 g×f6 20 Qg4+ Kh8 21 Qh4+ Kg8!

...
Better than 29 Q×f8+ and 30 R×a7. Now the rook invades decisively at d8.

After 29 Rd1

29 ... h5 30 Qf6??

With 30 Qh4! Black can resign (30 ... Qe5 31 Rd8+ and 32 Q×h5 mate; 30 ... Bd5 31 Nd7). A tired Marshall apparently overlooked Black's simple reply.

30 ... Qc5! 31 Qd8+ Kh7 32 Qd3+

Or perhaps he overlooked that 32 Nd7 Q×e3+ 33 Kh1 allows ... Q×f3! 34 Nf6+ Q×f6 35 Q×f6 R×g2 and Black wins. A stunning turnaround.

Rubinstein now played:

32 ... f5 33 Nd7 Qe7 34 e4 f×e4 35 f×e4 Bc6! 36 e5+ Kh8 37 Nf6 Qe5+! 38 Qd4 R×g2+ 39 Kf1 Qb5+ 40 Rd3 Rd2!

And Black won in 16 more moves. When Marshall began to make moves like 30 Qh6?? it was clear he wasn't the player he once was.

From Bad Kissingen, Marshall and Réti went directly to Brno, Czechoslovakia, for a minor international. Their final scores were similar: both lost one game, but Réti won 6 and drew 2 while Marshall won 2 and drew 6. As a result, Réti tied for first prize with Fritz Sämisch while Marshall tied for fourth with Karel Opatrny. And, from there he immediately left for Budapest for a similar, small international, except that Brno's Czech players had been replaced by minor Hungarian masters, and Réti had been replaced by Capablanca and Spielmann.

Budapest 1928 was the tournament best remembered for Capablanca's use of a subvariation of the Steinitz Defense to the Ruy Lopez. It had actually been introduced by Marshall during their 1909 match and quickly forgotten. Since the Budapest tournament was held at the Siesta Sanatorium it thereafter became known as the "Siesta Variation."

Spielmann drew too often at Budapest to be in contention for first prize so the tournament became yet another race between Marshall and Capablanca. First prize was 200 U.S. dollars, donated by Gabriel Wells, New York's most prominent rare-book dealer, who had been born near Budapest; all the other prizes were paid in Hungarian pengo. The two old rivals drew their individual game, a theoretical Nimzoindian. Marshall had something of an edge in the battle for Wells' money because he beat Hans Kmoch while Capa was somewhat lucky to draw with him.

184. Queen's Gambit Declined
Kmoch–Marshall, Budapest 1928

1 d4 Nf6 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 d5 4 Bg5 Nbd7 5 e3 Bb4 6 c×d5 e×d5 7 Ne2?! Since Capablanca's convincing crush of Spielmann at New York 1927, 7 Qa4 had been regarded as best.

7 ... c6! 8 Qc2 0–0 9 Ng3 h6!

Well-timed, since now 10 Bf4 g5 11 Be5 Ng4! wins a pawn. Marshall now obtains a kind of ideal Exchange Variation as Black.

10 B×f6 N×f6 11 Bd3 Re8 12 0–0 Bd6 13 Nf5 Bc7 14 Rfe1 Be6 15 f3?! B×f3!

An excellent decision, despite the resulting bishops of opposite color. White's kingside dark squares, especially e3 and e5, are vulnerable now.

16 B×f5 Qd6 17 g3 Re7! 18 Rad1 Rae8 19 Qd3 Bb6 20 Kh1 g6! 21 Bh3 c5!

The traditional response to f2–f3 in such Queen's Gambit Declined positions is ... c6–c5, because Black is happy to open the diagonal 22 d×c5 Q×c5 23 Na4 Qa5 or 23 N×d5 N×d5 24 Q×d5 Q×d5 25 R×d5 R×e3 26 Rf1 Re2 with a winning endgame.

22 Nb5 Qe6 23 d×c5 B×c5 24 Nd4 Qb6! 25 Nb3 B×e3 26 Bf1 a6 27 Qb1 d4 28 Bc4 

(see diagram)

28 ... Ng4!! White resigns

Black meets the threat of 29 Q×g6+ and threatens an unavoidably deadly check at f2 (29 f×g4 Qe6+).

After he turned 60, Svetozar Gligorić remarked that he needed to play in three tournaments in a row: the first two serving as training events
to gain the proper form in order to compete in the third. Bad Kissinger and Brno had prepared Marshall for Budapest. But in the end he spoiled his chance to finish ahead of Capablanca when he lost in 70 moves to Endre Steiner in the eighth round. Had the story been different, Capablanca would have remembered Havana 1913 and complained about the American’s luck. Such luck featured nevertheless in this escape against Zoltán Baala.

185. Queen’s Indian Defense
Marshall–Balla, Budapest 1928

1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 b6 3 c4 Bb7 4 Ne3 e6 5 Bg5 d6?! 6 Qc2 Nbd7 7 e4 h6 8 Be3 a6 9 h3! c5 10 Be2 cxd4

In Marshall’s day, the resulting Maróczy Bind was considered a substantial advantage for White and that’s why Marshall encouraged it (10 ... Be7 11 e5). However, Black’s flexible defense, now called the Hedgehog formation, is today regarded as difficult to break.

11 N×d4 Qc7 12 0-0 Be7 13 f4 0-0 14 b4 Rac8 15 Rac1 Rd8 16 Bd3 Bf8 17 Qf2 g6 18 Ne3 Bg7 19 N×d2!

The only target worth tickling is the b-pawn. White intends 20 Na4.

19 ... Bc6 20 b5! Bb7 21 Na4 Ne5 22 N×e5 b×c5 23 a4 Nd7 24 Nb3 f5!

Black finds his own target, at e4, which he’ll pound with a knight and, from a6, his queen. The game now takes on a modern tinge and could have been mistaken for one played in the 1980s or 1990s by Ulf Andersson of Sweden.

25 Qc2 Qb8 26 Rac1 a×b5 27 a×b5 Qa8 28 Bd2 Nf6 29 e×f5 g×f5 30 Be3 Ne4 31 B×g7 K×g7 32 Re3

The tournament book recommends 32 b6 followed by Qb2. Marshall is lured into thinking he can penetrate at a7 at any time.

32 ... Kf7 33 Ra1 Qb8 34 b6 Nf6 35 Ra7! Re6!

A terrible revelation to White. The b-pawn is falling and with it goes the anchor for the a7-rook. With Black in time pressure he rejects the exchanges of 36 Na5 R×b6 37 R×b7+ in favor of a wholly unsound—but practically promising—piece sacrifice.

36 B×f5!? e×f5 37 R×e8 N×e8 38 Q×f5+ Nf6 39 gf?

Black could not easily avoid this, since 37 ... Q×e8 would have hung the bishop and 37 ... K×e8 38 Q×f5 R×b7 (38 ... Kf7 transposes to the game) loses the knight with check after 39 Qe6+.

On his last move Marshall saw the futility of 39 Nd2 R×b6 40 Ne4 when Black could simply have played 40 ... Q×g7 41 Q×f6+ Ke8 and walk his king away to safety at b8.

But now White must offer a full rook to keep the desperation attack.

39 ... R×b6 40 g5! Q×a7 41 Q×f6+ Ke8 42 g×h6

Now 42 ... Qa2 wins since on 43 Qg6+ Kh7 44 h7 Black can allow White to queen because of the mating attack that follows 42 ... R×b3!

42 ... Be4?? 43 Qh8+ Ke7 44 Qg7+ Ke6 45 N×c5+ d×c5 46 Q×a7 Resigns

If anything could be called a Marshall swindle, this qualifies.

The American’s final score was 6–3, a point behind Capa but a point ahead of Knoch and Spielmann. He then headed for Berlin for a tournament sponsored by the newspaper Berliner Tageblatt. This was one of the last in which Siegbert Tarrasch entered; he lost to Capablanca, Rubinstein and Tartakower in the first three rounds and promptly quit the tournament, leaving a major event in the German capital without a German player.

Marshall played nearly as badly. He won one game, from Rubinstein
out of a lost opening, and managed a few interesting draws but finished up with 4½–7½ and finished last for only the second time in an international tournament.

Marshall's busiest international year since 1908 ended where his career had begun, in England. After Budapest, first Marshall headed west and turned up in Tunis to give a 31-board simul. He then returned to Britain for his first and only participation in the annual Hastings Christmas tournament. Since the congress began in 1920 it had grown from a British-dominated event to the strongest annual event in the world. The Premier Reserves section of 1928–29 was powerful enough to include Herman Steiner, the prolific author Eugene Znosko-Borovsky and the first great woman player, Vera Menchik.

The top section, the Premier, was, naturally, stronger. Marshall lost to Edgar Colle but drew with the other contenders, 25-year-old George Koltanowski and an enormously talented Hungarian named Sándor Takács, who was to die a few years later. Against the six British entrants, Marshall racked up 4 wins and 2 draws, and for the last time he finished first in an international tournament (tied with Colle and Takács).

186. Bogolindian Defense

1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 e6 3 c4 Bb4+ 4 Nbd2 0–0 5 c3 b6 6 Bd3 Bb7 7 0–0 d5 8 Ne5 c5 9 Nd3 c×d4 10 e×d4 Ne4

The delayed construction of a stonewall pawn structure (… f5) seems out of character for the opening, in which Black usually captures on c4 at some point.

11 c×d5 exd5 12 Qb3 Be7 13 Bf4 f5? 14 Rac1!

Black's last move was just the error Marshall was waiting for (and which he anticipated with 12 Qb3). Now 14 ... Nd7 allows 15 N×d7 and 16 Rc7 and 14 ... Nc6 allows 15 B×a6! B×a6 16 Nc6 Qd7 17 Q×d5+!

14 ... g5?! 15 Bc3 Kh8 16 B×e4! d×e4 17 N×g5!

Marshall gives this key variation in My Fiftieth Years: 17 B×g5 18 B×g5 Q×g5 19 Re7! Be6 20 Nf7+ R×f7 21 Q×f7 Bd7 22 Qd5! Be6 (22 ... Qd8 23 R×c1) 23 Re8+ Kg7 24 Rg8+ Kh6 25 Qc6+ and wins.

17 ... Qd5 18 Re7! B×g5 19 B×g5 Q×b3

Else 20 Ng6+ wins immediately.

20 a×b3 Bd5 21 Be7 Resigns

A bit premature, but 21 ... Na6 22 Rd7 or 21 ... Re8 22 Bf6+ Kg8 23 Rg7+ Kf8 24 R×h7 was lost eventually.

Marshall returned home in early 1929 to learn that Lederer had not abandoned his two-year-old effort to arrange another international in New Jersey, this time at the Hotel La Reine, Bradley Beach. With N.C.F. support Lederer arranged for ten invitees, including Alekhine. There were modest prizes of $500, $350, and $200, and $25 a point for the rest ($1 in 1929 was worth about the same as $20 in the 1990s). Marshall tried to get Jaffe, now a good friend, invited, but failed. As usual, the time limit remained 30 moves in two hours, with two-hour playing sessions a day, interrupted by a 6 p.m. to 8 p.m. dinner break.

This was Alekhine's first tournament since winning the world championship from Capablanca two years before and he was the prohibitive favorite in a field composed mainly of minor United States masters. Marshall, however, started strongly, scoring 3½–½ in the first four days, a half point behind Alekhine.

Rafael Cintrón–Marshall, Bradley Beach 1929

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nf3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Nbd7 5 e3 c6 6 Nc3 Qa5 7 Nd2 Bb4 8 Qc2 0–0 9 B×f6 N×f6 10 B×d3 Re8 11 0–0 e5 12 d×e5

This entire line, beginning with 9 B×f6 rather than 9 Be2, is conservative and leads at best to a tiny White edge. (For 12 c×d5, see game number 111 above, Rotlewi–Marshall, Karlsbad 1911.)

12 ... R×e5 13 c×d5 B×c5!

Later this year at Karlsbad Grünfeld played 13 ... c×d5? against Euwe and got a poor game after 14 Nb3 Qd8 15 a3 Bf8 16 Nb4 and 17 Qb3.

14 Nc4 Qd8!

This is Marshall's improvement over 14 ... Q×d5 15 Q×c3 Rg5 16 f3 which led to a small edge for White in a 1928 match game between Euwe and Bogoljubov.

15 Q×c3 R×d5 16 Rad1 Bf5 17 Be2 Qe7 18 R×d5 c×d5 19 Qe5

White's endgame outlook is pessimistic because of the c-file but the middlegame of 19 Nd2 Re8 was worse.

19 ... Q×e5 20 N×e5 Re8 21 Bd3

(see diagram)

21 ... Be4! 22 f×e4 d×e4 24 Nd7?
An attempt to complicate a pawn-down ending. On 24 Rx6+ Kx6 25 Nxd7 Bxd7 26 Nxe6+ Kf6 27 Ne8 the pawn queens. But 24 Bxe4 is not easy for Black.

24 ... Nxd7 25 Bb5 Re7 26 Rd1 Nf8 27 Rd4 g6 28 Be4 Nd7 29 Kf2 Kg7 30 h3 f5 31 Rd6 Ne5 32 Be2 Re7 33 Rd2 Kf6 34 Kg3 Rd7 35 Rxd7 Nxd7 36 h4 Ne5 37 h3 Nd3 38 Bxd3 e3 39 Kg2 Ke5 40 Kc1 Kd4 41 Kd2 h6 White resigns

In the fifth round he drew with the only other international star, Lajos Steiner. Then, in what was the turning point, he lost a queen-and-pawn endgame with Alekhine that lasted just under eight hours. That killed Marshall's chances for first and, despite Carrie's encouragement, he seemed to lose interest in the tournament. Even though his score of 4/2 with three rounds remaining seemed to assure him of a prize, the American champion collapsed.

First, he lost three pawns against his old opponent Albert Fox and it required vintage Marshall ingenuity to win the pawns back one at a time. His bishop sacrifice against I.S. Turover in a superior position deserved a better fate and in the last round he lost a perfectly good endgame to a young Manhattan Chess Club star, Alexander Kevitz in the final round. Marshall finished with an even score in sixth place.

188. Queen's Gambit Declined, Cambridge Springs Defense

Turover-Marshall, Bradley Beach 1929

1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 e6 3 c4 d5 4 Ne3 Nbd7 5 Bg5 c6 6 c3 Qa5 7 Qc2 Ne4 8 cxd5 exd5 9 Bd3 Nxe5 10 Nxe5 h6 11 Nf3 Bb6 12 Re1 0-0 13 0-0 Nf6

Black's pieces coordinate much better than in the Marshall-Bogolyubov game from New York 1924. Here he prepares ... Re8, ... Bg4 and ... Qc7.

A Lion in Winter

14 h3 Re8 15 Rfd1 Bd7 16 a3 Qd8 17 Nd2 Qe8

Black would like to play 17 ... Qe7, 18 ... Rad8 and perhaps 19 ... Qd6 followed by 20 ... Qd6, aiming at h2. But White is ready to push his e-pawn. So Marshall discourages him with the threat of 18 ... Bxe3. Unfortunately, Marshall takes the sacrifice too seriously and overlooks either White's twenty-first or twenty-second move.

18 Nf1 Bxe3? 19 gxe3 Qxe3 20 f4 Ng4 21 Bf5! Rxe3

22 Qg2 h5 23 Bxe3 h4 24 Nxe3 Qxe3+ 25 Qf2 Bxf4 26 Re2 g5 27 Qxe3 Bxe3+ 28 Kf1

And White won, although it took him another 26 moves to evade all of Marshall's traps.

The N.C.F. would not contribute its own funds to Marshall's proposed European trip for 1929 but agreed to send out letters July 5, asking its members for contributions to raise $1000. Eventually 31 subscribers, contributing amounts from $100 to $2, raised $817. Among the contributors were Edwin Dimock, Julius Finn, L.B. Meyer, George Emile Roosevelt and Silas Howland of the Marshall C.C., Helms and Walter Penn Shipley (Item 767, Russell Collection).

Frank sailed in late July without Carrie. He later told his supporters that three days before departing he had several teeth extracted and was hobbed by pain and insomnia throughout the first tournament, a return to Karlsbad after an absence of 18 years. Perhaps with Carrie present or without the pain his last great tournament might have turned out differently.

Karlsbad 1929 was the last of the great events staged by Victor Tietze: a huge 22-player round robin which included many veterans from before the War (Nimzovich, Vidmar, Capablanca, Spielmann, Rubinstein, Tartakower, Maroczy, even Paul Johner) as well as the new generation (Euwe, Bogolyubov, Colle, Grünfeld, Sämisch, Menchik).
The Europeans had advanced too far and Marshall was left behind from the start. He lost to Vidmar, Spielmann and Maroczy in the first three rounds almost without putting up a fight. Although he won two nice games in the first half of tournament, his best play occurred in defensive gems, a swindle of Yates, a careful draw with Bogolyubov and a fine endgame saving against Rubinstein.


40 Rd2!

Now 40... Kf6 allows 41 Rf6+ and 42 Rg6, securing counterplay in the form of the passed f-pawn.

40... a5 41 Ke6 a4 42 Kd1 Kf6 43 Rd6+ Ke7 44 Re6+ Kf7 45 Kc2! Rg3 46 Rg6 Rf3 47 Rd6 Rf4 48 Rd7+ Kf6 49 g5+!

Forcing a draw by winning the g-pawn.

49... K×f5 50 R×g7 Rc4+ 51 Kd3 b5 52 Rg8 Kg4 53 Rg7 Kf5 54 Rg8 Kg4 55 Rg7 Kf5 Draw

Black may even lose if he tries too hard: 55... Rc5 56 Rg6 Kh5 57 Rg8 R×g5? 58 R×g5+ K×g5 59 Kd4!

Marshall won 4 games and lost 7 at Karlsbad, and three of his victories came against the only players who finished below him. But two of his wins were rewarded with prizes. There were 14 such prizes over all. This one was worth 100 Czech crowns, despite a major error at move 18:

190. Queen’s Indian Defense
Marshall–Canal, Karlsbad 1929

1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 c5 3 c4 b6 4 Bg5 Bb7 5 e3 Be7

A Lion in Winter

Marshall’s quiet system did well in the 20s until the discovery of the more forceful 5... h6! 6 Bh4 Bb4+ 7 Nbd2 g5! 8 Bg3 g4, as Tarrasch had once lost a piece.

6 Bd3 Ne4 7 B×e7 Q×e7 8 B×e4!

Throughout his life Marshall went unburdened with the almost religious reverence for the two bishops that had so burdened many of Steinitz’s successors, such as Janowsky. Here White seizes the center.

8... B×e4 9 Ne3 Bb7 10 0-0 f5?! 11 d5!

Strategically thematic— and tactically justified here by 11... e5 12 d6! Q×d6 13 Q×d6 and 14 Nb5 with 15 N×d6+ or 15 N×e7+ next.

11... 0-0 12 Qd4 d6 13 d×e6 Q×e6 14 Nd5 Na6 15 Rfd1 h6 16 a4 Qf7 17 b4 Rae8 18 Qb2! Rc4 19 Rd4 c6?

With 19... e5! Black could have punished White’s eighteenth move (18 Rac1 or Qe3 were better).

20 Nf4 N×b4! 21 R×d6! a5

Not 21... Q×c4 22 Nd2 or 22... R×c4 23 Ne5.

22 Ng6 Qc7 23 Rad1 Nd5?!

The best Black could do. Spielmann pointed out 23... Rf7 loses to Rd8+ and Nb4.

24 R6×d5! c×d5 25 N×f8 K×f8 26 c×d5 Qd6 27 Qe2! Kg8 28 Nd2! Rh4? 29 f4!

Now 29... Q×d5 30 Nf3 wins, as does 29... B×d5 30 Nf3 and Qd2. On 29... Rh5 there follows 30 Ne4 and 31 d6, according to Marshall.

29... Rg4 30 Q×f5 h5 31 Q×h5 Resigns

Marshall also shared the fourth brilliancy prize, worth 450 Czech crowns, for another fine game against an English opponent. Where he once rolled up a score of 11 wins, 8 draws and only 5 losses in tournament games against Blackburne, Burn and Gunsberg, Marshall now was scoring against the younger generation. He had just defeated Sir George Thomas at Hastings.

191. English Opening
Thomas–Marshall, Karlsbad 1929

1 d4 e6 2 Nf3 c5 3 c4 c×d4 4 N×d4 Nf6 5 Ne3 Bb4 6 Ndb5 0-0 7 Bf4
Marshall gave this a question mark in *My Fifty Years*, recommending 7 a3! instead, although the move is now regarded as perfectly playable. He said Thomas expected only 7 ... Na6 8 Bd6 now, overlooking 7 ... d5 8 Ne7? Nh5!.

7 ... d5! 8 e3 Ne6 9 a3 Ba5!

Bear in mind that Marshall played this in 1929, after which 9 ... Ba5! was almost immediately forgotten. Numerous games in the 1970s-90s saw 9 ... B×c3+ 10 N×c3 with a slight but secure edge for White thanks to the two bishops.

10 b4 a6!

Based on 11 Nd6 N×c4+ 12 N×c4 Q×c4 or 11 b×a5 a×b5 12 c×b5 Q×a5 with a fine game for Black in either case. But White should try 11 c×d5 e×d5 12 b×a5 a×b5 13 B×b5 Q×a5 with equality (14 Qd2 d4! 15 e×d4 Ne4).

11 Nd4 Bc7 12 N×c6 b×c6 13 B×c7 Q×c7 14 c×d5 c×d5 15 Rc1 Qe7 16 Qb3?

White didn't like 16 Na4 because of 16 ... Ne4 but 16 Qd4 (and if 16 ... e5 then 17 N×d5) was much better than allowing the Black center to advance.

16 ... Bb7 17 f3 e5! 18 Be2 d4 19 Na4 Nd5!

Since 20 e4 Ne3 is horrible, White continued...

20 e×d4 e×d4 21 Kf2 Nf4 22 Bc4

Marshall gives the alternatives as 22 Re1 Qg5 23 g3 N×e2 24 K×e2 d3+! 25 Q×d3 Rf6+ winning, or 22 Rae1 Rae8 23 Bd1 Qg5 24 g3 Nh3+ 25 Kf1 R×e1+ 26 K×e1 Re8+ and ... Qd2.

After 22 Bc4

22 ... d3! 23 B×d3

Or 23 Re1 d2! and 23 Rae1 Qh4+ 24 g3 Qh3.
Chapter Seventeen

The Gold Medals

Although his playing days were declining, Marshall assumed a prominent, and almost paternal, role in the 1930s. As captain, he led American teams to the first five modern Olympiads, winning four of them to the astonishment of world-weary Europe. Although individual Americans had performed well since Morphy's day, the United States was not considered a major chess power, and even a third-place bronze medal had seemed unlikely against the best Europeans.

But the Marshall teams were over-achievers. His knowledge of the game extended far beyond the theoretical. "He was an ideal man to create inspiration and real team spirit," wrote Reuben Fine.

The Tournaments of Nations, as they were called, had actually begun in 1924, with the founding of FIDE, the Federation Internationale des Échecs. But the first FIDE tournament was actually one of individuals in which "team scores" were obtained by adding the results of any four players with the same passport. (Latvia finished fourth with only three players.)

Another try, two years later in Budapest, involved only four teams. When FIDE expanded the effort at London 1927, many of the stronger nations, including the United States, were absent. And the following year at the Hague, FIDE, like the International Olympic Committee, tried to draw a distinction between amateurs and professionals, and barred the latter. The United States team, led by Isaac Kashdan, performed well, finishing second in what was a decidedly amateurish event. The modern Olympiads were born in the 1930s.

Hamburg 1930

Frank Marshall's first Olympiad, at Hamburg, brought back fond memories of his participation there two decades before in the seventeenth Congress of the German Chess Union. But by 1930 an entirely new generation had all but replaced the Tarrasches and Schlechtzers. The few veterans present at Hamburg 1930 included Alexander Alekhine, playing for France, and Akiba Rubinstein, who represented Poland.

The Poles appeared to have one of the best teams because they also had Savielly Tartakower, who Marshall noted, always seemed to be scurrying about with his journalist's notebook. "He makes notes, not only of the game he is playing, but runs around the room between moves, taking notes of other games," Marshall wrote.

Among the new faces he took note of were 17-year-old Erich Eliskases of Austria, a slim, short 21-year-old Czech named Salo Flohr and the exotic 25-year-old Punjabi (Pakistani Indian), Mir Sultan Khan. Flohr, who would win 14 games, more than anyone else at Hamburg, struck Marshall as someone who had "a nervous trend but fine control" and exceptional skill in positional struggles.

Youth and nerves were served by the first Olympiads, since they were exhausting events. The schedule typically managed to squeeze something like 19 rounds, including adjournments, into two weeks. With fewer than 10 teams in the 1930s—compared with more than 100 in the 1990s, the first Olympiads could be run on a round-robin basis. Each match consisted of four boards, as it has since. But in the 1930s the teams consisted of five players, not six. With only one reserve, there were few opportunities to rest a tired player.

There also were few incentives to go to Hamburg, since there was no prize money, little in the way of team sponsorship and no strong expectation that the United States would win any medals. Not surprisingly, three of the strongest Americans, Al Horowitz, Abraham Kupchik and Edward Lasker, declined the National Chess Federation's invitations to represent their country. But Marshall, Isaac Kashdan and Herman Steiner readily accepted the top three boards. Kashdan was a valuable addition since his 13–2 at the previous Olympiad had been the best score on first board. Harold M. Phillips, a lawyer whose love of chess extended back to a friendship with Steinitz, was the team manager and fourth board. The only reserve player was J.A. Anderson of St. Louis, who had finished second in the previous year's Western Championship.

The Americans sailed July 3 on the S.S. New York. In the first round Marshall discovered he was paired with an unlikely opponent—longtime Marshall Chess Club member Marcel Duchamp, playing for France. They drew in 38 moves and the United States ended up splitting the match 2–2 with the relatively weak French. But Marshall made up for this lost half-point when he scored 6½ points in his next seven games. One
of those points came against the Latvian national champion, Vladimir Petrov, who later died in a Stalinist prison camp.

192. Bogoisindian Defense
Marshall–Petrov, Hamburg 1930
1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 e6 3 c4 Bb4+ 4 Bd2 Qc7 5 e3 0–0 6 Bd3 d5? 7 0–0 Nd7

Nowadays in this opening Black tries to establish a dark-square pawn structure, with ... d6 and ... e5, e.g., 6 ... Bx d2+ and 7 ... e5.

8 Ne3 Bxc3 9 Bxc3 b6 10 Rcl Bb7 11 cxd5 exd5?! 12 Qb3! e5?

![Diagram](image)

After 12 ... c5

Black’s last has a natural appearance but it virtually loses by force. To stop 13 Bb4 Black should have tried 12 ... a5.

13 d x c5 N x c5 14 B x f6!

Black drops two minor pieces for a rook after either 14 ... Q x f6 15 R x c5 or 14 ... N x b3 15 B x e7 N x c1 16 R x c1.

14 ... g x f6 15 Qb4! Kh8 16 R x e5! Resigns

After 17 Qh4 Black drops his queen or king. Note that on the fifteenth move Black would also lose following 15 ... Rfe8 16 Bf5! Qf8 17 Qh4 Qg7 18 Nd4.

Although this miniature has been reprinted periodically for over sixty years, it was not Marshall’s best game at Hamburg. He showed greater understanding in a splendid effort against Fritz Sämisch, anticipating by forty years an opening gambit attributed to Viktor Korchnoi.

193. French Defense (by transposition)
Marshall–Sämisch, Hamburg 1930
1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 e6 3 Nbd2 c5 4 e4?! d5?

This transposes into a Tarrasch French Defense, whereas 4 ... c x d4!
5 N x d4 N c6 would lead to a good Sicilian Defense for Black.

5 e5 Nfd7 6 c3 Ne6 7 Bd3 Qb6 8 Qa4?!

Korchnoi later discovered that White can sacrifice the d-pawn favorably with 8 0–0 c x d4 9 c x d4 N x d4 10 N x d4 Q x d4 11 N f3 followed by Qc2 or Qa4. Marshall’s version of this gambit is similar, however, and Black does better here to avoid it with 8 ... c x d4 9 c x d4 Qb4!.

8 ... a6?! 9 0–0 c x d4 10 c x d4 Qa7 11 Re1! b5 12 Qe2 N x d4 13 N x d4 Q x d4 14 Nb3!

More accurate than 14 N f3 Qc5. White now has excellent compensation for his gambited pawn because of his control of the c-file and c2–h7 diagonal and because Black’s minor pieces are so poor.

14 ... Qb6 15 Be3 Qb8 16 f4 Bb7 17 Rael Bb4 18 Re2 Qd8 19 a3 Re8 20 Qbl R x c1+ 21 Q x c1 Be7 22 Re2 Qa8 23 Bd4!

Not allowing Black to liberate his bishop at the cost of a pawn with 23 ... d4. White can now play on the queenside (with Na5 or an invasion at c7). But the kingside has fewer defensive pieces, and, besides, that’s where the king is.

23 ... 0 0 24 f5 Re8 25 f6! R x c2 26 B x c2!

![Diagram](image)

After 26 B x c2

This recapture is better than 26 Q x c2 g x f6 27 c x f6 B x f6 28 B x h7+ Kg7. Now, however, exchanges on f6 will cost Black a piece after a queen check at g5.

26 ... B f8 27 f x g7 B x g7 28 Qg5 Qe8 29 Bd3 N f8 30 Ne5 Bc6 31 b4 Nd7 32 b x h6 33 Qg3 N x e5 34 B x c5 d4 35 Be7!

The threat of 36 Bf6 Qf8 37 Bc7 and 38 Qd3 is decisive.

35 ... Kh8 36 Qf4 Qg8 37 Bf6 Resigns
Team tournaments in those days were often lenient about changes in board order. The Americans alternated their first two boards, sometimes using Marshall, the designated second-board, ahead of Kashdan, the designated first-board. But it was risky to have Marshall sit out a match, even in such a long tournament, because it meant moving the relatively inexperienced Anderson into the lineup. Marshall’s consequent tiredness was evident in his long, 57- and 49-move losses to Josef Løvenc of Austria and Kari Berndtsson-Kullberg of Sweden.

But as compensation for age there was his thirty years of international experience. Marshall still possessed the resoluteness of the “Ein- digreische Amerikaner.” He demonstrated this after spoiling a fine opening with an unsound piece sacrifice against Salo Landau of the Netherlands.

194. Queen’s Indian Defense
Marshall—Landau, Hamburg 1930

1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 e6 3 c4 b6 4 Nc3 Bb7 5 Bg5 h6 6 B×f6 Q×f6 7 a3!

By stopping a bishop pin at b4 White ensures the advance of his e-pawn. This is why 5... Bb4 is preferred today.

7... Qd8 8 e4 Be7 9 Bd3 d6 10 Qe2 Nd7 11 0-0-0! c5

Black is reluctant to castle with White able to open the center with e4-e5. He tries to create a middlegame in which White has the worst bishop.

12 d5 e5 13 Bc2! a6 14 Ba4 Qc7 15 N×e5!

Capablanca, on the eve of New York 1927, had enumerated Marshall’s weaknesses in pretournament profiles of the players for the New York Times. Among them Capa cited occasional Marshall lapses in calculating variations, and this may be to blame here. White was apparently counting on something such as 15... d×e5 16 d6 B×d6 17 R×d6 and 18 Rd1.

15... f×e5 16 d6 Bg5+! 17 f4?! B×f4+ 18 Kbl Qe8

White appears to have absolutely nothing but a passed d-pawn as compensation for his lost piece. Yet against a pretty fair player, who was becoming the number two player in the Netherlands after Euwe, Marshall puts up stiff resistance until Black (Landau) blunders.

19 h4 h5 20 Qf3! 0-0

To avoid increasing the pressure on the pin with 21 Qh3, Black sheds the first pawn.

21 g3 Bh6 22 Q×h5 Nh6 23 Q×e5 b5 24 c×b5 Re8 25 d7!

The endgame, with only two pawns for the lost piece, is far from lost.

25... R×e5 26 d×e5 Q×e5 27 b×a6 B×a6 28 g4! Be3 29 g5 N×e4 30 N×e4 R×e4 31 Bc2 Re5 32 Rd6! Bb7 33 Rf1 Be4 34 Rd7 Rf5??

A hallucination. Black probably disliked the passivity of 34... Rf8 and in an effort to trade pieces, just blundered.

35 R×f5 B×f5 36 B×f5 Rf8 37 g6 f×g6 38 B×g6 Bd4 39 a4 Rh8 40 Bf7+ Kh7 41 b3 Rh6 42 Bc4 Be3 43 Ra7 Rd6 44 a5 Rd2 45 a6 Rb2+ 46 Kcl Ra2 47 Rd7! Resigns

The medal chances of the United States were doomed at Hamburg because of the weakness of the lower board players. One revealing statistic is this: Marshall, with a final score of 12 1/2-4 1/2, and Kashdan, with 14-3, together scored 26 1/2, well over half of the team’s total 41 1/2 points.

In the Marshall Chess Club’s archives are several of Marshall’s Olympiad scoresheets. On one of them, dated July 26, 1930, against a Czech master he first met at Prague 1908, Marshall penciled in a comment in large letters: “Swindle.”


That White is lost is clear and there are several ways for Black to avoid perpetual check and win. Among them is 47... Bf5 48 Kh3 Bf4+ 49 Kg2 Qe2+ as Marshall pointed out (50 Rf2 Be4+ 51 Kg1 Qe1+ 52 Rf1 Q×e3+ 53 Rf2 h5 and so on).

47... Bf5 48 Rf3 Qe2+ 49 Kg1 Be4??

With 49... Qe1+ Black is still winning. Treybal’s move is a colossal blunder.
50 Q x g7+1 Resigns

Despite strokes of luck such as this, the Americans' chances for a medal died after a 0-4 shutout at the hands of the Austrians in the twelfth round. Apart from the first two boards, the rest of the United States team only scored 15-19. Marshall had to watch from the spectator seats as Poland edged out Hungary for the gold medals.

Prague 1931

After false starts at London and the Hague, FIDE had found a format for its Tournament of Nations, and Hamburg would be the model for future Olympiads. The next tournament, held at a Prague cafe, the U Novaku, was bigger—with up to 800 spectators a day—and stronger—with the addition of such players as Yefim Bogolyubov, in his only Olympiad. But otherwise the tournament was organized along the Hamburg lines.

The age difference among the Americans was clear on Marshall's second team. Marshall played the role of avuncular elder statesmen, introducing his young charges to the European elite. Kashdan, the first board, was already something of a veteran, as was Herman Steiner, the team reserve player. But third board Arthur Dale and fourth board Israel "Al" Horowitz, both younger than Marshall's son Frankie, were not.

Dale, described by Marshall in his notes as "lively, happy, a real Westerner," had flourished at the Marshall Chess Club after arriving from Oregon the previous year. The young merchant seaman had won the Club's championship just a few months before the players sailed for Europe aboard the S.S. Milwaukee. On the crossing, the four younger men played chess constantly, while Marshall adopted the role of kindly uncle, looking over their shoulders. Recalling the trip 61 years later, Dale said he stayed with the Marshalls "from the boat, train and hotel. I just being 21 years old, they took care of me."

Marshall played his best chess in Prague, overcoming some opponents with power and some with guile. Typical was his victory over the former Italian champion.

196. Queen's Gambit Declined, Ragozin Defense
Monticelli-Marshal, Prague 1931

1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 e6 3 c4 d5 4 Nc3 Bb4 5 Qb3 c5 6 a3 Bxc3+ 7 bxc3 0-0 8 Bg5 cxd4 9 cxd4 Ne6 10 cxd4 cxd4 11 Bxf6 gxf6 12 Qc3?! Bf5 13 c3 Re8

(see diagram)

Again the "American Defense" has given Black a queenside initiative, but at the cost of doubled pawns. Now 14 Bd3? Nc5 loses.

14 Nd2 Na5 15 Qb4 Rc2 16 Bb5 Qb6! 17 Nf3 Rfc8 18 0-0 a6 19 Ba4 Rb2

Despite the bad pawns Black has a big advantage in the endgame after 20 Q x b6 R x b6 21 Rfc1 Rc4. Now it turns out that White's bishop is the "bad" one because it has no squares.

20 Qe7 Qe6 21 Q x e6 B x e6! 22 h3? b5 23 Bd1 Rc3! 24 Nh4 Ne4 25 a4 b4 26 Bg4 h5 27 Bf3 Rd2! White resigns

There was no defense to ... b2 and ... Na3.

The highly touted Hungarians were odd in out of contention at Prague and finished only tenth. The race for medals was fought by other teams from Central and Eastern Europe (Czechoslovakia, Germany, Poland, Yugoslavia, Latvia and Austria) plus two outsiders, the Swedes and the Americans.

The difference for the United States between Hamburg and Prague was obvious on the lower boards. Horowitz scored just under 70 percent and Steiner was just over it. Marshall's 7 wins, 6 draws and 3 losses tied him for fourth best player on second board. The Americans were thus stronger at the top and on the bottom. They were, however, mired in a tie for fourth place with three rounds to go, having lost 3 matches and drawn 3 others in the first 14 rounds. But the United States then rolled through the final three matches.

Prague 1931 was decided in the final round. On the eve, the United States led with 46 points, with Poland close behind at 45 and Yugoslavia nearby at 44. An American match victory, or draw, would guarantee the first U.S. gold medals in an Olympiad.

But when the adjournment bell was rung ending the first session of
play, the outlook was grim. The Poles led 1½–½: Kashdan had been splendidly outplayed by Rubinstein, while Marshall had drawn with Tartakower in a king-and-pawn endgame in which both sides promoted to queens.

In the two adjourned games Dawid Przepiórka stood clearly better against Horowitz and if he had won, the Poles would have clinched first place. But the 23-year-old Horowitz, who played the last four rounds with his arm in a sling after breaking his collarbone in a car accident, somehow managed to pull a win out of a loss. Steiner’s draw with Kazimierz Makarczyk sealed the draw and the first place finish for the Americans.

At the awards banquet in honor of the American team Marshall made a brief speech accepting the Hamilton-Russell trophy, the large gold cup that each winning team took possession of until the next Olympiad. It was a speech he would get used to making and he thoroughly enjoyed making it. As Marshall put it later in My Fifty Years, “There are few sensations so satisfying as the feeling of cooperation towards a common goal against able opponents.”

Folkestone 1933

The Olympiads had settled into a biennial pattern and the next one, in 1933, was originally planned for Chicago, to coincide with the Century of Progress Exposition. But after refusing several requests for information, the Chicago organizers finally acknowledged that they couldn’t carry the project off, and FIDE turned to England as host of last resort. Because of the late notice and other problems, only 15 national teams showed up at Folkestone, a fishing village with its own 500-foot cliffsides to rival nearby Dover’s.

Two newcomers, both only 18, were aboard the S.S. Champlain as it brought the defending champion American team across the Atlantic. One was Reuben Fine, the other Albert Simonson. Fine had first visited the Marshall Chess Club two years before in a high school match. He later recalled the night:

Toward the end of the evening, a dignified gentleman with an old-fashioned lavalier tie came in and followed the games with great interest. Afterward he joined in the post-mortems and showed us moves that we had never dreamed of. I was amazed to discover the friendly kibitzer was the great Marshall.

In the two years since then Fine had become a Marshall Chess Club fanatic, playing thousands of casual games and earning a reputation as the equal of Dake, whom he beat in a match. Simonson was more of a stranger to

Marshall, having learned his chess mainly at the Manhattan Chess Club. He was an astute tactician who would make his name in 1936 when, as the darkest of horses, he nearly won the first U.S. Championship tournament.

Aboard the Champlain Marshall proceeded to play a trick on the newcomers. He told Fine and Simonson that he was so skilled at exhibitions that he could even play them simultaneously—and score at least 1–1. In fact, Marshall let on, he was willing to back up this claim with money.

The teenagers readily accepted the bet and set up the boards in separate rooms, Fine taking White in one and Simonson Black in another. Arthur Dake acted as messenger, relaying each player’s move to Marshall, and returning with the champion’s reply.

But they weren’t Marshall’s moves, they were each other’s! Marshall, in his notes, recalled how he heard “many years ago” of how a “chess tyro” from Boston named William Miller had arranged such a phony simul. As long as neither of his opponents saw the other board, he could simply have Dake bring Fine’s moves to Simonson, and then bring the Black reply from Simonson to Fine. This guaranteed either 2 draws or a win and a loss. Marshall won the bet, returned the money and everyone involved had a good laugh.

After they arrived at Folkestone, the Americans had a strong start. Kashdan’s eventual score on first board, over 70 percent, was particularly impressive. Marshall, again on second board, managed to go undefeated—but not without some of the Marshall luck:

197. Falkbeer Countergambit
Stoltz-Marshall, Folkestone 1933

1 e4 c5 2 f4 d5 3 e×d5 e4 4 d4

A questionable line that should be met by 4... Nf6 5 e5 c6! Marshall transposes into more familiar lines.

4 ... e×d3 5 Q×d3!? Nf6 6 Ne3 Be5 7 Bd2 0–0 8 0–0–0 Nbd7 9 g3!

An excellent means of developing the kingside at the cost of his extra pawn.

9 ... Nb6 10 Bg2 Bg4 11 Ne3 Nb×d5 12 h3 N×c3 13 Q×c3 B×f3 14 B×f3 Qd6 15 Qb3 Re8

Marshall is trying to tempt his opponent into opening the b-file but he is being outplayed.

16 Bc3 Qf8 17 Be5! Bb6 18 B×b7!
There is nothing much to be had in 18 B×f6 g×f6 because of the many dark-squared weaknesses in White's camp. However 18 g×f4 and 19 g×f5 would have been much stronger than the pawn grab. Now Marshall has his window of opportunity and before it closes he coaxes a blunder out of his experienced opponent.

18 ... Rab8 19 Qf3 Qb4 20 Rd3?

![Diagram](image)

After 20 Rd3

If he had inserted 20 Bc6 Re6 first, then 21 Rd3 would have consolidated. But now 20 ... Rxh7 21 Q×h7 Be3+ costs him his queen.

20 ... Rxh7 21 Rh3 Qe4! 22 Qd1 Re4+ 23 Kh1 Rxh3 24 a×b3 Bb6 25 g4 Qd5 26 Qf1 Ne4 27 Bc3 Ng3 White resigns

In the seventh round the United States crushed Britain 3–1 and Marshall scored another victory over Sir George Thomas who otherwise had a great tournament. The Englishman won 8 games at Folkestone, drew 9 and lost only the following [a bit of revenge for Marshall who had been crushed in 23 moves by Thomas at Hamburg]:

198. Queen's Gambit Declined, Exchange Variation

**Marshall–Thomas, Folkestone 1933**

1 Nf3 Nf6 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 d5 4 d4 c6 5 Bg5 Nbd7 6 e×d5 exd5 7 e3 Be7 8 Qe2 h6 9 Bh4 0–0 10 h3 Re8 11 Bd3 Nf8 12 0–0–0

Queenside castling is a declaration that White is playing for blood. The insertion of ... h7–h5 and Bh4 allows White an opportunity to try to open the g-file. He should probably have played 13 g×h5 immediately, according to Fine.

12 ... Bd6 13 Ne5 Qc7 14 g4 Nbd7 15 Nx d7 B×d7 16 B×d6 Q×d6 17 Kh1 Re7 18 Rhg1 Rae8 19 h4 Kh8 20 Qc2 Ng6

Black has defended well and even threatens to win a questionable pawn or fork queen and bishop at f4. Thomas makes a courageous decision.

21 Be2 N×h4? 22 g5 Bf5 23 g×h6 B×e2+ 24 Q×e2 g×f6! 25 Rh1 Nf5 26 Rd1 Qf6 27 Ne2 Kh7 28 Nf4 Re4 29 Qd3 Kh8??

The king stood perfectly well on h7 and, in fact, Black could safely have played 29 ... N×d4 here because 30 Qe3 is met by 30 ... Qf5 31 Nd3 Ne6.

30 a3 N×d4? 31 Qe3 Qf5 32 Nd3 e5

White can grab the piece safely (33 e×d4 c4 34 Nc1) but he can play better with ... 33 ... e4 34 N×e4 d3 35 Qg7 mate

The United States had lost only one match to the Stahlberg–Stoltz Swedes, and drew one match, to Denmark, before the final day. They led second-place Czechoslovakia by 2½ points, and since they were paired with the Czechs, all Marshall's men needed was one point out of four in the last round. It appeared this time the Americans would not have to hold their breath.

But it wasn't going to be easy. Salo Flohr played a brilliant game against Kashdan but blundered in a winning position on the twenty-eighth move. Flohr had two winning queen checks, but picked a third move which simply lost the Exchange. Kashdan, however, completely overlooked the resource and was forced to resign two moves later.

The second Czech point came when Simonson was beaten by Karel Opočensky, who thereby won his fourth board prize with a score of 11½–1½. Since Fine could manage no more than a draw with Josef Rejšák, that left the match score 2½–½ in the Czechs' favor. Of the 402 games played at Folkestone, Marshall's game with Karel Trebyal was about the last one to finish. A Treybal win would have given the Czech team first place.

199. Marshall–Treybal, Folkestone 1933

(see diagram)

The position bears some resemblance to the players' middlegame from Prague, except that in that clash White kept queens on the board and Black responded to g2–g4 with ... g7–g6, allowing the opening of the g-file.

Here it is Black's ability to create a passed queenside pawn with ... b5–b4 that gives him an edge. Now 27 ... g6 is the kind of move that looks wrong on principle ("bad bishop") but right in terms of safety. Perhaps remembering what had happened at Prague, Treybal played 27 ... Kf7?! and after 28 Rf1 Marshall suddenly began to play for a win. There followed:
28 ... b4 29 a×b4 a×b4 30 g4! Kg8

Black realized by now that 30 ... g6 was too late because of 31 e4! (31 ... h×c3 32 R×b7+ and 33 g×f5 or 31 ... d×e4 32 B×e4 Rb5 33 R×b4 R×b4 34 c×b4 R×b4 35 d5). 31 g×f5 Bd7 32 c6 Bc6 33 c×b4 R×b4 34 R×b4 R×b4 35 Ra1!

And Black was lost, e.g., 35 ... Rb2 36 Ra6! Bb7 37 e7 Kf7 38 Re6 Ke8 39 Ba4+ or 36 ... R×c2 37 R×c6 Kf8 38 Re8+ Ke7 39 Rc7+ Kf8 40 Rf7+ Kg8 41 Rd7+ Kf8 42 R×d5 and wins.

The game actually ended with 35 ... Kf8 36 Ra6 Be8 37 e4! Rb5 38 Ra8 Kc7 39 R×c8+ K×c8 40 Ba4 and the Americans took the gold medals again.

On his way home aboard the M.S. *Ile de France*, Marshall received a congratulatory letter from New York Mayor John P. O’Brien, saying it was “particularly gratifying to know” that all five members of the team were New Yorkers. With a score of 4 wins and 6 draws, Marshall was one of the few undefeated players at Folkestone, and for the first time he brought home a board prize for best score on second board.

**Warsaw 1935**

There was no Isaac Kashdan on the United States team in 1935 and the rapidly improving Sammy Reshevsky was playing elsewhere in Europe. But Reuben Fine made a good first board ahead of Marshall and Abe Kupchik was capable on third. Best of all were Dake and Horowitz, who won the prizes for best scores on their lower boards. Not only was this another all-New York team but four of the five players were regulars of the Marshall Chess Club.

Marshall took his role as captain seriously. One day at Warsaw the United States had defeated Denmark in the morning and sat down to play the Austrians in the afternoon. Marshall recalled in his notes how he left the playing hall during his game with Ernst Grünfeld:

“What was my surprise when I returned and found three of our tables empty. I could not understand it as we had played less than an hour. I was told they had all drawn and gone. My opponent asked me for a draw, which I refused time and again.” Here’s the game:

**200. Queen’s Gambit Accepted**

**Marshall–Grünfeld, Warsaw 1935**

1 d4 d5 2 c4 d×c4 3 e3 Nf6 4 B×c4 e6 5 Nc3 c5 6 Nf3 a6 7 a4 Ne6 8 0–0 Be7 9 Qc2 c×d4 10 Rd1 d3

Returning the pawn to slightly disorient White’s pieces and prevent White from retaking on d4 with a pawn. Today 10 ... 0–0 11 e×d4 Nd5 is regarded as best.

11 B×d3 Qc7 12 e4 Ng4 13 h3 Nge5 14 N×e5 N×e5 15 Bf4 Bd6 16 Bb5+

Forcing a king move, since 16 ... a×b5 17 N×b5 Q×c4 moves 18 N×d6+ is horrible.

16 ... Ke7 17 Ra1 Qb8 18 Bg3?

After 18 Bg3

Missing the brilliancy-prize idea of 18 R×d6 Q×d6 19 Rd1 Qb8 20 Nd5+ e×d5 21 e×d5 f6 22 d6+ and now 22 ... Ke6 23 Bc4+ Kd7 24 B×e5 f×e5 25 Q×e5 Re8 26 Q×g7+ Ke6 27 Bd5+ and mates.

18 ... f6 19 Bd3 Bd7 20 Bbl g5 21 Rd2 Be6 22 Rd1 Bb4 23 Ba2 Qc7 24 Rc2 Rad8 25 R×d8 Q×d8 26 B×e5 f×e5 27 Nd5+ e×d5 28 e×d5 Bd7 29 Q×e5+ Kf8 30 Rc7 Re8 31 Qf3+?

And here 31 d6+ Kg6 32 Bb1+ Kh6 33 R×d7! would have won faster. Marshall later wrote that this game *should* have been the best he ever played.
31 ... Ke7 32 Qe6+ Kf8 33 Rx7 Rx6 34 Rx8+ Re8
35 Rx8+ Kx8 36 Kf1

And Black resigned the hopeless endgame after a few more moves.

Marshall added in his notes: "That evening as captain of the team I spoke to each of our team separately and told them draws do not win games or matches. They all promised to play every game to a finish next time and I was happy for they kept their word."

The United States suffered a heavy 1-3 loss to Hungary in the first week when Marshall was destroyed by Andor Lilienthal. After they lost the next day to 1½-2½ Gösta Stoltz of Sweden, Marshall and his fellow Americans were low in spirits. But they began to have easier games, including, for the first time in a while, a quick Marshall victory against the Cambridge Springs Defense.

201. Queen's Gambit Declined, Cambridge Springs Defense


1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Bg5 Nbd7 5 e3 c6 6 Nf3 Qa5 7 Bx7

This capture—if played at move 7 rather than later—eliminates much of the tactical danger from ... Ne4 and reduces Black's chances for ... e6-e5.

7 ... Nxc2 8 Bd3 Bb4 9 Qc2 0-0

The easiest way to develop Black's pieces is 9 ... e5 and if 10 0-0, then 10 ... dxc4 11 Bxc4 cxd4 12 cxd4 Bx6 and a queenside fianchetto. The failure to advance his c-pawn now lets Black a cramped game.

10 0-0 dxc4 11 Bxc4 b6 12 Ne5 Bb7 13 Ne4! Bc7 14 Ng5 h6?

It was difficult to stop White's intended combination in any case.

The Gold Medal

15 Ngx7 Rxe7 16 Bx6 Rf8 17 Nxf7 Rx7 18 Qb3 Nd5
19 Bxf7+ Resigns

Considering their rocky start, several of the European masters thought the two-time defending champions could not repeat at Warsaw. "There are many explanations of how we won," Marshall wrote. "Spielmann thought the difference between the Americans and the Europeans was that the Europeans studied first the man, the positions, and what not, and then moved. The Americans first make their move and then studied the man and the position."

This straight-ahead approach won Marshall many short games in his five Olympiads, including this miniature against the French player who had the second-best record on second board at Folkestone.

202. Colle System

Betsdler–Marshall, Warsaw 1935

1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 e6 3 e4 e5 4 Bg5 Nc6 5 c3 d5 6 Nbd2 Bd6 7 0-0 0-0
8 dxe5 Bxe5 9 c4 dxe4 10 Nxe4 Be7 11 Qe2 e5 12 Nxf6+ Bxf6
13 Qe4 g6 14 Bh6?? Bf5! Resigns

Marshall's spirits revived in the later rounds at Warsaw. In his notes he wrote: "I found the strain rather severe for already in the middle of August the cruel rain and cold weather told on me and at the finish I was laid up with a severe cold. . . . Caroline helped . . . and is quite a nurse as well as having been secretary of the Marshall Chess Club for 20 years. Chess can never repay her."

Carrie, who also had a celebrated temper, was on the minds of several players. Dake, who called her his "surrogate mother," recalled, in 1992, how he and Horowitz spent a night on the town, "Al and I met two gals and we were with them all night. Al said, 'If we don't win our games today, we both will be in serious trouble—with Mrs. Marshall.'"

But they weren't in trouble, they were the stars of the team. In most international team events, every good team has a strong first-board player and a capable second-board. But the medal contenders also have strength on the lower boards. It was not unusual to see the winning teams in the early Olympiads have a fifth board who scored close to 90 percent. At Warsaw it was Dake and Horowitz who provided much of the U.S. strength and they both won their board prizes, with scintillating 86 and 80 percent scores.

Late in the tournament, the United States handed Poland—with
Rubinstein, Tartakower and a young Moishe (later Miguel) Najdorf—it is first loss. The Americans were still chasing Sweden when Marshall had this game against Rumania.

203. Nimzoindian Defense, Sämisch Variation  

1 d4 Nf6 2 c4 e6 3 Ne3 Bb4 4 a3 B×c3+ 5 b×c3 c5 6 e3 0–0 7 Bd3 d5

Relaxing the positional demands on White since he can now dissolve his double pawn at any time. More in keeping with the spirit of the opening is 7 ... d6 8 Ne2 e5.

8 Ne2?! Nc6 9 0–0 d×c4 10 B×c4 e5

This position, with the White knight at f3, is perhaps the best-known in Nimzoindian theory. With a knight on e2, however, Black achieves easy equality with 10 ... e5 and creates queenside targets.

11 Qc2 e×d4 12 e×d4 e×d4 13 Rdl Bg4 14 e×d4 Re8 15 Qa4 Nbd5
16 Bb2?

![Diagram after 16 Bb2]

A blunder that is instantly punished by the hardest move to anticipate—a retreat.

16 ... Nb6 17 Qc2 Ne7? 18 Qe4 Nx×c4 19 Q×g4 N×b2 20 Rdb1 Ne4 21 R×b7 Rc7

There is scant compensation for the lost White piece and Marshall soon finds a way of trading queens to seal the point.

22 R×c7 Q×c7 23 Rcl Nd5 24 Ng3 g6 25 h4 Ne5! 26 R×c7 N×g4
27 R×a7 Rd8

Black won on the fortieth move.

The front-running Swedes collapsed at tournament’s end, losing to Poland and Yugoslavia. All the Americans had to do in the last round was avoid a disaster against the British Chess Federation team. Fine had recovered well from a bad first half of the tournament, and the "boys" were playing splendidly. So Marshall sat the final match out. The Americans won 2½–1½ and again clinched the gold medals.

On the way home, aboard the S.S. Pilsudski, Frank and Carrie played cupid, encouraging Dake in his blossoming courtship of a woman passenger, Helen Girard. A few months later, in November, the Marshalls attended Dake’s marriage at New York’s Municipal building, with Carrie as matron of honor. Their wedding party was held at the Marshall Chess Club, where the Hamilton-Russell trophy now occupied a prominent and seemingly permanent place.

Stockholm 1937

The National Chess Federation, which represented the United States in FIDE, decided not to accept Nazi Germany’s invitation to participate in a non-FIDE Olympiad at Munich, nor in the Eighth Olympiad at Buenos Aires 1939. So, Marshall’s final appearance in the team tournament came in August 1937 when, bearing the N.C.F.’s gold-stamped credentials, he arrived at the Grand Hotel Royal in the Swedish capital of Stockholm.

The by-now former U.S. Champion celebrated his sixtieth birthday during the tournament, which saw the torch passed to a new generation of Paul Keres, Laszlo Szabo and Samuel Reshevsky. There were so many new faces that as Marshall first entered the hotel playing hall he exclaimed, "Oh, I don’t see anyone here I know!"

Marshall played fourth board behind Reshevsky, Fine and Kashdan and was clearly tired. The time limit may have contributed to this since it had been speeded up to 50 moves in 2½ hours compared with the 36 in two of previous events. Marshall eventually sat out eight matches, including key ones against Hungary and Latvia—which the United States drew—and two of the final three rounds. Yet Marshall finished the tournament undefeated and provided some valuable points.

204. Queen’s Indian Defense  
Marshall–O. Larsen, Stockholm 1937

1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 b6 3 g3 Bb7 4 Bg2 e6 5 0–0 Be7 6 c4 c5? 7 d5! c×d5
8 Nh4
A fine temporary sacrifice which shows Black has fianchettoed the wrong bishop.

8 ... Qe8 9 c×d5 d6 10 e4 0-0 11 Nf5 Re8 12 Nc3 Bf8 13 Bg5 a6? 14 B×f6 g×f6 15 Bh3

After this it becomes extremely difficult for Black to defend both h7 and f7.

15 ... Qd8 16 Qe4+ Kh8 17 Qh5 Qc7 18 Nh6 B×h6 19 Q×h6 Nd7 20 f4 Rg8 21 B×d7! Q×d7 22 Q×f6+ Rg7 23 f5! Re8 24 Rae1 Re5 25 Ne2!

Now 25 ... R×e4 26 Nf4 and the knight can be stopped from the decisive 27 Nh5 only by surrendering the Exchange.

25 ... Kg8 26 Nf4 h6 27 Nh5 Rh7

After 27 ... Rh7

28 Q×e5! Resigns

Because of 29 Nf6+.

The addition of Reshevsky, then one of the world's top ten players, and the return of Kashdan to what was a fairly impressive defending champion team should have discouraged any strong competition for the top medals. Kashdan rolled up an 87.5 percent score on third board and Horowitz was just below at 86.7 percent. Only three teams managed as much as a draw with the U.S. squad, and the Americans took first prize by 6 points. No team would win an Olympiad by such a margin until the Soviets in 1954.

Marshall's final game in an Olympiad came when Kashdan sat out on the last day of the tournament and Frank was moved up to third board against Scotland. The Americans had already clinched first prize and Marshall proceeded to have some fun.

205. Falkbeer Countergambit

Reid-Marshall, Stockholm 1937

1 e4 e5 2 f4 d5 3 Nc3?! d4 4 Nc2 Nc6 5 d3

White's curious way of refusing the gambit occurred this same year in Milner-Barry-Keres, Margate 1937, and ended in Black's favor after 5 Nf3 B×d6 6 f×e5 B×e5 7 d3 Bg4 8 Qd2 B×f3 9 g×f3 Qh4+ 10 Kd1 f5! Marshall's Scottish opponent mistakenly believed he could grab a pawn.

5 ... Bd6 6 f×e5 N×e5 7 N×d4? Bb4+ 8 c3 Q×d4 9 c×b4 Bg4 10 Nf3 Q×b4+ 11 Bd2 Q×b2 12 Be2 B×f3 13 g×f3 0-0-0 14 Bd4

As bad as things are for White, Marshall makes them worse.

14 ... N×d3+ 15 B×d3 R×d3 16 Q×d3 Q×a1+ 17 Kf2 Qb2+ 18 Kg3 Nf6 19 Rb1 Nh5+ 20 Kg4 N×f4 21 K×f4 Q×h2+ White resigns

Marshall's final score was 3 wins and 7 draws, bringing his total Olympiad record to 30 victories, 27 draws and 8 losses in 65 games, a 67 percent winning achievement.

At the final banquet, August 15, at the Grand Royal's banquet hall, Carrie received a bouquet. It was her fifteenth birthday. The president of FIDE, Alexander Rube, presented Frank with the Hamilton-Russell trophy one more time and Marshall made his customary short but well-received acceptance speech. It was his last European appearance: The next Olympiad occurred during the opening weeks of World War II. The United States would not play in another Olympiad for more than 20 years—and would not come close to the great gold medal teams of the 1930s.
Chapter Eighteen

Sunset

Frank Marshall lived for seven years after the Stockholm Olympiad of 1937, much of it influenced by an event of the previous decade, the stock market crash of 1929. Between September 1929, back when Marshall was with Nardus in Tunis, and mid-November, more than half of the value of stocks on the New York Stock Exchange—$50 billion of $80 billion—had vanished. With it went much of the wealth that had sponsored American chess and subsidized professionals like Frank Marshall.

For the Marshalls, the immediate economic fallout was minimal. Frank and Carrie celebrated their silver anniversary quietly at home on January 6, 1930. Frankie was 24 and having difficulty finding a career, but otherwise home life was happy. Marshall considered himself in relative retirement and he had little competitive chess on his calendar for 1930, besides Met League matches and a summer trip to Europe as part of his first Olympiad team, at Hamburg 1930.

To the Hamburg trip Marshall added a visit to Liège, Belgium, where he’d been invited to a minor international tournament beginning three weeks after the Olympiad. There he continued to have success against the oldtimers. He won a quick game from Nimzovich, who had looked so sharp against him at New York 1927 but also so unprepared in his losses to Marshall at Marienbad, London and Bad Kissingen.

206. Queens Indian Defense

Marshall—Nimzovich, Liège 1930

1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 b6 3 e3 Bb7 4 Bd3 c5 5 0–0 c6 6 c4 B×f3?! 7 Q×f3 Nc6

This effectively breaks up the White center but at some cost. White retains pawn control of d4 and, together with the two bishops, this gives him the advantage.

8 d×c5! B×c5 9 Nc3 0–0 10 Rdl Qe7 11 b3 Ne5? 12 Qg3 Nh5 13 Nb5! Qb8 14 Qh4 g6 15 Be2 Ng7 16 Bb2 f5

An ugly defensive move but Black was concerned about Qf6. Marshall now forces his rook decisively to the seventh rank.

17 b4! B×b4 18 f4 Nf7 19 R×d7 g5

Otherwise White wins immediately with 20 Qf6.

20 f×g5 Bc5 21 Nc7 B×e3+ 22 Kh1 e5 23 B×e1 B×c1 24 R×c1

Besides the minor threat of 25 N×a8 White has 25 g6 and 26 Qf6.

24 . . . Nh8 25 c5! Resigns

Nimzovich conceded in view of the impending bishop check. When Marshall included this in My Fifty Games he glossed over the fact that he had missed the kind of combination that a younger Marshall rarely failed to find. “It is astonishing to find Marshall missing a sound sacrifice,” wrote the British Chess Magazine, pointing out the immediately decisive 20 Q×g5! N×g5 22 R×g7+ Kh8 23 R×g5+.

Another member of the older generation that Marshall had learned to deal with was Akiba Rubinstein, who was five years his junior. At Liège Marshall won a virtual miniature against Rubinstein who could have resigned at move 17 but played on until well into the endgame.

207. Queen’s Gambit Accepted

Marshall—Rubinstein, Liège 1930

1 d4 d5 2 c4 d×c4

Marshall revealed a lifelong prejudice with his terse comment about Black’s second move in his notes: “Bad.”
The Marshall Chess Club was in a bind, since virtually all its income came from membership fees—and members were dropping out. Carrie, as club secretary, wrote members in February about the club's financial woes: “The Championship Tournament is ended, and we wish to distribute the prizes—and as the funds of the Club are insufficient to meet this obligation, and other activities during the year, we have no other resource but to ask our members to subscribe to a fund for these purposes . . .”

There was also the problem with the West 12th Street building. In the introduction to an undistinguished game collection (Comparative Chess, 1932), Marshall wrote:

The Marshall Chess Club has become one of the ranking clubs of the world. For the past nine years it has occupied quarters in West 12th Street, New York City. Its membership had come to regard it as permanent as the Statue of Liberty.

Then one day the news came that the house had been sold. We were at a loss with regard to our future.

Although the members had regarded the West 12th Street quarters as their home for the foreseeable future, the Marshall C.C. owed its residence to the corporation that had bought it in 1922. Once the building’s cash-starved owners decided to sell it in 1931, the club became an instant orphan. It was a common problem for the rival Manhattan Chess Club, which had at least eight different locations over only 54 years, but a new one for the Marshall.

The club was rescued by another wealthy patron, Gustavus Adolphus Pfeiffer, who almost singlehandedly bought a new club quarters, at 23 West 10th Street. A new corporation, whose officers were also the officers of the Marshall C.C., was created to take ownership of the four-story ivy-covered brownstone, built in 1832.

The building, on a trellised block where Mark Twain once lived, was perfect for the club. The two upper floors provided apartments that were quickly rented out and thereby generated revenue to supplement the club’s dues. The two lower floors, which included a kitchen, dumbwaiter and outdoor garden, belonged to the club—except for a small groundfloor apartment for Frank and Carrie. The financial arrangements were handled so quickly that the board of governors held a housewarming for the new quarters on December 19, 1931, attended by several dozen players led by José Capablanca.

According to Arnold Denker, then a 17-year-old scholastic champion, the financial rescue of the club was largely due to Mrs. Marshall. “Without
Carrie, Frank was a lost soul," Denker recalled in 1992. "Frank performed exactly as Carrie wanted him to. If she told him to play up to someone, he followed her rule religiously. That is how she got Gus Pfeiffer to buy them the building they now own for $90,000."

Money also played a role in another controversy, this time over Marshall’s title. It did not take a grandmaster to see that by 1928 Isaac Kashdan was Marshall’s equal as a player. So, a year later, was Sammy Reshevsky, the former Polish prodigy then living in the Midwest. Yet neither of them raised a challenge to Marshall for the U.S. Championship, nor did Reuben Fine or Arthur Dake or Al Horowitz or Albert Simonson or any of the era’s rapidly improving youngsters.

The problem was the rules governing a title match. Back in 1906, when asked about the U.S. Championship, Marshall told Lasker’s Chess Magazine: “I want it, and I shall be glad if a national organization is formed on a proper basis as to frame rules governing contests for it.”

By the mid-1920s there was such an organization, Maurice Kuhn’s National Chess Federation. In 1926 the N.C.F. drew up a set of rules for title matches (item 676, Russell Collection):

The rules called for a match of 20 games, played at 40 moves in 2½ hours, the time limit of New York 1927. Another idea from that tournament also found itself in the N.C.F. rules. All draws offered had to be made through the director, rather than player to player. Also, "A player, having offered a draw which has been refused by his opponent, shall not repeat such offer." The rules even provided for each player to have a second—a very modern idea. And the second could even keep score for his man.

But the only rule that seemed to matter was this: "The champion will not be compelled to defend his title for a purse below five thousand dollars in addition to which sum, the traveling expenses both ways of both players, as well as their living expenses during the progress of the match, must also be provided for."

It stated: "Of the total amount of the purse the champion shall receive 20 percent as a fee. Of the remaining 80 percent, the winner shall receive 60 percent, the loser 40 percent." This meant that if he lost the match, Marshall would receive the minimum $1000 fee plus the loser’s share of the remaining $4000, or $1600.

The $5000 requirement, the same as that of the 1923 Lasker and proposed 1926 Torre match, had been a N.C.F. rule since 1926 and had seemed reasonable at the time. But the 1930s were not the 1920s. There were very few wealthy patrons willing to sponsor what was expected to be a one-sided victory for a young challenger.

Originally the N.C.F. planned a major tournament at Chicago in 1931 as a challenger’s tournament to determine Marshall’s opponent. But when it appeared that it would be impossible to raise the $5000 no matter who won the tournament, the N.C.F. replaced it with another New York master tournament and put the championship question on the back burner.

The tournament began April 18, 1931, at the Japanese Room of the Alamac Hotel, site of New York 1924. S.Turover and Julius Rosenwald, two frequent chess patrons, contributed to the meager budget. This was one of the tournaments to which world champion Alekhine refused his invitation by demanding a high fee if Capablanca also was invited. Eventually 12 players accepted, including Dake, Horowitz and Anthony Edward “Eddie” Santisierie, another Marshall protégé.

The title of U.S. Champion still commanded respect, and so Marshall received $200 as a “retainer.” The only other player to be so compensated was Capablanca, who though no longer world champion, was still the biggest name in American chess. Capa received $500.

In a few games Marshall showed indications that he was worth the money, as he did against Maurice Fox of Canada.

208. Bogolindian Defense
Marshall - Fox, New York 1931
1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 e6 3 c4 Bb4+ 4 Bd2 Qe7 5 Qc2 b6? 6 e4!

The chief aim of the Bogolindian, as it had been for the Nimzowindian and Queen’s Indian, was the discouraging this advance. Worse, Black is not ready to close the center with an immediate 7 . . . d6 and 8 . . . e5.

6 . . . B×d2+ 7 Nb×d2 d6 8 e5! d×e5 9 d×e5 Nfd7 10 Qe4! e6 11 Qg4 0-0 12 Bd3

Everything has gone White’s way since 6 e4 and he already threatens the ancient B×h7+ sacrifice.

12 . . . f5 13 e×f6 N×f6 14 Qh4 Qb4

This queen move looks irrelevant, but 15 B×h7+ N×h7 16 Q×e7 had been threatened.

15 0-0-0 Nbd7 16 Rxe1 Nc5 17 Bc2 Na4 18 Nb3!
(see diagram)

One of the most common kinds of oversight occurs when an opponent defends against a threat by creating one of his own. Black here fails to see that 18 Nb3 not only covered b2 but created a threat. But after 18 . . . h6 or 18 . . . Re8 White would have been winning with 19 Ne5.
l8 ... b5 19 a3! Qe7 20 B×h7+ Kh8 21 Ne5 Resigns

Capablanca won the tournament by 1½ points ahead of Kashdan. Marshall tied for 9-11th, a humiliating result. After New York 1931, Marshall continued to be invited to occasional American tournaments, such as Pasadena 1932, but consistently refused. Tournaments like those now belonged to the youngsters.

Marshall contented himself with exhibition tours, such as the one in early 1932 that took him to Canada and the Midwest as well as various cities in the East. He lost only about 15 games out of 370 played in the two-month period.

Hope rose in 1932 for a Marshall–Kashdan match to be held during the Century of Progress Exposition the following year in Chicago but it fell through. Frank did play Kashdan in the annual showdown with the Manhattan Chess Club, and despite losing in 41 moves, the Marshall team won the Met League title. The club repeated as champions again in 1933 for the third straight year. As usual, such successes were celebrated at the club’s annual dinner at the nearby Hotel Brevoort.

The Marshall club was a gathering place for the nation’s top young players at the time, almost all of whom lived in New York. The club’s host could still give them a good game, often after analyzing a new opening. A Marshall score sheet from a game [209] played at the club against Reshevsky and dated May 7, 1934, shows him gaining a big edge as White after 1 b4 e5 2 Bb2 c4 3 a3 f5 4 c4 Nf6 5 Nc3 Be7 6 d3 a5 7 b5 e×d3 8 e×d3 0–0 9 B×d3 d6 10 Qe2 Ng4 11 Nd5. It ended in a draw in 52 moves.

Marshall also managed to surprise the youngsters occasionally, as he did in the following “practice game,” described in his notes as being played in consultation with another club member after a lecture.

210. King’s Indian Defense

Fine–Marshall with “Miss Hoppe consulting,” Marshall C.C. 1933
1 c4 Nf6 2 Nf3 g6 3 b3 Bg7 4 Bb2 0–0 5 g3 b6 6 Bg2 Bb7 7 0–0 e5
8 d4 exd4 9 N×d4 B×g2 10 K×g2 d5 11 Nd2 Qd7 12 Rcl Ne6
13 N×e6 Q×e6 14 e×d5 Q×d5+ 15 Nf3 Qb7!

White’s conservative opening would lead to a small edge after 15 ... Q×d1
i6 Rf×d1 Rac8 17 Nd4. Fine now makes a curious decision.

16 B×f6? B×f6 17 Qd3 Rfd8 18 Qe3

Certainly 18 Qb5 would have made more sense than this.

18 ... Rd6 19 Rfd1 Rad8 20 R×d6 R×d6 21 Qf4 e5! 22 Qc4 e4
23 Qe8+?

A natural effort to reduce the tactical dangers but 23 Ne1 offered better
drawing chances.

23 ... Q×c8 24 R×c8+ Kg7 25 Ne1

After 25 Ne1

25 ... Rd2! 26 Rc2 Rd1! 27 Kf1 Be7 28 R×c4 a5! White resigns

There was no defense to 29 ... Bb4.

Marshall continued to write, or at least collaborate. Typical was Chess Step by Step, published in 1924 by E.P. Dutton. It was credited to Frank J. Marshall and J.C.H. Macbeth, who had written books such as Common Sense in Auction Bridge and Cryptography. A routine introductory text of 306 pages, Step by Step nevertheless went into five printings.

The issue of the U.S. Championship title wouldn’t go away. Kashdan formally challenged Marshall in October 1933. The club's Charles Kelley, on behalf of Marshall, insisted that Kashdan follow the N.C.F. rules by turning over a $250 deposit to a stakeholder. Kelley added that the club would put up $1000 of the eventual stake — provided the other $4000 was found elsewhere.

Marshall and Kashdan then met at the law offices of Harold Phillips, who was designated as chairman of the match organizing committee. They set a target date of January 1935 for the match’s start. Both players also signed an agreement with the N.C.F. permitting the Federation to hold championship tournaments after their match. But no one had any way of bypassing the $5000 requirement.

In November 1934 the Board of Directors of the N.C.F. went ahead anyway and voted unanimously to drop the $5000 rule. Further, if no match was held in the next year, 1935, the N.C.F. vowed to begin holding biennial championship tournaments with or without Marshall.

With pressure now building, Marshall decided to bow out gracefully. At the club’s annual dinner, April 27, 1935, he announced his impending retirement after 26 years as champion. He—or Carrie—had the presence of mind to profit from his announcement by selling the story of his retirement to the North American Newspaper Alliance, which printed it the following day. In his story, Marshall said that the first modern U.S. Championship Tournament would be held at the club in the fall of 1935 and that he would play in it.

He never did play in a U.S. championship tournament. When the first one began, April 25, 1936, the evening of the first round was devoted to a banquet in Marshall's honor. After that he limited himself to the role of tournament spectator, watching a thrilling race to choose his successor. Marshall club members Simonson, Fine, Dake and Horowitz chased but couldn’t catch Reshevsky, who overcame a bad start to take first prize. All told, 7 of the tournament’s 16 invitees were Marshall Chess Club members. Reshevsky received a revolving cup, the Frank J. Marshall Trophy, bought by Marshall C.C. members.

After relinquishing the title, Marshall went to San Juan in November 1936 for an eight-player international organized by the Puerto Rican Chess Federation. He finished third behind Kashdan and Adolf Seitz with 5–2. Among the games Marshall had intended for My Fifty Years but was not used was the following:

211. Queen’s Gambit Declined
Marshall–Prieto, Puerto Rico 1936

1 d4 d5 2 c4 c6 3 Ne3 Bb4 4 Nf3 Nf6 5 Bg5 Nbd7 6 c3 Bxc3+

This unprompted capture eases White’s game considerably. Better was 6 ... e5.

7 bxc3 0-0 8 cxd5 exd5 9 Bd3 Re8 10 Qc2 Nf8

"The well-known form of a good defense," Marshall wrote in his notes, adding that on Black’s next move he preferred 11 ... Ng6 or 11 ... Qd6.

11 0–0 b6? 12 c4! dxc4 13 Bxe4 Rb8 14 Bxc6 Bd7 15 Ne5!

Now 16 Bx7 followed by 17 Ne6 is one threat and 16 Bx6 is another. Black finds a way of keeping the game alive.

15 ... Re6 16 Bd5 Ba4 17 Qxa4 Qx.d5 18 Qa7 Qb7 19 Qxb7 Rxb7

Cashing the extra pawn seems a long and difficult task but Marshall solves the problem quickly.

20 Bxf6! Rxf6 21 d5! Ng6 22 Nc6 b5 23 Rb1 Rf5 24 a4 h5 25 a5! Resigns

Marshall continued to preside over the club as “honorary vice president,” greeting such occasional guests as Sinclair Lewis and golfer Bobby Jones, and giving lessons to men like Harry Guggenheim, of the mining firm Guggenheim Brothers. Marshall had met Guggenheim through his network of friends, such as club president Silas Howland, who was one of Guggenheim’s executives and had been partner in a law firm with former secretary of state Elihu Root.

Marshall, who had few really close friends among the masters, became a confidant of Howland and appeared deeply affected by his death. A fine amateur player, Howland nearly became the first president of the U.S. Chess Federation when it was being formed in August 1938. The USCF was created out of a merger between the American Chess Federation—which, as the “Western Chess Association,” had organized the Western Championships—and Maurice Kuhn’s N.C.F., which organized the Olympiad teams and the U.S. championship tournaments. As an architect of the merger Kuhns offered the new USCF presidency to Howland. He turned it down.

A few days later Howland and Marshall spent the late afternoon playing consultation chess in the Marshall Chess Club backyard garden.
against John B. Kelley, former club champion Bruno Forsberg, and Arthur Glass. It was Howland’s last game: The following day he died of a heart attack.

212. King’s Indian Defense
Kelly, Forsberg & Glass–Marshall & Howland, Consultation 1938
1 d4 Nf6 2 Nf3 g6 3 g3 Bg7 4 Bg5 0–0 5 Nb2 d5 6 c3 b6 7 Bg2 Bb7 8 0–0 d6 9 B×f6?

White’s fianchetto and Bg5 do not mix well and Black breaks the center now.

9 ... B×f6 10 e4 c×d4 11 N×d4 d5 12 f4 e5 13 f×e5 B×e5 14 e×d5 B×d4+! 15 c×d4 B×d5 16 B×d5 Q×d5 17 Rf4 Nc6
18 Rcl Rad8

The d-pawn is doomed (not 18 ... N×d4 19 Nb5) and in an effort to scare up compensation the White allies allow a decisive invasion.

19 Nf3 Rfe8 20 Qa4+ h5 21 Qa6 Nb4! 22 Qf6 Nd3! White resigns

Although the club championship had been regarded as a major master event since the mid-1920s, Frank steadfastly refused to enter it. Perhaps it was a matter of pride or fear that he might not win first prize. Or it may have been unwillingness to compete in an event designed for amateurs.

Whatever the reason, he had a change of heart in 1936 and entered for the first time. His opponent in the following was Fred Reinfeld, a New York State champion who was becoming the pre-eminent American chess book author. When, in 1935, no publishing house would take on the project, Reinfeld paid the costs of printing one of his first books, a belated tournament book for Marshall’s great triumph at Cambridge Springs 1904.

213. English Opening
1 c4 e5 2 Nc3 Nc6 3 g3 Ng6 4 Bg2 Bc5 5 ed 6 d4 Bb6 7 Nc2 Bg4 8 Bd7 8 d4 Bb6 9 a3 a5 10 b3 Qe8 11 Nd5!

Punishing positional play by White has reduced Black’s bishops to pawns. He now targets c7 and seizes up the wings.

11 ... N×d5 12 c×d5 Ne7 13 d×e5 d×e5 14 Bb2 f6 15 Rcl Nf5 16 e4 Nd6 17 a4! 0–0 18 Ba3 Qe8 19 g4!

Reuben Fine was far off the mark when he wrote: “Positional subtleties meant little to Frank; he cared for the acrobatics of the pieces.” Actually, Marshall’s strategic sense in closed positions had grown immeasurably since the war. Here, allowed time to consolidate with moves such as 0–0, Kh2, and Ng3, White will have his choice between winning on the queenside with Be5 or on the kingside with f2–f4.

19 ... f5 20 g×f5 g6 21 Rcl g×f5 22 Rg3+ Kh8 23 f4

With his king still on e1 White is safer than Black because of the unstoppable Bb2×e5+.

23 ... Rg8 24 Bb2 R×g3 25 N×g3 Qg6 26 B×e5+ Kg8 27 Qf3 f×e4 28 N×e4 N×e4 29 Q×e4

And since the endgame is quite lost, Black threw everything into a desperate mating effort.

29 ... Qg3+ 30 Kd2 Be3+ 31 Q×e3tt Q×g2+ 32 Kc3 Q×d5

On 32 Q×h1 White mates with 33 Qg5+ Kf8 34 Qg7+ Ke8 35 Qh8+ Ke7 36 Q×h7+ Ke8 37 Qh8+ Kd8 38 Qh6+ or 37 ... Ke7 38 d6+ c×d6 39 B×d6+ Kd8 40 Q×d8+

33 Qg3+ Kf8 34 Qg7+ Ke8 35 Qh8+ Ke7 36 Q×h7+ Ke8 37 Qh8+
Ke7 38 Qg7+ Ke8 39 Bf6 Qe6 40 Bh4! Qe3+ 41 Kb2 Qd2+ 42 Ka1 Resigns

A very impressive victory for a player relatively new to the strategy of 1 e4. Another curiosity that derives from this period in Marshall’s career concerns the following position.

Black to play


This appears in the 1975 book Finales de Dama (Con Peones) by Dr. R. Rey Ardil, as “N.N.-vs-Marshall, New York 1913.” The game allegedly ended with 1 ... Qf1+ 2 Kh1 Qg2 3 h3 Qe4 4 Qa3 g5+ 5 K×h3 Qe2+ 6 g4 Qe8 mate.

Actually, the position stems from a game played in 1937 against Sidney Bernstein, who remained a strong master long enough to face Bobby Fischer in U.S. championship tournaments. Marshall’s notes to it were scribbled on the back of his scoresheet. They give an indication of how he typically annotated a game (his comments have been converted to algebraic notation):

214b. Queen’s Indian Defense
S. Bernstein—Marshall, Marshall C.C. Championship 1937

1 d4 Nf6

“Of all the different ways of declining the Queen’s Opening, this or 1 ... e6 I consider best.”

2 c4 e6 3 Nf3 b6

“I prefer this to 3 ... Bb4+ 4 Bd2 B×d2+ 5 Q×d2 etc.”

4 g3 Bh7 5 Bg2 Be7 6 Nc3 Ne4 7 Qc2 N×c3 8 Q×e3

Sunset

“If 8 b×c3 Black dare not castle because of 9 Ng5. But White’s pawn position would be bad, especially for the ending.”

8 ... 0-0 9 0-0 c5 10 Rdl d5? 11 Ne5 Bf6 12 e3 Nc6 13 N×c6 B×e6 14 b3 Re8 15 Ba3 Re8 16 Rac1 c×d4 17 e×d4 d×e4 18 B×c6 R×c6 19 b×c4 Qc7

“If instead 19 ... b5, then 20 c5 follows. The text move is not as strong as 19 ... Qd7 at once.”

20 Qb3 Re8 21 d5 e×d5 22 c×d5 Rc3 23 d6

“Better appears 23 R×c3 Q×c3 24 Q×c3 R×c3 25 Bb2 etc.”

23 ... Qd7 24 Qb4 h6

“Not 24 ... a5 because of 25 Q×b6 R×a3 26 R×c8+ Q×c8 27 d7 Qd8 28 Q×d8+ B×d8 29 Re1 f6 30 Re8+ Kf7 31 R×d8 in White’s favor.”

25 R×c3 B×c3 26 Qe4 Bf6 27 Rel g6 28 Re2 Kg7 29 Kg2 a5 30 Re2 R×c2 31 Q×c2 Qb7+ 32 f3 Qd5 33 Qf2 Be5

“First ... b5 was stronger.”

34 Bb2! Q×d6 35 B×e5+ Q×e5 36 Q×b6 Qc3 37 Qb3 Qd2+ 38 Kh3?

“Kgl was safer.”

38 ... h5 39 f4 Qe2 40 Qc3+?

“White has no time to win pawns. At once Qd5 should have been played with good drawing chances.”

40 ... f6

And now the finish from the Rey Ardil book:

41 Q×a5 Qf1+ 42 Kh4 Qg2! 43 h3 Qe4! 44 Qa3 g5+! White resigns.

In the 1930s Marshall began to analyze his gambit in the Ruy Lopez once more, twenty years after his loss with it against Capablanca. He analyzed the attack at some length in Comparative Chess. Yet few of his own games survive. One of his last, played January 30, 1938, was against Jack Staley Battell, who became an editor at Horowitz’s Chess Review.


1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 Bb5 a6 4 Ba4 Nf6 5 0–0 Be7 6 Rel b5 7 Bb3 0–0 8 c3 d5 9 e×d5 N×d5 10 N×e5 N×e5 11 R×e5 c6
“In many of the games at this defense, I’ve played here instead ... Nf6 or even ... Bb5,” he wrote in his notes. Later in an article in Chess Review he suggested 12 g3 Bxd6 13 Re1—a position analyzed by Bobby Fischer in the 1960s—should be met by 13 ... Re8 14 d4 Bg4.

12 Bxd5 cxd5 13 Qf3?!

With 13 d4 and then 13 ... Bxd6 14 Re3 White has good defensive chances.

13 ... Bxd6 14 Re2? Qg5! 15 h3 Bf5 16 Re1

“If instead 16 Qxd5 Qe6 would follow,” was Marshall’s comment. The rest is one-sided, as White must give up the Exchange to stop Black’s bishop from occupying e4.

16 ... Rae8 17 Kf1 Be4 18 Rxe4 Rxe4 19 Na3 Qe5! 20 Nc2 Qh2 21 Ne3 Bf4 22 h3 Bxe3 23 fxe3 Re8 24 Kc2 Rxe6 25 d3 Rxe5 26 Bd2 Rg5 27 Be1 Rf6 28 Bg3 R×g3 White resigns.

Marshall’s simul tours had become briefer. Typical of the offers he received was a 1938 letter from William H. Steckel of the Allentown, Pennsylvania, Chess Club that offered him $25 for an exhibition and lecture plus a room at the local YMCA for the night and “your evening meal. It’s the best I can really do as things here are really deplorable.”

The Marshall club championship was a lengthy event, beginning with a preliminary tournament in the fall and a huge round robin in the late winter and spring. There were 17 players in the finals of the 1939-40 championship and Marshall’s score of 10-2-4 was good enough for third place behind Reuben Fine and Milton Hanauer.

Hanauer was one of the several young Marshallites who had attended elite Townsend Harris High School. They included Walter Goldwater and Milton Finkelstein, who eventually became the club’s presidents in the 1970s and 1980s. Another of the group was Eddie Santasierre, born six months after Cambridge Springs 1904. A musical prodigy and gifted amateur player, Santasierre became closely attached to Frank and Carrie, almost like an adopted son.

Marshall’s last master tournament was the 1940-41 club championship. He won a number of easy games against the lower rated players using openings he had been honing for years.

216. Sicilian Defense, Wing Gambit

Marshall–Sussman, Marshall C.C. Championship 1941

1 e4 c5 2 b4 cxb4 3 a3 d5 4 e×d5 Q×d5 5 Nf3 e5 6 a×b4 B×b4 7 e3 Be7

In My Fifty Years Marshall had analyzed 7 ... Bc5 8 Na3 e4 and concluded that 9 Nb5 was strong, e.g., 9 ... Kd8 10 Nf4 Nc6 11 Qa4 Qf6 12 B×a3. Better is 8 ... Nf6 9 Nb5 0-0 10 Nc7 B×f2+.

8 Na3 B×a3

Another game from this period, Marshall–Heinemann, Met League, March 1942, went 8 ... Bb7 9 Nc4 Nc6 10 Ne3 Qd6 11 B×b5 Nf6 12 b×a3 Q×d2 13 Re1 0-0 14 d4 e4 15 B×c6 and 16 Ne5 with excellent play.

9 B×a3 Nc6 10 Rbl Nf6? 11 Bc2 e4

This appears to help Black but his inability to castle quickly hurts. The only safe way for Black to defend was ... Nge7 and kingside castling.

12 Nd4! N×d4 13 c×d4 Bd7 14 0-0 Bc6 15 Qe1

Now on 15 ... 0-0-0 White begins work on the king with 16 B×c5 followed by B×a7, Qa3 or Bc4. He also has 16 d5 e×d3? 17 Bf3! in mind.

15 ... h5 16 d3 g5 17 d×e4 N×e4 18 Bc4 Qe5

After 18 ... Qf5

19 d5! B×d5 20 Rb5 Rd8 21 R×d5 R×d5 22 B×d5 Q×d5 23 Qe7 Resigns

Against Nat Halper, another young expert, Marshall had an opportunity to demonstrate what a swindle was. Having lost his queen as early as the eighth move, he created tactical chances out of thin air until Black was overwhelmed with threats. In his later years, according to Arnold Denker, Marshall would sometimes slip into a side room at the club for a quick whiskey when his opponent was thinking. After years of hard drinking he was now a better player “under the influence.”
217. Scotch Gambit

Marshall-Halper, Marshall C.C. Championship 1940-41

1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 d4 exd4 4 c3 dxc3 5 Bc4 d6 6 Qb3?

"Marshall is trying to paint the rose red," wrote Santasicere in the American Chess Bulletin. The queen ends up on a c3 precipice, whereas the simple 6 N×c3 offered good compensation.

6 ... Qd7 7 Q×c3? d5! 8 e×d5! Bb4 9 d×c6 B×c6+ 10 N×c3 b×c6!

White has better chances, even with only two pieces for the queen, than if he had allowed 8 ... d×c4. Now 10 ... Qc7+ and rapid queenside castling would have won quickly.

11 0-0 Nc7? 12 B×f7+! Kf8 13 Bb3 Bb7 14 Be3 Nf5 15 Bc5+ Nd6 16 Nd4 Re8 17 Rf1 h5 18 Ne6+ R×e6 19 B×c6 Qd8 20 Re5 Rh6 21 Rae1 Be8 22 Bb3 Bd7

After 22 ... Bd7

Suddenly White, with 23 Be3 and 24 Bg5!, is winning.

23 Be3! Nf5 24 B×h6 g×h6 25 Nc4 Kg7 26 Nc5 Kf6 27 N×d7+ Q×d7 28 Be6 Resigns

Marshall continued to be invited to each of the new biennial U.S. championship tournaments and he continued to decline. But for the last days of the third championship, in May 1940, he agreed to begin a short exhibition. As it turned out, Marshall's last serious competition was an echo of one of his most embarrassing from the past. His opponent was Emanuel Lasker. Unlike the disaster of 1907, however, Marshall quickly drew blood.

218. Queen's Gambit Declined

Marshall-Lasker, first exhibition match game, 1940

1 c4 e5 2 Nf3 Nf6 3 Nc3 d5 4 d4 Nbd7 5 Bg5 Be7 6 e3 0-0 7 Qc2 e5 8 c×d5 N×d5 9 B×c7 Q×c7 10 N×d5 e×d5 11 Bd3 g6 12 d×c5 N×c5 13 0-0

Accepting the isolated d-pawn was briefly popular around 1940, only to be succeeded by Tartakower's improved version of ... b6 inserted so that Black could have retaken with a pawn at move 12.

13 ... b6 14 Rac1 a5 15 Rfd1 Bb7 16 Nd4 Rfe8 17 Qe2 Qf6 18 h3 Re7 19 Re3 Rae8 20 Rdcl Qe5 21 a3 a4 22 Bb5!

After 22 Bb5

This wins at least a pawn, as Marshall showed in the following: 22 ... Nb3 23 R×c7 R×c7 24 R×c7 Q×c7 25 B×a4 N×d4 26 e×d4 Qc1+ 27 Bd1t.

22 ... Ra8 23 B×a4! R×a4 24 b4 Qe8

No better was 24 ... Nb3 25 R×c7 N×d4 26 Qd1t or 24 ... Ne6 25 R×c7 N×c7 26 Qe2. After 24 ... Qe8 White must avoid 25 b×e5 R×d4.

25 Qc2! Re7 26 b×c5 b×c5 27 R×c5 R×c5

And here he showed a cute alternative end of the story: 27 ... R×a3 28 Qb2 Qb4 29 Re8+! B×c8 30 R×c8+ Kg7 31 Nf5 mate!

28 f×e3 Q×e3+ 29 Qf2 Q×d4 30 Q×d4 R×d4 31 Ra5! Rc4 32 R×c4 d×c4 33 Re5 Ba6 34 a4 Resigns

After the second game, a Pirc Defense that was drawn in 39 moves, Lasker was too ill to continue. The exhibition concluded 1½-½ in Marshall's favor. Eight months later Emanuel Lasker was dead.

In March 1941 Marshall, along with Reshevsky, Fine, Kashdan and A.S. Pinkus, took part in a giant, 109-board simultaneous exhibition at the
Capitol Hotel to establish a Lasker Memorial Fund. The 63-year-old Marshall tired after an hour of play and his 23 games were taken over by another young master, Olaf Ulvstad.

In the remaining three years of his life Marshall indulged his weakness for bridge and bingo. His chess was largely limited to the Met League, where he could still muster the Marshall spirit. In May 1941 he played second board, behind Reinfield, in the showdown Manhattan-Marshall match and drew with Denker after holding a long rook-and-bishop ending. The following year he was down to fifth board, behind Herbert Seidman, Santasiere, Hanauer and Fine:

219. Neo-Grünfeld Defense
Bernstein–Marshall, Metropolitan League 1942

1 Nf3 d5 2 c4 Nf6 3 c×d5 N×d5 4 g3 g6 5 Bg2 Bg7 6 d4 0–0 7 0–0 c5 8 d×c5 Na6 9 e4?

An error that surrenders d3. Better is 9 Ng5 Ndb4 10 Ne3.

9 . . . Ndb4 10 Qe2 Qd3

Immediate equality. Black’s knights now force a liquidation that leaves White with two weak queenside pawns.

11 Nc3 N×c5 12 Q×d3 Nb×d3 13 Rd1 B×c3!? 14 b×c3 N×c1 15 Ra×c1 N×e4 16 Rbl Ne5 17 R×e7 Be6

The threat of 18 . . . Rf8 and 19 . . . Kf8 raises the tactical level until there is no wood left on the board.

18 Ng5! B×a2 19 c4! Rae8 20 R×e8 R×e8 21 Bd5 Re2! 22 N×f7 Kg7 23 Nd6 a5

After 23 . . . a5

24 N×b7 Nd3!? 25 Rc3! N×f2 26 N×a5 Nh3+ 27 Kf1 Rf2+ 28 Ke1 R×h2 29 Nb3 B×b3 30 R×b3 h5 31 Rc3 h4! 32 c5! h×g3 33 c6 Nh4 34 c7 g2 35 B×g2 N×g2+ 36 Kf1 Ne3+ Draw

Sunset
Marshall wrote the more revealing, "Nimzovich told me he knew this move was bad but he could find no better move for Black."

In other cases, there are obvious differences between his notes and Reinfeld's finished manuscript. In the book's first game, the 1893 exhibition game with Steinitz, Marshall gave no note at all to 10...0-0, but in the book it appears with a double question mark. Later, 16...Rad8 gets a '?' in the notes but no comment in the book.

On the other hand, there are many instances in which the two are very close. In his notes on his great miniature with Amos Burn from Paris 1909, Marshall titiled the game "Burn Puts." Among his comments he wrote: "Mr. Burn liked to smoke a pipe. I remember now as I was making my second move he was hunting in his different pockets as Burn style [sic] was very conservative and probably he thought he was in for a long session." Later, after 4...Be7 he added, "He has found his pipe. He has his tobacco out and is looking for a pipe cleaner."

In the book these comments become: "Britisher Amos Burn was a very conservative player and liked to settle down for a long session of close, defensive chess. He loved to smoke his pipe while he studied the board. As I made my second move, Burn began hunting through his pockets for his pipe and tobacco. . . . Not much thought needed on these moves but Burn had his pipe out and was looking for a pipe cleaner."

And then after 14 Bxg6 fxg6 the notes give "He is now striking the match. He appears nervous. The match burns his finger and goes out."
The book: "He struck the match, appeared nervous. The match burned his finger and went out."

My Fifty Years, published my Horowitz and Harkness, was a substantial success for a chess book and remains one of the most entertaining of American chess literature.

The United States entry into World War II in December 1941 created new hardships for the club and the Marshall family. Several club members were soon in uniform including Frank junior, who spent the next Christmas in a signal training regiment at Fort Monmouth, N.J. By August 1943 a flag was hung at the Marshall club with the name of each member in the armed services, all 37 of them.

In March 1942 Marshall's longtime rival José Capablanca collapsed at the Manhattan C.C. and died before he could be revived. To Marshall, who regarded the Cuban as the youngster who stole his thunder back in 1909, the death must have reminded him of his own mortality. Few members of his generation were left. Richard Réti had succumbed to scarlet fever in 1929. Frederick Yates died in a gas poisoning accident in 1932. Siegbert Tarrasch's 71 years ended in 1934. Nimzovich, nine years younger than Marshall, died in 1935. Rudolph Spielmann would die as a refugee in Sweden later in 1942. Chess was no longer young.

Although he rarely competed now, Marshall still had a quick eye. In August 1943 at the New York State Championship in Syracuse, largely as a spectator, Marshall spoke at a dinner in which Hermann Helms was declared "Dean of American Chess," and then proceeded to tie for first place with Horowitz in a strong 10-sessions-a-move rapid transit tournament.

Marshall's last serious game with a clock may have been a draw with Robert Willman in the Met League match in March 1944 as the Manhattan club beat the Marshall 5½-4½. A short time later he also concluded what he called "My First Correspondence Game in 50 years." His opponent was Ed Robson of Syracuse, whom he had apparently met the previous summer. On each of the postcards carrying moves the players drew, with red and blue ink, a diagram of the current position.

220. Giuoco Piano
Robson-Marshall, Correspondence 1944
1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 Bc4 Nf6 4 d3 d5

"Aggressive, but of doubtful merit," was Marshall's comment. The reason is that Black's e-pawn now becomes hard to defend, and he eventually deals with it by offering the pawn as in his defense to the Ruy Lopez.

5 exd5 Nxd5 6 0-0 Be7

Marshall had played 6...Bb4 against Mieses 30 years before at Mannheim, challenging White to win a pawn with 7 b3 Bh5 8 g3 Bg6 9 Nxe5 Nxe5 10 Qe2 Qf6 11 d4 0-0-0 12 dxe5 Qc6.

The German had too much to handle after 13 Bxd5!? Rx d5 14 Ne3 Ra5 15 Bf4 Bc4 16 Nd1 Rd8 17 Ne3 Rd2 18 Qc4 Bc5 19 Qe3 Qf3! and a draw soon resulted (20 Qxd2 Bxe4 21 Kh2). 7 Re1 0-0 8 Nx e5 Nxe5 9 Rxe5 Nxb6 10 Qe2?

A major error. Now the White rooks are placed in limbo.

10...Bf6 11 Re4 Bf5 12 Re4 Bg5 13 Rf5 Bxc1 14 a4 Bxb2 15 Ra2 Nxc4 16 dxc4 Re8 17 Qf1 Re6!

(see diagram)

So that 18 Rxb2 Qe7 and 19...Re1 wins, White is now overpowered on the e-file.

18 Rd5 Qf6 19 Nd2 Rae8 20 Nf3 Bc3 21 Rd1 g5! White resigns.
After 17 . . . Re6

If 22 h3 then 22 . . . h5 23 Qd3 Rd6 24 Qf1 Rxd1 25 Qxd1 g4 26 h x g4 h x g4 27 Nd2 Qd4 and wins, was Marshall's winning line.

That month, May, Marshall headed a committee to choose the best Réti opening from the just concluded U.S. Championship and award its winner a $25 prize from Réti's brother Rudolph, who had fled the war and come to the United States. Frank also hosted one of the club's frequent garden parties in its backyard for the victory of club member Gisela Gresser in the U.S. Women's Championship. The women's championship was an idea of Carrie's and she organized the first such tournament at the club in 1936.

On November 9, 1944, Frank Marshall went across the Hudson River by ferry to Jersey City for an evening of bingo. Carrie stayed home. While walking along Van Vorst Street he fell to the pavement. A woman pedestrian saw his collapse and called police, who arrived too late. In later years Carrie Marshall would remark that she never liked policemen. It was a New York City patrolman, she explained, who told her Frank had died of a heart attack.

Some 300 people attended his funeral, at the Greenwich Presbyterian Church on West 13th Street on November 13. Marshall was cremated at Fresh Pond Crematory on Long Island. Among those on hand for the funeral were Marcel Barzin, former president of the Belgian Chess Federation, George Emlen Roosevelt, Gustavus Pfeiffer and E.B. Edwards of the Marshall C.C. board of governors, Harold Phillips, Kenneth Harkness, Al Horowitz of the Olympic teams, and Horace Bigelow and Eddie Santastiere of the Met League teams.

"It seems to me that an epoch began with this man," Marshall's lifelong friend Napier wrote in a tribute. Condolences were received from old opponents from Moscow, Karlsbad and London. The Frank Marshall Chess Club of Prague, founded in 1928, sent Carrie a warm letter. The New York Times printed an editorial recalling Frank's achievements and also his democratic attitude. Marshall was willing to analyze chess with anyone, regardless of skill, the Times wrote. All he needed was a board and pieces.

"White and Black, weaving those magical patterns, asking those questions which no master has completely answered. To Marshall that was enough."
Tournament and Match Record

Aside from the events listed here, Frank Marshall also finished third in the 1897 Brooklyn Chess Club Championship, won a tournament at Thousand Islands, N.Y., in 1900 and a 1924 Dimock theme tournament at the Marshall Chess Club restricted to a variation of the Bishop’s Opening. (The abbreviation CCC means Chess Club Championship, and NYSCA means New York State Chess Association.)

### MAJOR TOURNAMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>W</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>Score</th>
<th>Place</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>London 1899 (minor)</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8½–2½</td>
<td>1st</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manhattan CCC 1900</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2½–7½</td>
<td>6th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paris 1900</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>12–4</td>
<td>3rd–4th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monte Carlo 1901</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>5½–8½</td>
<td>10th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buffalo 1901 (NYSCA)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4–6</td>
<td>4th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monte Carlo 1902</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>11–8</td>
<td>9th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hannover 1902</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8–9</td>
<td>9th–10th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monte Carlo 1903</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>12–14</td>
<td>9th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vienna 1903 (Gambit)</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>11½–6½</td>
<td>2nd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monte Carlo 1904</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6½–3½</td>
<td>3rd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monte Carlo 1904 (Rice Gambit)</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6–4</td>
<td>1st:2nd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cambridge Springs 1904</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>13–2</td>
<td>1st</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sylvan Beach 1904 (NYSCA)</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6–0</td>
<td>1st</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. Louis 1904</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8½–½</td>
<td>1st</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ostende 1905</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>12½–13½</td>
<td>7th–9th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ostende 1905 (Supplementary)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1½–1½</td>
<td>2nd–3rd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheveningen 1905</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>11½–1½</td>
<td>1st</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

365
### Tournament and Match Record

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>W</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>Score</th>
<th>Place</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Barmen 1905</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manhattan ccc 1905-6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ostende 1906</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>16½-13½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuremberg 1906</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>12½-3½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brooklyn ccc 1906</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ostende 1907</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>11½-8½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karlsbad 1907</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vienna 1908</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prague 1908</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>11-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Łódź 1908</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Düsseldorf 1908</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>11½-3½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bath Beach 1909 (NYSCA)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3½-1½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamburg 1910</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9½-6½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amsterdam 1911</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2½-½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York 1911 (Int'l)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Sebastian 1911</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>8½-5½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karlsbad 1911</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>15½-9½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Sebastian 1912</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9½-9½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pistyan 1912</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>10½-6½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Budapest 1912</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breslau 1912</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9½-7½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York 1913</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>10½-2½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Havana 1913</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>10½-3½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York 1913 (Quad)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York 1913 (6 players)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St. Petersburg 1914</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paris 1914</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2½-½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mannheim 1914 (unfinished)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York 1915</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>12-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York 1918</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic City 1920</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>7½-2½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic City 1921</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York 1921 (Dimock)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lake Hopatcong 1923</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>10½-2½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York 1923 (Dimock)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8½-1½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York 1924</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>11-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baden-Baden 1925</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>12½-7½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marienbad 1925</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moscow 1925</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>12½-7½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lake Hopatcong 1926 (Pan Am.)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>W</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>Score</th>
<th>Place</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chicago 1926 (Western Ch.)</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8½-3½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York 1926 (Dimock)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4½-1½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York 1927</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>6-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>London 1927</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>7½-3½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bad Kissingen 1928</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brno 1928</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Budapest 1928</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berlin 1928</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4½-7½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hastings 1928-9</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bradley Beach 1929</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4½-4½</td>
<td>6th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karlsbad 1929</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>9-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liege 1930</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4½-6½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamburg 1930 (Olympiad)</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>12½-4½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York 1931</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prague 1931 (Olympiad)</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>10-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folkstone 1933 (Olympiad)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warsaw 1935 (Olympiad)</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7½-4½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Juan 1936</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stockholm 1937 (Olympiad)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>6½-3½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marshall ccc 1936-7</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marshall ccc 1937-8</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>9-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marshall ccc 1939-40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>12-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marshall ccc 1940-1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>11½-3½</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Matches

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>W</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Souren, New York 1896</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Napier, New York 1899, bccc</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.P. Johnston, Chicago 1899-1900</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O. Roethling, New York 1900</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teichmann, London 1902</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ward, London 1902</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loman, London 1902</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mottimer, London 1904</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Janowsky, Paris 1905</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Napier, London 1905 (Rice Gambit)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tarrasch, Nuremberg 1905</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Em. Lasker, U.S. 1907 (World Ch.)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Bibliography

I have drawn on a number of sources in writing this book. Frank J. Marshall's published works, My Fifty Years in Chess (New York 1943), Chess Swindles (New York 1924), and Comparative Chess (New York 1932), and his unpublished notes, foremost. Other sources have been periodicals, reference works, tournament books, and general monographs:

Periodicals


General Reference


TOURNAMENT BOOKS

Das Chancion-Turnier zu Ostende in Jahre 1907, ed. Siegbert Tarrasch. Leipzig 1907.
Das Große Internationale Schachturnier in Bad Kissingen 1928, ed. Savileyl Tartakower, Bad kissingen, 1928.

MONOGRAPHS


Bibliography

Rey Ardid, Dr. R. Finales de Dame (con Peones). Ajedrez Canario, Las Palmas 1975.
Wildhagen, E. Weltgeschichte des Schachs, Capablanca. Verlag Dr. E. Wildhagen, Hamburg 1963.
INDEX

Numbers in parentheses refer to number of game.

Adjourner games 1, 15, 140, 256-57, 285, 327-28
Alamac Hotel (New York) 345
Alapin, Simon 30, 32, 83 (44), 86 (47), 92, 175, 194 (113)
Albin, Adolph 38-39 (20), 165, 185
Albin Countergambit 8, 30, 64, 129 (74), 130 (75), 138 (79), 165 (94), 170 (104)
Alekhine, Alexander 2, 96, 176, 184, 203-4, 218-21, 221-23 (133), 225, 227, 229, 235, 237, 262, 264-66, 268, 270-71, 275, 278, 284, 286, 297, 304, 313, 14
Alekhine's Defense 278, 294, 297, 302-3 (180), 321, 345
Alexander I, Czar 121
Alexandria, Nana 96
Alfonso XIII, King 182
Alletown (PA) Chess Club 345
American Chess Bulletin 55, 86, 98, 149, 157, 161, 243-44, 256, 259, 356
American Chess Federation 349
American Chess Foundation 359
America's Chess Heritage 204
Anand, Viswanathan 132
Anderson, Benjamin Mcalester 153
Anderson, J.A. 321, 324
Anderssen, Adolf 86
Andersson, Ulf 310
Ansonia Hotel (New York) 158, 237
Antoniadi, E.M. 125
Associated Press 155
Atkins, H.L. 47 (26)
Atlantic City, N.J 234, 245, 247, 284
Automobile Club (Paris) 125
Baird 261
Balls, Zoltan 310 (185)
Baltimore, MD 115, 260
Banks, Newell 237, 295-96
Barcz, Zigmond 199
Barr, John 10, 58, 61
Barrymore, John 248
Bartholow, Ortho 71
Barzin, Marcel 362
Battell, Jack Straley 353 (215)
Baum, Frank 14
Beethoven, Ludwig van 121
Berger, Johannes 108
Berlin 105, 150, 155, 291, 311
Berliner Lokal-Anzeiger 38, 77
Berliner Tageblatt 311
Berndtsson-Kullberg, Karl 324
Bernstein, Jacob 230 (138), 249
Bernstein, Ossip 35, 89, 93, 100, 117, 167, 187, 198, 202, 218-19 (131), 230
Bernstein, Sidney 251, 352 (214b), 358 (219)
Bethder 335 (202)
Biarritz 105, 188, 204
Bigelow, H.R. 254, 362
Binet, Alfred 73
Bird, Henry 13, 27
Bishop's Gambit 44 (24)
Bishop's Opening 262
Black, Roy T. 181, 243 (146), 250, 261 (155)
Blackburne, J.H. 13, 15, 25, 27, 29, 30, 35, 38, 48, 82, 86, 100, 103, 155, 218, 220, 300, 317
Blanco Estera 210 (125)
Blindfold chess 154, 254, 286
Nardus, Leo 31, 75, 125, 127, 200, 319, 340
National Chess Federation 295, 302, 313, 315, 321, 337, 341, 344, 348-49
National Press Club (Washington) 235
Naumann, F.G. 230
Neo-Grünfeld Defense 358 (219)
New Orleans Picayune 30
New York S.S. 321
New York American 71
New York Athletic Club 152
New York Post 254
New York State Chess Association 26, 31, 154, 162, 361
New York Stock Exchange 340
New York Times 283, 324, 362-63
Newes Trophy 48
Nicholas II, Czar 218, 225-26, 229
Nimzovich Defense 300 (179), 309, 336 (203)
Nimzowic, Aaron 87, 90, 93, 117, 122-23 (70), 178-80, 187-88, 196, 198, 218, 221, 230, 273, 280-81
(166), 297-300 (179), 302, 305 (182), 319, 340 (206), 359-60
Nixe 95
Norman, G.M. 312 (186)
North American Newspaper Alliance 348

O'Brienn, John P. 332
OHanlon, J.J. 334 (201)
Ollard. 119 (67a)
Opeczinsky, Karel 308, 331
Oskam, Gerard 89 (50)
Ostende 67, 80-88, 95-105, 116-21, 182
Pan-American Exposition 31
Paris, France 2, 5, 8, 14-26, 67, 79-80, 85, 125-26, 297
Paris, S.S. 283
Peary, Robert 153
Perls, Julius 103, 105, 137, 196
Petroff Defense 16-17 (7, 8), 21 (21), 24, 177-78 (103), 283-84 (106, 107), 186 (109), 201 (120), 205 (122), 211 (126), 218 (130), 230, 304 (180)
Petrosian, Tigran 64
Petrov, Vladimir 322 (192)
Pfeiffer, C.A. 343, 362
Philadelphia, PA 114, 236
Philadelphia, S.S. 72
Philadelphia Evening Bulletin 165
Philadelphia North American 66, 247
Philadelphia Public Ledger 236
Phillips' Defense 85 (44)
Phillips, Charles W. 15
Phillips, Harold M. 55, 321, 348
Pillsbury, Harry Nelson 2, 6 (2), 12, 15, 18, 21-23 (11), 24, 30, 31 (15), 33, 35, 38, 42, 44, 45 (25), 58, 60 (33), 64, 67, 80, 91, 103, 109, 111, 164, 176, 201, 234
Pilsudski, S.S. 337
Pindyck, A.S. 251, 292 (173), 356
Pirc Defense 60 (32), 265, 267
Polland, David 251
Pollock, W.H.K. 4, 73
Ponziani Opening 70
Post, E. 229
Postal chess 6, 361
Poteira, S.S. 58
Progressive Chess Club 215, 253
Prokofiev, Sergei 221
Przepiorka, Dawid 90, 328
Prozowski, Wsevelo 288
Puerto Rico Chess Federation 348
Queen's Gambit Accepted 36 (19), 61 (34), 69 (38), 86-87 (48), 100 (56), 107 (60), 117-18 (65, 66), 148 (86), 195, 221, 282 (167), 341 (207)
Queen's Gambit Declined 68 (37), 75, 93, 150, 156, 200 (119), 208 (123), 234 (140), 256, 270, 277 (163), 278, 279 (170), 309 (184), 326 (196), 340 (211), 357 (218)
Queen's Gambit Declined, Cambridge Springs Defense 95 (54), 190 (111), 313-14 (187, 188), 334 (201)
Queen's Gambit Declined, Chigorin Defense 34
Queen's Gambit Declined, Exchange Variation 141, 288-89 (171, 172), 330 (198)
Queen's Gambit Declined, Lasker Defense 41 (22), 111 (62), 158 (91), 160 (92), 184-85 (107), 227 (136)
Queen's Gambit Declined, Marshall Variation 6 (2), 20 (19), 99 (19)
Queen's Gambit Declined, Orthodox Defense 33 (16), 40 (21), 53 (30), 85 (46), 90 (51), 92 (52), 127 (73), 193 (114), 216, 261 (155), 296 (176)
Queen's Gambit Declined, Semi-Slav Defense 19 (10), 35 (18), 145 (84), 171 (99), 226 (133), 274 (161)
Queen's Gambit Declined, Semi-Tarrasch Defense 64 (36), 75 (39), 238 (142)
Queen's Gambit Declined, Tarrasch Defense 51-52 (28), 89 (50), 103 (58), 106 (59), 113 (63), 119 (67), 143-44 (83), 147 (85), 150 (87), 158, 160, 192 (113), 196 (116), 203, 221, 240 (148), 257-59 (152, 154), 286 (169)
Queen's Gambit Declined, Tartakower Variation 23 (12)
Queen's Indian Defense 306 (182), 310 (185), 316 (190), 324 (194), 337 (204), 340 (206), 355 (214b)
Queen's Pawn Game 31 (15), 99 (55), 102 (57), 141 (81), 156 (90), 170 (98), 191 (112), 194 (115), 206
Rabinovich, Abram (a.k.a. Leontiev) 141 (81), 190, 274 (161)
Rabinovich, Ilya 284 (166)
Rapid transit chess 248-49
Rebecca of Sunnybrook Farm 57
Reggio, Arturo 29-30 (14), 99, 120
Reichelt, Gustave 66, 67, 83
Reid 359 (205)
Reinfeld, Fred 213, 350-51 (213), 358-60
Reif, Josef 331
Reshevsky, Samuel 127, 337-38, 344, 346 (208), 348, 357
Rei, Richard 2, 84, 135, 169, 217,
Schiffers, Emanual 13, 25
Schlechter, Karl 12, 16, 20, 25, 29, 35, 40, 42, 45, 48, 51-52 (28), 53, 58, 64, 77, 80, 85, 86, 91-92 (52), 103, 105, 108-10, 114, 116-18 (65), 119-20 (67), 125, 129, 135, 137, 139 (60), 167 (95), 176, 180, 184, 187, 193, 199, 205, 210, 230, 321
Schnur, Katherine 121
Schröder, Alfred 236
Scoring system 1, 17, 29, 32, 38
Scotch Gambit 49 (27), 127, 209, 356 (217)
Scotch Game 49 (27), 127, 209, 356 (217)
Sedlitz, Herbert 358
Seitz, Adolf 348
Sentinal Books 447
Sharp, Sydney T. 234, 245 (147)
Sherman Square Hotel (NY) 241
Shipley, Walter Penn 110, 164-65, 315
Sicilian Defense 10 (9), 214 (127), 250 (149), 278 (164), 345 (216)
Silverman, W. L. 336 (203)
Simonov, Albert 328-29, 331, 344, 348
Simonov, Gustave 55
Simpson's Divan 26, 248
Slav Defense 47 (26), 229, 237 (142, 144), 307 (183)
Smirka, Rudolf 254, 262-64 (156)
Smoking 2, 23, 74, 78, 111
Smyslov, Vasily 9
Soldatenkov, Basil 242, 254
Stahlberg, Günter 31
Stanton, S. 259
Stapfer, J. H. 209
Staunton Gambit 115, 181 (105)
Staunton's Handbook 1
Steckel, William H. 354
Stein, Leonid 21
Steiner, Endre 310
Steiner, Herman 312, 326-27
Steiner, Latjus 314
Steinmetz, Wilhelm 2, 4-5, 15, 29 (14), 33, 34, 54, 83, 90, 102, 140, 143, 317, 321, 320
Stekh, Károly 199
Stodols, Gustav 329 (197), 331, 334
Stonewall Attack 134 (77), 177, 275, 278
Lo Strategie 206, 229
Stravinsky, Igor 175
Suchting, Hugo 34, 188
Sultan Khan, M 321, 342
Sussman 354 (216)
Svidtiski, Rudolf 44, 48, 54-55, 99 (55), 188
Swindle 81, 88, 117, 119, 152, 167-74, 184, 205, 211, 216, 218, 316, 325, 355
Szabo, Laszlo 337
Tal, Mikhail 124
Tartakower, Savielly 2, 55, 90, 125-25 (70), 132-34, 137, 175, 178, 220, 241, 265, 275-78, 281-83, 291, 300, 302-3 (180), 308-9, 311, 315-17, 335, 361
Tholfsen, Ering 251, 263-64 (157)
Thomas, Sir George 300, 317 (191), 330 (198), 342
Three Hundred Games 1
Three Knights Game 18 (9), 280 (165), 294 (175)
Tietz, Victor 116, 121, 190, 319
Times (London) 301
Tinka, Joe 116
Titanic, S.S. 199
Tolstoy, Leo 175
Torre, Carlo 162-63, 270, 273, 282-84, 293, 296-97, 344
Tournois: Amsterdam 191, 207; Amsterdam 1911 388; Atlantic City 1920 245; Bad Kissingen 1928 289, 302-8, 310, 340; Baden-Baden 1870 229; Baden-Baden 1923 268, 273-79, 281; Barmen 1905 90-94, 100, 110, 120, 122, 221; Belfast 1866 73; Berlin 1928 95, 311; Bled 1915 178; Bridge Beach 1929 270, 313-15; Brussels 1922 204-5; Brno 1928 303, 310; Budapest 1912 207; Budapest 1928 308-11; Buffalo 1901 31; Cambridge Springs 1904 57-67, 70, 73, 83, 86, 95, 98, 111, 132, 135, 146, 156, 176, 182, 217, 226, 350; Chicago 1926 288, 295; Cologne 1938 32; Düsseldorf 1908 142-43; Folkestone 1933 328-32; Goteborg 1926 273; Hague-Moscow 1948 185, 297; Hamburg 1910 6, 176-80, 183, 256, 273, 320; Hamburg 1930 320-26, 340; Hannover 1902 35-37; Hastings 1895 1, 3-7, 43; Hastings 1929 245; Hastings 1928-29 312; Havana 1921 3, 180, 192, 209-13, 231, 233, 310; Karlsbad 1907 119, 221-15, 138, 188, 241, 273; Karlsbad 1911 141, 190-96, 226, 231, 313; Karlsbad 1929 160, 231, 268-69, 315-19; Lake Hopatcong 1923 260; Lake Hopatcong 1926 209, 293-95, 296; Liege 1930 346-42, 359; Lodz 1908 159, 143-46, 242; London 1851 27; London 1862 1; London 1883 17; London 1899 10-13, 15, 18, 47, 67, 225; London 1922 266; London 1927 173,
Vaganian, Rafael 70
Van Foreest, A.E. 188
Van Vliet, Louis 78
Verdtinský, Boris 279, 287
Vidmar, Milan 35, 105, 123-25 (71), 181, 184, 187, 203, 228-29, 297-99 (177), 300, 315-16
Vienna Chess Club 42, 132
Vienna Gambit 239 (145)
Vienna Game 9 (3), 23, 34, 150, 257
Voight, H.C. 10
von Gotschall, Hermann 90-91 (51)
von Scheve, Theodor 33 (16), 55-56 (31)
Von Schleifen, Alfred 225

Wainwright, G.E. 10
Walbrodt, Carl 73
Walderf-Astoria Hotel (NY) 14
Wallis, Hugh 134
Ward, William 35, 47
Washington, DC 59, 115, 235, 256, 260
Weiss, Isidore 3
Weiss, Max 25, 185, 218
Wells, Gabriel 309
Western Championship 256, 295, 321-349
Western Chess Association 256, 295
Whitaker, Norman T. 255-56
White, Stanford 98
Whyld, Ken 146
Wiener Schachzeitung 16, 78, 198
Willman, Robert 361
Wilson, Woodrow 175
Winawer, Simon 27, 30, 73
Wolf, Heinrich 80, 85, 99, 107-9 (60), 117
Wolff, J. Louis 3
World Championship 57, 67, 109-15, 121, 142, 161, 185, 264

Ulvestad, Olaf 358
University Club (NY) 256

Zapolow, J.B. 208
Ziegfeld, Flo 116, 248
Znosko-Borovsky, Eugene 99, 250, 312
Zukertort, Johannes 66, 86, 143, 234